How to Contact MathWorks

Latest news: www.mathworks.com
Sales and services: www.mathworks.com/sales_and_services
User community: www.mathworks.com/matlabcentral
Technical support: www.mathworks.com/support/contact_us

Phone: 508-647-7000

The MathWorks, Inc.
3 Apple Hill Drive
Natick, MA 01760-2098

Object-Oriented Programming

© COPYRIGHT 1984–2015 by The MathWorks, Inc.

The software described in this document is furnished under a license agreement. The software may be used or copied only under the terms of the license agreement. No part of this manual may be photocopied or reproduced in any form without prior written consent from The MathWorks, Inc.

FEDERAL ACQUISITION: This provision applies to all acquisitions of the Program and Documentation by, for, or through the federal government of the United States. By accepting delivery of the Program or Documentation, the government hereby agrees that this software or documentation qualifies as commercial computer software or commercial computer software documentation as such terms are used or defined in FAR 12.212, DFARS Part 227.72, and DFARS 252.227-7014. Accordingly, the terms and conditions of this Agreement and only those rights specified in this Agreement, shall pertain to and govern the use, modification, reproduction, release, performance, display, and disclosure of the Program and Documentation by the federal government (or other entity acquiring for or through the federal government) and shall supersede any conflicting contractual terms or conditions. If this License fails to meet the government’s needs or is inconsistent in any respect with federal procurement law, the government agrees to return the Program and Documentation, unused, to The MathWorks, Inc.

Trademarks

MATLAB and Simulink are registered trademarks of The MathWorks, Inc. See www.mathworks.com/trademarks for a list of additional trademarks. Other product or brand names may be trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.

Patents

MathWorks products are protected by one or more U.S. patents. Please see www.mathworks.com/patents for more information.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>March 2008</td>
<td>Online only</td>
<td>New for MATLAB 7.6 (Release 2008a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>October 2008</td>
<td>Online only</td>
<td>Revised for MATLAB 7.7 (Release 2008b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>March 2009</td>
<td>Online only</td>
<td>Revised for MATLAB 7.8 (Release 2009a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>September 2009</td>
<td>Online only</td>
<td>Revised for MATLAB 7.9 (Release 2009b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>March 2010</td>
<td>Online only</td>
<td>Revised for MATLAB 7.10 (Release 2010a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>September 2010</td>
<td>Online only</td>
<td>Revised for Version 7.11 (Release 2010b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>April 2011</td>
<td>Online only</td>
<td>Revised for Version 7.12 (Release 2011a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>September 2011</td>
<td>Online only</td>
<td>Revised for Version 7.13 (Release 2011b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>March 2012</td>
<td>Online only</td>
<td>Revised for Version 7.14 (Release 2012a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>September 2012</td>
<td>Online only</td>
<td>Revised for Version 8.0 (Release 2012b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>March 2013</td>
<td>Online only</td>
<td>Revised for Version 8.1 (Release 2013a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>September 2013</td>
<td>Online only</td>
<td>Revised for Version 8.2 (Release 2013b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>March 2014</td>
<td>Online only</td>
<td>Revised for Version 8.3 (Release 2014a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>October 2014</td>
<td>Online only</td>
<td>Revised for Version 8.4 (Release 2014b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>March 2015</td>
<td>Online only</td>
<td>Revised for Version 8.5 (Release 2015a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>September 2015</td>
<td>Online only</td>
<td>Revised for Version 8.6 (Release 2015b)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Using Object-Oriented Design in MATLAB

1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Why Use Object-Oriented Design</th>
<th>1-2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Approaches to Writing MATLAB Programs</td>
<td>1-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When Should You Create Object-Oriented Programs</td>
<td>1-6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Using Handles</th>
<th>1-12</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>What Is a Handle?</td>
<td>1-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copies of Handles</td>
<td>1-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Handle Objects Modified in Functions</td>
<td>1-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Determine If an Object Is a Handle</td>
<td>1-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deleted Handle Objects</td>
<td>1-15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Basic Example

2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A Simple Class</th>
<th>2-2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Define a Simple Class</td>
<td>2-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create Object</td>
<td>2-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access Properties</td>
<td>2-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Call Methods</td>
<td>2-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add Constructor</td>
<td>2-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vectorize Methods</td>
<td>2-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overload Functions</td>
<td>2-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>BasicClass</strong> Code Listing</td>
<td>2-6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# MATLAB Classes Overview

## Role of Classes in MATLAB
- Classes ............................................. 3-2
- Some Basic Relationships .................. 3-4

## Developing Classes — Typical Workflow
- Formulating a Class .......................... 3-8
- Specifying Class Components ............... 3-9
- BankAccount Class Implementation .......... 3-10
- Formulating the AccountManager Class ..... 3-14
- Implementing the AccountManager Class ... 3-14
- AccountManager Class Synopsis ............ 3-15
- Using BankAccount Objects ................. 3-16

## Class to Manage Writable Files
- Flexible Workflow ......................... 3-19
- Performing a Task with an Object ....... 3-19
- Defining the Filewriter Class ............. 3-19
- Using Filewriter Objects ................. 3-21

## Class to Represent Structured Data
- Objects As Data Structures ................. 3-24
- Structure of the Data ....................... 3-24
- The TensileData Class ..................... 3-25
- Create an Instance and Assign Data ....... 3-25
- Restrict Properties to Specific Values .... 3-26
- Simplifying the Interface with a Constructor ... 3-27
- Calculate Data on Demand ................. 3-28
- Displaying TensileData Objects .......... 3-29
- Method to Plot Stress vs. Strain .......... 3-30
- TensileData Class Synopsis ............... 3-31

## Class to Implement Linked Lists
- Class Definition Code ..................... 3-36
- dlnode Class Design ....................... 3-36
- Create Doubly Linked List ................ 3-37
- Why a Handle Class for Linked Lists? ...... 3-38
- dlnode Class Synopsis ..................... 3-39
- Specialize the dlnode Class .............. 3-50
## Class for Graphing Functions

- Class Definition Block: 3-53
- Using the topo Class: 3-54
- Behavior of the Handle Class: 3-55

## Static Data

- Static Data: 4-2
  - What Is Static Data: 4-2
  - Static Variable: 4-2
  - Static Data Object: 4-3
  - Constant Data: 4-5

## Class Definition—Syntax Reference

- Class Files and Folders: 5-2
  - Options for Class Folders: 5-2
  - Options for Class Files: 5-2
  - Group Classes with Package Folders: 5-3

- Class Components: 5-5
  - Class Building Blocks: 5-5
  - Class Definition Block: 5-5
  - Properties Block: 5-6
  - Methods Block: 5-6
  - Events Block: 5-7
  - A Complete Class: 5-8
  - Enumeration Block: 5-8
  - Related Information: 5-9

- Classdef Block: 5-10
  - How to Specify Attributes and Superclasses: 5-10
  - Class Attribute Syntax: 5-10
  - Superclass Syntax: 5-11
## Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Properties</strong></td>
<td>5-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What You Can Define</td>
<td>5-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initialize Property Values</td>
<td>5-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Default Values</td>
<td>5-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assign Property Values from Constructor</td>
<td>5-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initialize Properties to Unique Values</td>
<td>5-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property Attributes</td>
<td>5-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property Access Methods</td>
<td>5-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reference Object Properties Using Variables</td>
<td>5-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Methods and Functions</strong></td>
<td>5-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Methods Block</td>
<td>5-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Method Calling Syntax</td>
<td>5-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Private Methods</td>
<td>5-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More Detailed Information On Methods</td>
<td>5-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class-Related Functions</td>
<td>5-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How to Overload Functions and Operators</td>
<td>5-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Methods In Separate Files</strong></td>
<td>5-21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methods In Class Folders</td>
<td>5-21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Method in Function File</td>
<td>5-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specify Method Attributes in <code>classdef</code> File</td>
<td>5-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methods That You Must Define In the <code>classdef</code> File</td>
<td>5-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Events and Listeners</strong></td>
<td>5-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define and Trigger Events</td>
<td>5-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Listen for Events</td>
<td>5-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Attribute Specification</strong></td>
<td>5-27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute Syntax</td>
<td>5-27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute Descriptions</td>
<td>5-27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute Values</td>
<td>5-28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simpler Syntax for true/false Attributes</td>
<td>5-28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Call Superclass Methods on Subclass Objects</strong></td>
<td>5-30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How to Call Superclass Constructor</td>
<td>5-30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How to Call Superclass Methods</td>
<td>5-31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Representative Class Code</strong></td>
<td>5-32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class Calculates Area</td>
<td>5-32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description of Class Definition</td>
<td>5-34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATLAB Code Analyzer Warnings</td>
<td>5-37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syntax Warnings and Property Names</td>
<td>5-37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Variable/Property Name Conflict Warnings</td>
<td>5-37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exception to Variable/Property Name Rule</td>
<td>5-38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Objects In Switch Statements</td>
<td>5-39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evaluation of Switch Statement</td>
<td>5-39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How to Define the eq Method</td>
<td>5-41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enumerations in Switch Statements</td>
<td>5-43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operations on Objects</td>
<td>5-46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Object Operations</td>
<td>5-46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Help on Objects</td>
<td>5-47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Functions to Test Objects</td>
<td>5-49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Functions to Query Class Components</td>
<td>5-49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use of Editor and Debugger with Classes</td>
<td>5-50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How to Refer to Class Files</td>
<td>5-50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic Updates for Modified Classes</td>
<td>5-51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When MATLAB Loads Class Definitions</td>
<td>5-51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consequences of Automatic Update</td>
<td>5-52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What Happens When Class Definitions Change</td>
<td>5-52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actions That Do Not Trigger Updates</td>
<td>5-53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiple Updates to Class Definitions</td>
<td>5-53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When Updates Are Not Possible</td>
<td>5-53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potential Consequences of Class Updates</td>
<td>5-54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Updates to Class Attributes</td>
<td>5-54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Updates to Property Definitions</td>
<td>5-54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Updates to Method Definitions</td>
<td>5-56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Updates to Event Definitions</td>
<td>5-56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compatibility with Previous Versions</td>
<td>5-58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Class-Definition Syntax Introduced with MATLAB Software Version 7.6</td>
<td>5-58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changes to Class Constructors</td>
<td>5-59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Features Introduced with Version 7.6</td>
<td>5-59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examples of Old and New</td>
<td>5-60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparison of MATLAB and Other OO Languages</td>
<td>5-61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Some Differences from C++ and Java Code</td>
<td>5-61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Object Modification</td>
<td>5-62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Static Properties</td>
<td>5-66</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Defining and Organizing Classes

User-Defined Classes ............................................. 6-2
  What is a Class Definition ................................... 6-2
  Attributes for Class Members .................................. 6-2
  Kinds of Classes ................................................ 6-3
  Constructing Objects ............................................ 6-3
  Class Hierarchies ............................................... 6-3

Class Definition .................................................. 6-4
  classdef Syntax ................................................. 6-4

Class Attributes .................................................. 6-5
  Specifying Class Attributes ................................... 6-5
  Specifying Attributes .......................................... 6-6

Expressions in Class Definitions ................................ 6-8
  Basic Knowledge ................................................. 6-8
  Where to Use Expressions in Class Definitions ............... 6-8
  How MATLAB Evaluates Expressions ......................... 6-11
  When MATLAB Evaluates Expressions ......................... 6-11
  Expression Evaluation in Handle and Value Classes ....... 6-11

Class and Path Folders .......................................... 6-15
  Class and Path Folders ........................................ 6-15
  Path Folders .................................................... 6-15
  Class Folders ................................................... 6-16
  Access to Functions Defined in Private Folders .......... 6-16
  Class Precedence and MATLAB Path ........................... 6-17

Class Precedence .................................................. 6-19
  Basic Knowledge ............................................... 6-19
  Why Mark Classes as Inferior .................................. 6-19
  InferiorClasses Attribute ....................................... 6-19

Packages Create Namespaces .................................... 6-21
  Package Folders ................................................ 6-21
Value or Handle Class — Which to Use

Comparison of Handle and Value Classes .......................... 7-2
  Basic Difference ................................................. 7-2
  Why Select Handle or Value .................................. 7-3
  Behavior of MATLAB Built-In Classes ......................... 7-3
  Behavior of User-Defined Classes .............................. 7-4

Which Kind of Class to Use ........................................ 7-9
  Examples of Value and Handle Classes ......................... 7-9
  When to Use Handle Classes .................................. 7-9
  When to Use Value Classes ................................... 7-10

The Handle Superclass .............................................. 7-11
  Build on the Handle Class .................................... 7-11
  Handle Class Methods ......................................... 7-11
  Event and Listener Methods ................................. 7-12
  Relational Methods ............................................ 7-12
  Test Handle Validity .......................................... 7-12
  When MATLAB Destroys Objects ............................... 7-12

Handle Class Destructor ............................................ 7-14
  Basic Knowledge ................................................. 7-14
  Syntax of Class Destructor Method ............................ 7-14
  When to Define a Destructor Method .......................... 7-15
  Destructors in Class Hierarchies .............................. 7-16
  Object Lifecycle ................................................ 7-16
  Restrict Explicit Object Deletion .............................. 7-18
### Nondestructor Delete Methods

7-18

### Find Handle Objects and Properties

7-20

- Find Handle Objects
- Find Handle Object Properties

### Implement Set/Get Interface for Properties

7-21

- The Standard Set/Get Interface
- Subclass `matlab.mixin.SetGet`
- Get Method Syntax
- Set Method Syntax
- Class Derived from `matlab.mixin.SetGet`

### Customize Copy

7-28

- Customize Copy Operation
- Copy Properties That Contain Handles
- Exclude Properties from Copy

### Control Number of Instances

7-34

- Limit Instances
- Singleton Class Implementation

---

### Properties — Storing Class Data

8

### How to Use Properties

8-2

- What Are Properties
- Types of Properties

### Defining Properties

8-4

- Property Definition Block
- Access Property Values
- Inheritance of Properties
- Specify Property Attributes

### Property Attributes

8-7

- Specifying Property Attributes
- Table of Property Attributes
Mutable and Immutable Properties ........................................... 8-13
Set Access to Property Values ........................................... 8-13

Property Access Methods ................................................. 8-14
Property Setter and Getter Methods ................................ 8-14
Set and Get Method Execution and Property Events .............. 8-16
Access Methods and Properties Containing Arrays ............. 8-17
Access Methods and Arrays of Objects .............................. 8-17
Modify Property Values with Access Methods ..................... 8-18

Property Set Methods ...................................................... 8-19
Overview of Property Access Methods ................................. 8-19
Property Set Method Syntax ............................................. 8-19
Validate Property Set Value ............................................. 8-20
Set Method Behavior ..................................................... 8-20

Property Get Methods ...................................................... 8-22
Overview of Property Access Methods ................................. 8-22
Property Get Method Syntax ............................................. 8-22
Errors Not Returned from Get Method ................................. 8-22
Get Method Behavior ..................................................... 8-22

Access Methods for Dependent Properties ......................... 8-24
Set and Get Methods for Dependent Properties .................... 8-24
Get Method for Dependent Property .................................. 8-25
When to Use Set Methods with Dependent Properties ............ 8-25
When to Use Private Set Access with Dependent Properties .... 8-26

Properties Containing Objects .......................................... 8-28
Assigning to Read-Only Properties Containing Objects ......... 8-28
Assignment Behavior ..................................................... 8-28

Dynamic Properties — Adding Properties to an Instance ....... 8-30
What Are Dynamic Properties .......................................... 8-30
Defining Dynamic Properties .......................................... 8-31
Responding to Dynamic-Property Events ............................ 8-33
Defining Property Access Methods for Dynamic Properties ... 8-34
Dynamic Properties and ConstructOnLoad ......................... 8-35
## Methods — Defining Class Operations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>How to Use Methods</strong></td>
<td>9-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class Methods</td>
<td>9-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Method Naming</td>
<td>9-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Method Attributes</strong></td>
<td>9-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specifying Method Attributes</td>
<td>9-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table of Method Attributes</td>
<td>9-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ordinary Methods</strong></td>
<td>9-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defining Methods</td>
<td>9-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multi-File Classes</td>
<td>9-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Method Invocation</strong></td>
<td>9-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Determining Which Method Is Invoked</td>
<td>9-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Referencing Names with Expressions—Dynamic Reference</td>
<td>9-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Controlling Access to Methods</td>
<td>9-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Invoking Superclass Methods in Subclass Methods</td>
<td>9-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Invoking Built-In Functions</td>
<td>9-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Class Constructor Methods</strong></td>
<td>9-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rules for Constructors</td>
<td>9-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Related Information</td>
<td>9-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initializing Objects In Constructor</td>
<td>9-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No Input Argument Constructor Requirement</td>
<td>9-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constructing Subclasses</td>
<td>9-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Errors During Class Construction</td>
<td>9-21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basic Structure of Constructor Methods</td>
<td>9-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Static Methods</strong></td>
<td>9-24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Why Define Static Methods</td>
<td>9-24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calling Static Methods</td>
<td>9-24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Overload Functions for Your Class</strong></td>
<td>9-26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overloading MATLAB Functions</td>
<td>9-26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rules for Naming to Avoid Conflicts</td>
<td>9-28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Class Support for Array-Creation Functions</strong></td>
<td>9-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extend Array-Creation Functions for Your Class</td>
<td>9-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Which Syntax to Use</td>
<td>9-30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATLAB Concatenation Rules</td>
<td>10-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concatenating Objects</td>
<td>10-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calling the Dominant-Class Constructor</td>
<td>10-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Converter Methods</td>
<td>10-18</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Heterogeneous Arrays

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Heterogeneous Arrays</th>
<th>10-21</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MATLAB Arrays</td>
<td>10-21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heterogeneous Hierarchies</td>
<td>10-21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heterogeneous Arrays</td>
<td>10-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heterogeneous Array Concepts</td>
<td>10-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nature of Heterogeneous Arrays</td>
<td>10-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unsupported Hierarchies</td>
<td>10-26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Object</td>
<td>10-28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conversion During Assignment and Concatenation</td>
<td>10-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Empty Arrays of Heterogeneous Abstract Classes</td>
<td>10-29</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Events — Sending and Responding to Messages

#### Learn to Use Events and Listeners

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Learn to Use Events and Listeners</th>
<th>11-2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Why Use Events and Listeners</td>
<td>11-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Events and Listeners Basics</td>
<td>11-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Events and Listeners Syntax Overview</td>
<td>11-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class with Custom Event Data</td>
<td>11-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class to Observe Property Changes</td>
<td>11-7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Property Set Listener

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Set Listener</th>
<th>11-9</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PushButton Class Design</td>
<td>11-9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Events and Listeners — Concepts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Events and Listeners — Concepts</th>
<th>11-12</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Event Model</td>
<td>11-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Event Data</td>
<td>11-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Events Only in Handle Classes</td>
<td>11-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property-Set and Query Events</td>
<td>11-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Listeners</td>
<td>11-15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Event Attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Attributes</th>
<th>11-17</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Specify Event Attributes</td>
<td>11-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Events and Listeners — Syntax and Techniques</td>
<td>11-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name Events</td>
<td>11-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trigger Events</td>
<td>11-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Listen to Events</td>
<td>11-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Event-Specific Data</td>
<td>11-22</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Listener Lifecycle</th>
<th>11-23</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Control Listener Lifecycle</td>
<td>11-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temporarily Deactivate Listeners</td>
<td>11-24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Permanently Delete Listeners</td>
<td>11-25</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Listener Callback Syntax</th>
<th>11-26</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Specify Listener Callbacks</td>
<td>11-26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syntax for Callback Function</td>
<td>11-26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional Arguments for Callback Function</td>
<td>11-27</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Callback Execution</th>
<th>11-29</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>When Callbacks Execute</td>
<td>11-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Listener Order of Execution</td>
<td>11-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Callbacks That Call notify</td>
<td>11-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manage Callback Errors</td>
<td>11-30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Invoke Functions from Function Handles</td>
<td>11-30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Listen for Changes to Property Values</th>
<th>11-31</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Create Property Listeners</td>
<td>11-31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property Event and Listener Classes</td>
<td>11-33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abort Set When Value Does Not Change</td>
<td>11-34</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Update Graphs Using Events and Listeners</th>
<th>11-38</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Example Overview</td>
<td>11-38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Techniques Demonstrated in This Example</td>
<td>11-39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Summary of fcneval Class</td>
<td>11-39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Summary of fcnview Class</td>
<td>11-40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methods Inherited from Handle Class</td>
<td>11-42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using the fcneval and fcnview Classes</td>
<td>11-42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implement UpdateGraph Event and Listener</td>
<td>11-44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The PostSet Event Listener</td>
<td>11-48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable and Disable Listeners</td>
<td>11-51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@fcneval/fcneval.m Class Code</td>
<td>11-52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@fcnview/fcnview.m Class Code</td>
<td>11-53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hierarchies of Classes — Concepts</td>
<td>12-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Classification</td>
<td>12-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Develop the Abstraction</td>
<td>12-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Design of Class Hierarchies</td>
<td>12-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Super and Subclass Behavior</td>
<td>12-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implementation and Interface Inheritance</td>
<td>12-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create Subclasses — Syntax and Techniques</td>
<td>12-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subclass Definition</td>
<td>12-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initialize Superclasses from Subclasses</td>
<td>12-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Call Superclass Constructor Explicitly</td>
<td>12-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constructor Arguments and Object Initialization</td>
<td>12-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Call Only Direct Superclass from Constructor</td>
<td>12-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subclass Alias for Existing Class</td>
<td>12-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sequence of Constructor Calls in Class Hierarchy</td>
<td>12-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modify Superclass Methods</td>
<td>12-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When to Modify Superclass Methods</td>
<td>12-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extend Superclass Methods</td>
<td>12-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complete Superclass Methods in Subclass</td>
<td>12-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How to Redefine Superclass Methods</td>
<td>12-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modify Superclass Properties</td>
<td>12-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allowed Superclass Property Modification</td>
<td>12-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Private Local Property Takes Precedence in Method</td>
<td>12-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subclass Multiple Classes</td>
<td>12-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class Member Compatibility</td>
<td>12-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiple Inheritance</td>
<td>12-21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specify Allowed Subclasses</td>
<td>12-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basic Knowledge</td>
<td>12-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Why Control Allowed Subclasses</td>
<td>12-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specify Allowed Subclasses</td>
<td>12-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Sealed Hierarchy of Classes</td>
<td>12-24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control Access to Class Members</td>
<td>12-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basic Knowledge</td>
<td>12-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Topic</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applications for Access Control Lists</td>
<td>12-26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specify Access to Class Members</td>
<td>12-26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Properties with Access Lists</td>
<td>12-27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methods with Access Lists</td>
<td>12-28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abstract Methods with Access Lists</td>
<td>12-32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property Access List</td>
<td>12-33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Method Access List</td>
<td>12-34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Event Access List</td>
<td>12-35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support Both Handle and Value Subclasses</td>
<td>12-36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basic Knowledge</td>
<td>12-36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Handle Compatibility Rules</td>
<td>12-36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Handle-Compatible Classes</td>
<td>12-37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subclass Handle-Compatible Classes</td>
<td>12-39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methods for Handle Compatible Classes</td>
<td>12-41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Handle-Compatible Classes and Heterogeneous Arrays</td>
<td>12-42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subclasses of MATLAB Built-In Types</td>
<td>12-44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATLAB Built-In Types</td>
<td>12-44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Built-In Types You Cannot Subclass</td>
<td>12-44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Why Subclass Built-In Types</td>
<td>12-45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Which Functions Work with Subclasses of Built-In Types</td>
<td>12-45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Behavior of Built-In Functions with Subclass Objects</td>
<td>12-45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Built-In Subclasses That Define Properties</td>
<td>12-46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Behavior of Inherited Built-In Methods</td>
<td>12-48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subclass double</td>
<td>12-48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Built-In Data Value Methods</td>
<td>12-49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Built-In Data Organization Methods</td>
<td>12-50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Built-In Indexing Methods</td>
<td>12-51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Built-In Concatenation Methods</td>
<td>12-51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Built-In Subclass Without Properties</td>
<td>12-53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Class to Manage uint8 Data</td>
<td>12-53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using the DocUint8 Class</td>
<td>12-54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Built-In Subclass with Properties</td>
<td>12-61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subclasses with Properties</td>
<td>12-61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property Added</td>
<td>12-61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methods Implemented</td>
<td>12-61</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Class Definition Code ........................................ 12-62
Using ExtendDouble ........................................ 12-63
Indexed Reference for ExtendDouble ....................... 12-64
Concatenation of ExtendDouble Objects ................... 12-65

Use of size and numel with Classes ...................... 12-67
  size and numel ......................................... 12-67
  Built-In Class Behavior ................................ 12-67
  Subclasses Inherited Behavior ......................... 12-68
  Classes Not Derived from Built-In Classes ............ 12-69
  Change the Behavior of size or numel ................. 12-71
  Overload numArgumentsFromSubscript Instead of numel 12-72

Class to Represent Hardware ............................ 12-73
  Objective ............................................ 12-73
  Why Derive from int32 ................................ 12-73
  Implementation ...................................... 12-73
  Construct MuxCard Object ............................. 12-74
  Call Methods of int32 ................................ 12-75

Determine Array Class ................................. 12-76
  Query the Class Name ................................ 12-76
  Test for Array Class .................................. 12-76
  Test for Specific Types ............................... 12-77
  Test for Most Derived Class ......................... 12-78

Abstract Classes ........................................ 12-80
  Abstract Classes ..................................... 12-80
  Declare Classes as Abstract ......................... 12-81
  Determine If a Class Is Abstract ..................... 12-82
  Find Inherited Abstract Properties and Methods .... 12-83

Interfaces .............................................. 12-85
  Interfaces and Abstract Classes ...................... 12-85
  Interface Class Implementing Graphs ................. 12-85
Saving and Loading Objects

Save and Load Process ........................................... 13-2
  Save and Load Objects ........................................ 13-2
  What Information Is Saved? ................................. 13-2
  How Is the Property Data Loaded? ....................... 13-2
  Errors During Load ......................................... 13-3

Reduce MAT-File Size for Saved Objects ............... 13-4
  Default Values ............................................. 13-4
  Dependent Properties .................................... 13-4
  Transient Properties .................................... 13-4
  Avoid Saving Unwanted Variables ...................... 13-4

Save Object Data to Recreate Graphics Objects ...... 13-5
  What to Save ............................................... 13-5
  Regenerate When Loading ................................ 13-5
  Change to a Stairstep Chart ............................. 13-6

Improve Version Compatibility with Default Values 13-7
  Version Compatibility ..................................... 13-7
  Using a Default Property Value ....................... 13-7

Avoid Property Initialization Order Dependency .... 13-9
  Control Property Loading ................................ 13-9
  Dependent Property with Private Storage .......... 13-9
  Property Value Computed from Other Properties .. 13-11

Modify the Save and Load Process ....................... 13-13
  When to Modify the Save and Load Process ........... 13-13
  How to Modify the Save and Load Process .......... 13-13
  Implementing saveobj and loadobj Methods ........ 13-14
  Additional Considerations ............................... 13-14
  Related Examples ......................................... 13-15

Basic saveobj and loadobj Pattern ...................... 13-16
  Using saveobj and loadobj .............................. 13-16
  Handle Load Problems ................................... 13-17

Maintain Class Compatibility ............................. 13-20
  Rename Property ......................................... 13-20
Update Property When Loading ........................................... 13-22
Maintaining Compatible Versions of a Class ....................... 13-23
Version 2 of the PhoneBookEntry Class ............................. 13-24

Initialize Objects When Loading ....................................... 13-27
Calling Constructor When Loading Objects ......................... 13-27
Initializing Objects in the loadobj Method ......................... 13-27

Save and Load Objects from Class Hierarchies ................... 13-29
Saving and Loading Subclass Objects ............................... 13-29
Reconstruct the Subclass Object from a Saved struct .......... 13-29

Restore Listeners ......................................................... 13-32
Create Listener with loadobj ......................................... 13-32
Use Transient Property to Load Listener ......................... 13-32
Using the BankAccount and AccountManager Classes .......... 13-34

Save and Load Dynamic Properties ................................ 13-35
Saving Dynamic Properties ............................................ 13-35
When You Need saveobj and loadobj Methods .................. 13-35
Implementing saveobj and loadobj Methods ....................... 13-35

Enumerations

Defining Named Values .................................................. 14-2
Kinds of Predefined Names ............................................. 14-2
Techniques for Defining Enumerations ............................. 14-3

How to Use Enumerations ............................................... 14-5
Basic Knowledge .......................................................... 14-5
Enumeration Class ....................................................... 14-6
Defining Methods in Enumeration Classes ......................... 14-10
Defining Properties in Enumeration Classes ...................... 14-11
Array Expansion Operations ......................................... 14-12
Constructor Calling Sequence ....................................... 14-12

Enumeration Class Restrictions ..................................... 14-15
Enumerations Derived from Built-In Types ........................................ 14-16
  Basic Knowledge ............................................................... 14-16
  Why Derive Enumerations from Built-In Types ....................... 14-16
  How to Alias Enumeration Names ....................................... 14-18
  Superclass Constructor Returns Underlying Value ................. 14-19
  Default Converter .......................................................... 14-20

Mutable (Handle) vs. Immutable (Value) Enumeration Members .............. 14-22
  Basic Knowledge ............................................................. 14-22
  Selecting Handle- or Value-Based Enumerations .................... 14-22
  Value-Based Enumeration Classes ................................. 14-22
  Handle-Based Enumeration Classes ............................... 14-24
  Using Enumerations to Represent a State ....................... 14-27

Enumerations That Encapsulate Data ........................................ 14-29
  Basic Knowledge ............................................................. 14-29
  Store Data in Properties ................................................. 14-29

Saving and Loading Enumerations ........................................... 14-33
  Basic Knowledge ............................................................. 14-33
  Built-In and Value-Based Enumeration Classes .................... 14-33
  Simple and Handle-Based Enumeration Classes .................... 14-33
  Causes: Load as `struct` Instead of Object .................... 14-34

Constant Properties

Properties with Constant Values ............................................ 15-2
  Defining Named Constants ................................................ 15-2
  Constant Property Assigned a Handle Object ....................... 15-4
  Constant Property Assigned Any Object ............................ 15-4
## Information from Class Metadata

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Class Metadata</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What Is Class Metadata?</td>
<td>16-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The meta Package</td>
<td>16-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metaclass Objects</td>
<td>16-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metaclass Object Lifecycle</td>
<td>16-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Inspect Class and Object Metadata</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect a Class</td>
<td>16-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metaclass EnumeratedValues Property</td>
<td>16-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Find Objects with Specific Values</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Find Handle Objects</td>
<td>16-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Find by Attribute Settings</td>
<td>16-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Get Information About Properties</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The meta.property object</td>
<td>16-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How to Find Properties with Specific Attributes</td>
<td>16-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Find Default Values in Property Metadata</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Values</td>
<td>16-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meta.property Data</td>
<td>16-19</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Specialize Object Behavior

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Methods That Modify Default Behavior</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How to Customize Class Behavior</td>
<td>17-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Which Methods Control Which Behaviors</td>
<td>17-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overload Functions and Override Methods</td>
<td>17-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Number of Arguments for subsref and subsasgn</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How MATLAB Determines Number of Arguments</td>
<td>17-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syntax for subsref, and subsasgn Methods</td>
<td>17-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Modify nargout and nargin for Indexing Methods</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When to Modify Number of Arguments</td>
<td>17-8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Customizing Object Display

Custom Display Interface ........................................ 18-2
  Default Object Display ...................................... 18-2
  CustomDisplay Class ......................................... 18-3
  Methods for Customizing Object Display .................. 18-3

How CustomDisplay Works ....................................... 18-7
  Steps to Display an Object .................................. 18-7
  Methods Called for a Given Object State ................. 18-8

Role of size Function in Custom Displays ................... 18-9
  How size Is Used ........................................... 18-9
  Precautions When Overloading size ......................... 18-9

Customize Display for Heterogeneous Arrays ................. 18-10

Class with Default Object Display .......................... 18-12
  The EmployeeInfo Class .................................... 18-12
  Default Display — Scalar .................................. 18-13
  Default Display — Nonscalar ................................ 18-13
  Default Display — Empty Object Array .................... 18-14
  Default Display — Handle to Deleted Object .............. 18-15
  Default Display — Detailed Display ....................... 18-15

Choose a Technique for Display Customization ............. 18-16
  Ways to Implement a Custom Display ...................... 18-16
  Sample Approaches Using the Interface .................... 18-17

Customize Property Display ..................................... 18-20
  Change the Property Order .................................. 18-20
  Change the Values Displayed for Properties ............... 18-21
Customize Header, Property List, and Footer .......................... 18-23
  Design of Custom Display ........................................... 18-23
  getHeader Method Override ......................................... 18-25
  getPropertyGroups Override ......................................... 18-26
  getFooter Override .................................................. 18-26

Customize Display of Scalar Objects ................................. 18-29
  Design Of Custom Display .......................................... 18-29
  displayScalarObject Method Override ......................... 18-30
  getPropertyGroups Override ..................................... 18-31

Customize Display of Object Arrays ................................. 18-33
  Design of Custom Display .......................................... 18-33
  The displayNonScalarObject Override .......................... 18-34
  The displayEmptyObject Override ............................... 18-35

Overload the disp Function ........................................... 18-38
  Display Methods ...................................................... 18-38
  Implement disp or disp and display .............................. 18-38
  Relationship Between disp and display ......................... 18-39

Implementing a Class for Polynomials

Class Design for Polynomials ......................................... 19-2
  Object Requirements .................................................. 19-2
  DocPolynom Class Members ......................................... 19-2
  DocPolynom Class Synopsis ........................................ 19-4
  The DocPolynom Constructor ...................................... 19-13
  Remove Irrelevant Coefficients ................................... 19-14
  Convert DocPolynom Objects to Other Types .................... 19-15
  Overload disp for DocPolynom ...................................... 19-17
  Display Evaluated Expression ..................................... 19-18
  Redefine Indexed Reference ...................................... 19-18
  Define Arithmetic Operators ...................................... 19-21
Designing Related Classes

A Simple Class Hierarchy ....................................... 20-2
  Shared and Specialized Properties ........................ 20-2
  Designing a Class for Financial Assets ................. 20-3
  DocAsset Class Definition ................................. 20-4
  Summary of the DocAsset Class ........................... 20-4
  The DocAsset Constructor Method ......................... 20-5
  The DocAsset Display Method .............................. 20-6
Designing a Class for Stock Assets ......................... 20-7
  DocStock Class Definition ................................. 20-7
  Summary of the DocStock Class ............................ 20-7
Designing a Class for Bond Assets ......................... 20-10
  DocBond Class Definition ................................. 20-10
  Summary of the DocBond Class ............................. 20-10
Designing a Class for Savings Assets ...................... 20-14
  DocSavings Class Definition .............................. 20-14
  Summary of the DocSavings Class ......................... 20-14
DocAsset Class Code Listing ................................ 20-17
DocStock Class Code Listing ................................ 20-17
DocBond Class Code Listing ................................ 20-18
DocSavings Class Code Listing ............................... 20-19

Containing Assets in a Portfolio .............................. 20-20
  Kinds of Containment ...................................... 20-20
  Designing the DocPortfolio Class ......................... 20-20
  Displaying the Class Files ................................ 20-21
  Summary of the DocPortfolio Class ....................... 20-21
  The DocPortfolio Constructor Method .................... 20-23
  The DocPortfolio disp Method ............................ 20-24
  The DocPortfolio pie3 Method ............................ 20-24
  Visualizing a Portfolio .................................... 20-25
  DocPortfolio Class Code Listing ......................... 20-26
Using Object-Oriented Design in MATLAB

- “Why Use Object-Oriented Design” on page 1-2
- “Using Handles” on page 1-12
Why Use Object-Oriented Design

In this section...

“Approaches to Writing MATLAB Programs” on page 1-2
“When Should You Create Object-Oriented Programs” on page 1-6

Approaches to Writing MATLAB Programs

Creating software applications typically involves designing the application data and implementing operations performed on that data. Procedural programs pass data to functions, which perform the necessary operations on the data. Object-oriented software encapsulates data and operations in objects that interact with each other via the object’s interface.

The MATLAB language enables you to create programs using both procedural and object-oriented techniques and to use objects and ordinary functions together in your programs.

Procedural Program Design

In procedural programming, your design focuses on the steps that must execute to achieve a desired state. Typically, you represent data as individual variables or fields of a structure. You implement operations as functions that take the variables as arguments. Programs usually call a sequence of functions, each one of which is passed data, and then returns modified data. Each function performs an operation or many operations on the data.

Object-Oriented Program Design

The object-oriented program design involves:

- Identifying the components of the system or application that you want to build
- Analyzing and identifying patterns to determine what components are used repeatedly or share characteristics
- Classifying components based on similarities and differences

After performing this analysis, you define classes that describe the objects your application uses.
Classes and Objects

A class describes a set of objects with common characteristics. Objects are specific instances of a class. The values contained in an object's properties are what make an object different from other objects of the same class. The functions defined by the class (called methods) are what implement object behaviors that are common to all objects of a class.

Using Objects in MATLAB Programs

The MATLAB language defines objects that are designed for use in any MATLAB code. For example, consider the `try/catch` programming construct.

If the code executed in the `try` block generates an error, program control passes to the code in the `catch` block. This behavior enables your program to provide special error handling that is more appropriate to your particular application. However, you must have enough information about the error to take the appropriate action.

MATLAB provides detailed information about the error by passing an `MException` object to functions executing the `try/catch` blocks.

The following `try/catch` blocks display the error message stored in an `MException` object when you call a function (`surf` in this case) without the necessary arguments:

```matlab
try
    surf
catch ME
    disp(ME.message)
end
Not enough input arguments.
```

In this code, `ME` is an object of the `MException` class, which the `catch` statement creates to capture information about the error. Displaying the value of the object `message` property returns the error message (Not enough input arguments). Your program can access other properties to get information about the error.

List all the public properties of an object with the `properties` function:

```matlab
properties(ME)
Properties for class MException:
    identifier
```
message
cause
stack

**Objects Organize Data**

Properties store the information returned in MException objects is stored in properties. Reference a property using dot notation, as in `ME.message`. This reference returns the value of the property. For example,

```matlab
class(ME.message)
ans =
char
```

shows that the value of the `message` property is an array of class `char` (a character array). The `stack` property contains a MATLAB `struct`:

```matlab
s = ME.stack
s =
    file: [1x90 char]
    name: 'surf'
    line: 50
```

You can treat `ME.stack` as a structure and reference its fields without assigning the value:

```matlab
ME.stack.file
ans =
D:\myMATLAB\matlab\toolbox\matlab\graph3d\surf.m
```

The `file` field of the `struct` contained in the `stack` property is a character array:

```matlab
class(ME.stack.file)
ans =
char
```

You could, for example, use a property reference in MATLAB functions:

```matlab
strcmp(ME.stack.name,'surf')
an1 =
    1
Objects Manage Their Own Data

You could write a function that generates a report from the data returned by MException object properties. This function could become complicated because it would have to be able to handle all possible errors. Perhaps you would use different functions for different try/catch blocks in your program. If the data returned by the error object must change, you would have to update the functions to use the new data.

Objects define their own operations as part of their interface. The MException object can generate its own report. The methods that implement an object's operations are part of the object definition (that is, specified by the class that defines the object). The object definition can be modified many times, but the interface your program use does not change. Objects isolate your code from the object's code.

To see what methods exist for MException objects, use the methods function:

```matlab
methods(ME)
```

Methods for class MException:

```
addCause       getReport      ne             throw
eq             isequal        rethrow        throwAsCaller
```

Static methods:

```
last
```

You can use these methods like any other MATLAB statement when there is an MException object in the workspace. For example:

```matlab
ME.getReport
```

```
ans =
Error using ==> surf
Not enough input arguments.
```

Objects often have methods that overload (redefined for the particular class of the object) MATLAB functions. Overloading enables you to use objects just like other values. For example, MException objects have an isequal method. This method enables you to compare these objects in the same way you would compare variables containing numeric values. If ME1 and ME2 are MException objects, you can compare them with this statement:

```matlab
isequal(ME1,ME2)
```
However, what really happens in this case is MATLAB calls the `MException isequal` method because you passed `MException` objects to `isequal`.

Similarly, the `eq` method enables you to use the `==` operator with `MException` objects:

```
ME == ME2
```

Objects should support only those methods that make sense. For example, it would probably not make sense to multiply `MException` objects so the `MException` class does not implement methods to do so.

**When Should You Create Object-Oriented Programs**

You can implement simple programming tasks as simple functions. However, as the magnitude and complexity of your tasks increase, functions become more complex and difficult to manage.

As functions become too large, you can break them into smaller functions and pass data from one to function to another. However, as the number of functions becomes large, designing, and managing the data passed to functions becomes difficult and error prone. At this point, consider moving your MATLAB programming tasks to object-oriented designs.

**Understand a Problem in Terms of Its Objects**

Thinking in terms of objects is simpler and more natural for some problems. Think of the nouns in your problem statement as the objects to define and the verbs as the operations to perform.

Consider the design of classes to represent money lending institutions (banks, mortgage companies, individual money lenders, and so on). It is difficult to represent the various types of lenders as procedures. However, you can represent each one as an object that performs certain actions and contains certain data. The process of designing the objects involves identifying the characteristics of a lender that are important to your application.

**Identify Commonalities**

What do all money lenders have in common? All `MoneyLender` objects can have a `loan` method and an `InterestRate` property, for example.

**Identify Differences**

How does each money lender differ? One can provide loans to businesses while another provides loans only to individuals. Therefore, the `loan` operation might need to be
different for different types of lending institutions. Subclasses of a base `MoneyLender` class can specialize the subclass versions of the `loan` method. Each lender can have a different value for its `InterestRate` property.

Factor out commonalities into a superclass and implement what is specific to each type of lender in the subclass.

**Add Only What Is Necessary**

These institutions might engage in activities that are not of interest to your application. During the design phase, determine what operations and data an object must contain based on your problem definition.

**Objects Manage Internal State**

Objects provide several useful features not available from structures and cell arrays. For example, objects can:

- Constrain the data values assigned to any given property
- Calculate the value of a property only when it is queried
- Broadcast notices when any property value is queried or changed
- Restrict access to properties and methods

**Reducing Redundancy**

As the complexity of your program increases, the benefits of an object-oriented design become more apparent. For example, suppose that you implement the following procedure as part of your application:

1. Check inputs
2. Perform computation on the first input argument
3. Transform the result of step 2 based on the second input argument
4. Check validity of outputs and return values

You can implement this procedure as an ordinary function. But suppose that you use this procedure again somewhere in your application, except that step 2 must perform a different computation. You could copy and paste the first implementation, and then rewrite step 2. Or you could create a function that accepted an option indicating which computation to make, and so on. However, these options lead to more complicated code.

An object-oriented design can factor out the common code into what is called a base class. The base class would define the algorithm used and implement whatever is common to
all cases that use this code. Step 2 could be defined syntactically, but not implemented, leaving the specialized implementation to the classes that you then derive from this base class.

Step 1
function checkInputs()
    % actual implementation
end

Step 2
function results = computeOnFirstArg()
    % specify syntax only
end

Step 3
function transformResults()
    % actual implementation
end

Step 4
function out = checkOutputs()
    % actual implementation
end

The code in the base class is not copied or modified. Classes you derive from the base class inherit this code. Inheritance reduces the amount of code to be tested, and isolates your program from changes to the basic procedure.

**Defining Consistent Interfaces**

The use of a class as the basis for similar, but more specialized classes is a useful technique in object-oriented programming. This class defines a common interface. Incorporating this kind of class into your program design enables you to:

- Identify the requirements of a particular objective
- Encode requirements into your program as an interface class

**Reducing Complexity**

Objects reduce complexity by reducing what you must know to use a component or system:

- Objects provide an interface that hides implementation details.
Objects enforce rules that control how objects interact.

To illustrate these advantages, consider the implementation of a data structure called a doubly linked list. See “Class to Implement Linked Lists” on page 3-36 for the actual implementation.

Here is a diagram of a three-element list:

To add a node to the list, disconnect the existing nodes in the list, insert the new node, and reconnect the nodes appropriately. Here are the basic steps:

First disconnect the nodes:
1. Unlink n2.Prev from n1
2. Unlink n1.Next from n2

Now create the new node, connect it, and renumber the original nodes:
1. Link new.Prev to n1
2. Link new.Next to n3 (was n2)
3. Link n1.Next to new (will be n2)
4. Link n3.Prev to new (will be n2)
The details of how methods perform these steps are encapsulated in the class design. Each node object contains the functionality to insert itself into or remove itself from the list.

For example, in this class, every node object has an `insertAfter` method. To add a node to a list, create the node object and then call its `insertAfter` method:

```matlab
nnew = NodeConstructor;
nnew.insertAfter(n1)
```

Because the node class defines the code that implements these operations, this code is:

- Implemented in an optimal way by the class author
- Always up to date with the current version of the class
- Properly tested
- Can automatically update old-versions of the objects when they are loaded from MAT-files.

The object methods enforce the rules for how the nodes interact. This design removes the responsibility for enforcing rules from the applications that use the objects. It also means that the application is less likely to generate errors in its own implementation of the process.

**Fostering Modularity**

As you decompose a system into objects (car -> engine -> fuel system -> oxygen sensor), you form modules around natural boundaries. Classes provide three levels of control over code modularity:

- Public — Any code can access this particular property or call this method.
- Protected — Only the object's own methods and those of the object's whose class has been derived from this object's class can access this property or call this method.
- Private — Only the object's own methods can access this property or call this method.

**Overloaded Functions and Operators**

When you define a class, you can overload existing MATLAB functions to work with your new object. For example, the MATLAB serial port class overloads the `fread` function to read data from the device connected to the port represented by this object. You can define various operations, such as equality (`eq`) or addition (`plus`), for a class you have defined to represent your data.
More About

- “Role of Classes in MATLAB” on page 3-2
Using Handles

In this section...

“What Is a Handle?” on page 1-12
“Copies of Handles” on page 1-12
“Handle Objects Modified in Functions” on page 1-13
“Determine If an Object Is a Handle” on page 1-15
“Deleted Handle Objects” on page 1-15

This topic describes the behavior of handle objects for users of handle objects. For information on defining handle classes, see “Handle Classes”.

What Is a Handle?

Certain kinds of MATLAB objects are handles. When a variable holds a handle, it actually holds a reference to the object.

Handle objects enable more than one variable to refer to the same object. Handle-object behavior affects what happens when you copy handle objects and when you pass them to functions.

Copies of Handles

All copies of a handle object variable refer to the same underlying object. This reference behavior means that if h identifies a handle object, then,

\[ h2 = h; \]

Creates another variable, \( h2 \), that refers to the same object as \( h \).

For example, the MATLAB audioplayer function creates a handle object that contains the audio source data to reproduce a specific sound segment. The variable returned by the audioplayer function identifies the audio data and enables you to access object functions to play the audio.

MATLAB software includes audio data that you can load and use to create an audioplayer object. This sample load audio data, creates the audio player, and plays the audio:
load gong Fs y
gongSound = audioplayer(y,Fs);
play(gongSound)

Suppose that you copy the gongSound object handle to another variable (gongSound2):
gongSound2 = gongSound;

The variables gongSound and gongSound2 are copies of the same handle and, therefore, refer to the same audio source. Access the audioplayer information using either variable.

For example, set the sample rate for the gong audio source by assigning a new value to the SampleRate property. First get the current sample rate and then set a new sample rate:

sr = gongSound.SampleRate
sr =

     8192
gongSound.SampleRate = sr*2;

You can use gongSound2 to access the same audio source:
gongSound2.SampleRate
ans =

     16384

Play the gong sound with the new sample rate:
play(gongSound2)

Handle Objects Modified in Functions

When you pass an argument to a function, the function copies the variable from the workspace in which you call the function into the parameter variable in the function’s workspace.

Passing a nonhandle variable to a function does not affect the original variable that is in the caller’s workspace. For example, myFunc modifies a local variable called var, but when the function ends, the local variable var no longer exists:
function myFunc(var)
    var = var + 1;
end

Define a variable and pass it to myfunc:

x = 12;
myFunc(x)

The value of x has not changed after executing myFunc(x):

x

x = 

12

The myFunc function can return the modified value, which you could assign to the same variable name (x) or another variable.

function out = myFunc(var)
    out = var + 1;
end

Modify a value in myfunc:

x = 12;
x = myFunc(x)

x =

13

When the argument is a handle variable, the function copies only the handle, not the object identified by that handle. Both handles (original and local copy) refer to the same object.

When the function modifies the data referred to by the object handle, those changes are accessible from the handle variable in the calling workspace without the need to return the modified object.

For example, the modifySampleRate function changes the audioplayer sample rate:

function modifySampleRate(audioObj,sr)
    audioObj.SampleRate = sr;
end
Create an `audioplayer` object and pass it to the `modifySampleRate` function:

```matlab
load gong Fs y
gongSound = audioplayer(y,Fs);
gongSound.SampleRate
ans =
    8192
modifySampleRate(gongSound,16384)
gongSound.SampleRate
ans =
    16384
```

The `modifySampleRate` function does not need to return a modified `gongSound` object because `audioplayer` objects are handle objects.

## Determine If an Object Is a Handle

Handle objects are members of the `handle` class. Therefore, you can always identify an object as a handle using the `isa` function. `isa` returns logical `true` (1) when testing for a handle variable:

```matlab
load gong Fs y
gongSound = audioplayer(y,Fs);
is(a(gongSound,'handle'))
ans =
    1
```

To determine if a variable is a valid handle object, use `isa` and `isvalid`:

```matlab
if isa(gongSound,'handle') && isvalid(gongSound)
    ...
end
```

## Deleted Handle Objects

When a handle object has been deleted, the handle variables that referenced the object can still exist. These variables become invalid because the object they referred to no
longer exists. Calling `delete` on the object removes the object, but does not clear handle variables.

For example, create an `audioplayer` object:

```matlab
load gong Fs y
gongSound = audioplayer(y,Fs);
```

The output argument, `gongSound`, is a handle variable. Calling `delete` deletes the object along with the audio source information it contains:

```matlab
delete(gongSound)
```

However, the handle variable still exists:

```matlab
gongSound
gongSound = 
    handle to deleted audioplayer
```

The `whos` command shows `gongSound` as an `audioplayer` object:

```matlab
whos
Name         Size            Bytes  Class          Attributes
Fs           1x1                  8  double
gongSound    1x1               104  audioplayer
y           42028x1             336224  double
```

**Note:** The value for `Bytes` returned by the `whos` command does not include all the data referenced by a handle because many variables can reference the same data.

The handle `gongSound` no longer refers to a valid object, as shown by the `isvalid` handle method:

```matlab
isvalid(gongSound)
ans =
    0
```
Calling `delete` on a deleted handle does nothing and does not cause an error. You can pass an array containing both valid and invalid handles to `delete`. MATLAB deletes the valid handles, but does not issue an error when encountering handles that are already invalid.

You cannot access properties with the invalid handle variable:

```plaintext
gongSound.SampleRate
```

`Invalid or deleted object.`

Functions and methods that access object properties cause an error:

```plaintext
play(gongSound)
```

`Invalid or deleted object.`

To remove the variable, `gongSound`, use `clear`:

```plaintext
clear gongSound
```

```plaintext
whos
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Size</th>
<th>Bytes</th>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Attributes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fs</td>
<td>1x1</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>double</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y</td>
<td>42028x1</td>
<td>336224</td>
<td>double</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**More About**

- “Handle Class Destructor” on page 7-14
- “Comparison of Handle and Value Classes” on page 7-2
Basic Example
A Simple Class

In this section...

“Define a Simple Class” on page 2-2
“Create Object” on page 2-3
“Access Properties” on page 2-3
“Call Methods” on page 2-3
“Add Constructor” on page 2-4
“Vectorize Methods” on page 2-5
“Overload Functions” on page 2-5
“BasicClass Code Listing” on page 2-6

Define a Simple Class

The basic purpose of a class is to define an object that encapsulates data and the operations performed on that data. For example, BasicClass defines a property and two methods that operate on the data in that property:

• Value — Property that contains the data stored in an object of the class
• roundOff — Method that rounds the value of the property to two decimal places
• multiplyBy — Method that multiplies the value of the property by the specified number

Here is the definition of BasicClass:

```matlab
classdef BasicClass
    properties
        Value
    end
    methods
        function r = roundOff(obj)
            r = round([obj.Value],2);
        end
        function r = multiplyBy(obj,n)
            r = [obj.Value] * n;
        end
    end
end
```
For a summary of class syntax, see `classdef`.

To use the class, create an object of the class, assign the class data, and call operations on that data.

**Create Object**

Create an object of the class using the class name:

```matlab
a = BasicClass
```

```
a =
  BasicClass with properties:
    Value: []
```

Initially, the property value is empty.

**Access Properties**

Assign a value to the `Value` property using the object variable and a dot before the property name:

```matlab
a.Value = pi/3;
```

To access a property value, use dot notation without the assignment:

```matlab
a.Value
ans =
  1.0472
```

For information on class properties, see “Defining Properties” on page 8-4

**Call Methods**

Call the `roundOff` method on object `a`:

```matlab
a = BasicClass(pi/3);
roundOff(a)
```
Pass the object as the first argument to a method that takes multiple arguments:
multiplyBy(a,3)
ans =
    3.1416
You can also call a method using dot notation:
a.multiplyBy(3)
It is not necessary to pass the object explicitly as an argument when using dot notation. The notation uses the object to the left of the method name.

For information on class methods, see “Ordinary Methods” on page 9-7

**Add Constructor**

Classes can define a special method to create objects, called a constructor. Constructor methods enable you to validate and assign property values. Here is a constructor for the BasicClass class:

```
methods
    function obj = BasicClass(val)
        if nargin > 0
            if isnumeric(val)
                obj.Value = val;
            else
                error('Value must be numeric')
            end
        end
    end
end
```

The constructor enables you to create an object in one step:

a = BasicClass(pi/3)

a =
BasicClass with properties:

Value: 1.0472

This constructor also performs type checking on the input argument. For example:

```matlab
a = BasicClass('A character array')
```

Error using BasicClass (line 11)
Value must be numeric

For information on constructors, see “Class Constructor Methods” on page 9-16

### Vectorize Methods

MATLAB enables you to vectorize operations. For example, you can add a number to a vector:

```matlab
[1 2 3] + 2
```

ans =

3  4  5

MATLAB adds the number 2 to each of the elements in the array [1 2 3]. To vectorize the arithmetic operator methods, enclose the Value property reference in brackets.

```matlab
[obj.Value] + 2
```

By using vector notation, a can be an array:

```matlab
a(1) = BasicClass(2.7984);
a(2) = BasicClass(sin(pi/3));
a(3) = BasicClass(7);
roundOff(a)
```

ans =

2.8000  0.8700  7.0000

### Overload Functions

Classes can implement existing functionality, such as addition, by defining a method with the same name as the existing MATLAB function. For example, suppose you want
to add two BasicClass object. It makes sense to add the values of the ObjectValue properties of each object.

Here is an overload of the MATLAB plus function. It defines addition for this class as adding the property values:

```matlab
method
    function r = plus(o1,o2)
        r = [o1.Value] + [o2.Value];
    end
end
```

By implementing a method called plus, you can use the “+” operator with objects of BasicClass.

```matlab
a = BasicClass(pi/3);
b = BasicClass(pi/4);
a + b
```

```matlab
ans =

1.8326
```

**Related Information**

For information on overloading functions, see “Overload Functions for Your Class” on page 9-26.

For information on overloading operators, see “Class Operator Implementation” on page 17-40.

**BasicClass Code Listing**

Here is the BasicClass definition after adding the features discussed in this topic:

```matlab
classdef BasicClass
    properties
        Value
    end
    methods
        function obj = BasicClass(val)
            if nargin == 1
                if isnumeric(val)
```
obj.Value = val;
else
    error('Value must be numeric')
end
end
end
function r = roundOff(obj)
    r = round([obj.Value],2);
end
function r = multiplyBy(obj,n)
    r = [obj.Value] * n;
end
function r = plus(o1,o2)
    r = [o1.Value] + [o2.Value];
end
end
end
MATLAB Classes Overview

• “Role of Classes in MATLAB” on page 3-2
• “Developing Classes — Typical Workflow” on page 3-8
• “Class to Manage Writable Files” on page 3-19
• “Class to Represent Structured Data” on page 3-24
• “Class to Implement Linked Lists” on page 3-36
• “Class for Graphing Functions” on page 3-53
Role of Classes in MATLAB

In this section...

“Classes” on page 3-2
“Some Basic Relationships” on page 3-4

Classes

In the MATLAB language, every value is assigned to a class. For example, creating a variable with an assignment statement constructs a variable of the appropriate class:

```matlab
a = 7;
b = 'some text';
s.Name = 'Nancy';
s.Age = 64;
whos
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Size</th>
<th>Bytes</th>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Attributes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>1x1</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>double</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>1x9</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>char</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s</td>
<td>1x1</td>
<td>370</td>
<td>struct</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Basic commands like `whos` display the class of each value in the workspace. This information helps MATLAB users recognize that some values are characters and display as text while other values are double precision numbers, and so on. Some variables can contain different classes of values like structures.

Predefined Classes

MATLAB defines fundamental class that comprise the basic types used by the language. For more information, see “Fundamental MATLAB Classes”.

User-Defined Classes

You can create your own MATLAB classes. For example, you could define a class to represent polynomials. This class could define the operations typically associated with MATLAB classes, like addition, subtraction, indexing, displaying in the command window, and so on. These operations would need to perform the equivalent of polynomial addition, polynomial subtraction, and so on. For example, when you add two polynomial objects:
p1 + p2

the `plus` operation must be able to add polynomial objects because the polynomial class defines this operation.

When you define a class, you can overload special MATLAB functions (such as `plus.m` for the addition operator). MATLAB calls these methods when users apply those operations to objects of your class.

See “Class Design for Polynomials” on page 19-2 for an example that creates just such a class.

**MATLAB Classes — Key Terms**

MATLAB classes use the following words to describe different parts of a class definition and related concepts.

- **Class definition** — Description of what is common to every instance of a class.
- **Properties** — Data storage for class instances
- **Methods** — Special functions that implement operations that are usually performed only on instances of the class
- **Events** — Messages that are defined by classes and broadcast by class instances when some specific action occurs
- **Attributes** — Values that modify the behavior of properties, methods, events, and classes
- **Listeners** — Objects that respond to a specific event by executing a callback function when the event notice is broadcast
- **Objects** — Instances of classes, which contain actual data values stored in the objects' properties
- **Subclasses** — Classes that are derived from other classes and that inherit the methods, properties, and events from those classes (subclasses facilitate the reuse of code defined in the superclass from which they are derived).
- **Superclasses** — Classes that are used as a basis for the creation of more specifically defined classes (i.e., subclasses).
- **Packages** — Folders that define a scope for class and function naming

These are general descriptions of these components and concepts. This documentation describes all of these components in detail.
Some Basic Relationships

This section discusses some of the basic concepts used by MATLAB classes.

Classes

A class is a definition that specifies certain characteristics that all instances of the class share. These characteristics are determined by the properties, methods, and events that define the class and the values of attributes that modify the behavior of each of these class components. Class definitions describe how objects of the class are created and destroyed, what data the objects contain, and how you can manipulate this data.

Class Hierarchies

It sometimes makes sense to define a new class in terms of existing classes. This enables you to reuse the designs and techniques in a new class that represents a similar entity. You accomplish this reuse by creating a subclass. A subclass defines objects that are a subset of those defined by the superclass. A subclass is more specific than its superclass and might add new properties, methods, and events to those inherited from the superclass.

Mathematical sets can help illustrate the relationships among classes. In the following diagram, the set of Positive Integers is a subset of the set of Integers and a subset of Positive numbers. All three sets are subsets of Real numbers, which is a subset of All Numbers.

The definition of Positive Integers requires the additional specification that members of the set be greater than zero. Positive Integers combine the definitions from both Integers and Positives. The resulting subset is more specific, and therefore more narrowly defined, than the superset, but still shares all the characteristics that define the superset.
The “is a” relationship is a good way to determine if it is appropriate to define a particular subset in terms of existing supersets. For example, each of the following statements makes senses:

- A Positive Integer is an Integer
- A Positive Integer is a Positive number

If the “is a” relationship holds, then it is likely you can define a new class from a class or classes that represent some more general case.

**Reusing Solutions**

Classes are usually organized into taxonomies to foster code reuse. For example, if you define a class to implement an interface to the serial port of a computer, it would probably be very similar to a class designed to implement an interface to the parallel port. To reuse code, you could define a superclass that contains everything that is common to the two types of ports, and then derive subclasses from the superclass in which you implement only what is unique to each specific port. Then the subclasses would inherit all of the common functionality from the superclass.
Objects

A class is like a template for the creation of a specific instance of the class. This instance or object contains actual data for a particular entity that is represented by the class. For example, an instance of a bank account class is an object that represents a specific bank account, with an actual account number and an actual balance. This object has built into it the ability to perform operations defined by the class, such as making deposits to and withdrawals from the account balance.

Objects are not just passive data containers. Objects actively manage the data contained by allowing only certain operations to be performed, by hiding data that does not need to be public, and by preventing external clients from misusing data by performing operations for which the object was not designed. Objects even control what happens when they are destroyed.

Encapsulating Information

An important aspect of objects is that you can write software that accesses the information stored in the object via its properties and methods without knowing anything about how that information is stored, or even whether it is stored or calculated when queried. The object isolates code that accesses the object from the internal implementation of methods and properties. You can define classes that hide both data and operations from any methods that are not part of the class. You can then implement whatever interface is most appropriate for the intended use.

References


Related Examples

- “A Simple Class” on page 2-2
- “Developing Classes — Typical Workflow” on page 3-8
• “Class to Represent Structured Data” on page 3-24
• “Class to Manage Writable Files” on page 3-19
• “Class to Implement Linked Lists” on page 3-36

**External Websites**

• Object Oriented Programming
Developing Classes — Typical Workflow

In this section...

“Formulating a Class” on page 3-8
“Specifying Class Components” on page 3-9
“BankAccount Class Implementation” on page 3-10
“Formulating the AccountManager Class” on page 3-14
“Implementing the AccountManager Class” on page 3-14
“AccountManager Class Synopsis” on page 3-15
“Using BankAccount Objects” on page 3-16

Formulating a Class

This example discusses how to approach the design and implementation of a class. The objective of this class is to represent a familiar concept (a bank account). However, you can apply the same approach to most class designs.

To design a class that represents a bank account, first determine the elements of data and the operations that form your abstraction of a bank account. For example, a bank account has:

• An account number
• An account balance
• A status (open, closed, etc.)

You must perform certain operations on a bank account:

• Create an object for each bank account
• Deposit money
• Withdraw money
• Generate a statement
• Save and load the BankAccount object

If the balance is too low and you attempt to withdraw money, the bank account broadcasts a notice. When this event occurs, the bank account broadcasts a notice to other entities that are designed to listen for these notices. In this example, a simplified version of an account manager program performs this task.
In this example, an account manager program determines the status of all bank accounts. This program monitors the account balance and assigns one of three values:

- open — Account balance is a positive value
- overdrawn — Account balance is overdrawn, but by $200 or less.
- closed — Account balance is overdrawn by more than $200.

These features define the requirements of the BankAccount and AccountManager classes. Include only what functionality is required to meet your specific objectives. Support special types of accounts by subclassing BankAccount and adding more specific features to the subclasses. Extend the AccountManager as required to support new account types.

**Specifying Class Components**

Classes store data in properties, implement operations with methods, and support notifications with events and listeners. Here is how the BankAccount and AccountManager classes define these components.

**Class Data**

The class defines these properties to store the account number, account balance, and the account status:

- **AccountNumber** — A property to store the number identifying the specific account. MATLAB assigns a value to this property when you create an instance of the class. Only BankAccount class methods can set this property. The SetAccess attribute is private.
- **AccountBalance** — A property to store the current balance of the account. The class operation of depositing and withdrawing money assigns values to this property. Only BankAccount class methods can set this property. The SetAccess attribute is private.
- **AccountStatus** — The BankAccount class defines a default value for this property. The AccountManager class methods change this value whenever the value of the AccountBalance falls below 0. The Access attribute specifies that only the AccountManager and BankAccount classes have access to this property.
- **AccountListener** — Storage for the InsufficientFunds event listener. Saving a BankAccount object does not save this property because you must recreate the listener when loading the object.
Class Operations

These methods implement the operations defined in the class formulation:

• **BankAccount** — Accepts an account number and an initial balance to create an object that represents an account.
• **deposit** — Updates the **AccountBalance** property when a deposit transaction occurs
• **withdraw** — Updates the **AccountBalance** property when a withdrawal transaction occurs
• **getStatement** — Displays information about the account
• **loadobj** — Recreates the account manager listener when you load the object from a MAT-file.

Class Events

The account manager program changes the status of bank accounts that have negative balances. To implement this action, the **BankAccount** class triggers an event when a withdrawal results in a negative balance. Therefore, the triggering of the **InsufficientsFunds** event occurs from within the **withdraw** method.

To define an event, specify a name within an **events** block. Trigger the event by a call to the **notify** handle class method. Because **InsufficientsFunds** is not a predefined event, you can name it with any string and trigger it with any action.

**BankAccount Class Implementation**

It is important to ensure that there is only one set of data associated with any object of a **BankAccount** class. You would not want independent copies of the object that could have, for example, different values for the account balance. Therefore, implement the **BankAccount** class as a handle class. All copies of a given handle object refer to the same data.

**BankAccount Class Synopsis**

```
classdef BankAccount < handle

Discussion
Handle class because there should be only one copy of any instance of BankAccount.
"Comparison of Handle and Value Classes" on page 7-2
```
BankAccount Class

```
properties (SetAccess = private)  
    AccountNumber  
    AccountBalance  
end  

properties (Transient)  
    AccountListener  
end  
```

Discussion

- `AccountStatus` property access by `AccountManager` class methods.
- `AccountNumber` and `AccountBalance` properties have private set access.
- `AccountListener` property is transient so the listener handle is not saved.
- See “Specify Property Attributes” on page 8-5.

Class defines event called `InsufficientFunds`. `withdraw` method triggers event when account balance becomes negative.

For information on events and listeners, see “Events”.

Block of ordinary methods. See “Methods and Functions” on page 5-17 for syntax.

- `Constructor` initializes property values with input arguments.
- `AccountManager.addAccount` is static method of `AccountManager` class. Creates listener for `InsufficientFunds` event and stores listener handle in `AccountListener` property.
- `deposit` adjusts value of `AccountBalance` property.

If `AccountStatus` is closed and subsequent deposit brings `AccountBalance` into positive range, then `AccountStatus` is reset to open.
BankAccount Class

```matlab
function withdraw(BA, amt)
    if strcmp(BA.AccountStatus, 'closed') && BA.AccountBalance < 0
        disp(['Account ', num2str(BA.AccountNumber), ' has been closed.'])
        return
    end
    newbal = BA.AccountBalance - amt;
    BA.AccountBalance = newbal;
    if newbal < 0
        notify(BA, 'InsufficientFunds')
    end
end
```

Discussion

Updates `AccountBalance` property. If value of account balance is negative as a result of the withdrawal, `notify` triggers `InsufficientFunds` event.

For more information on listeners, see “Events and Listeners — Syntax and Techniques” on page 11-19.

```matlab
function getStatement(BA)
    disp('-------------------------')
    disp(['Account: ', num2str(BA.AccountNumber)])
    ab = sprintf('%0.2f', BA.AccountBalance);
    disp(['CurrentBalance: ', ab])
    disp(['Account Status: ', BA.AccountStatus])
    disp('-------------------------')
end
```

Display selected information about the account.

End of ordinary methods block.

```matlab
function obj = loadobj(s)
    if isstruct(s)
        accNum = s.AccountNumber;
        initBal = s.AccountBalance;
        obj = BankAccount(accNum, initBal);
    else
        obj.AccountListener = AccountManager.addAccount(s);
    end
end
```

loadobj method:

- If the load operation fails, create the object from a `struct`.
- Recreates the listener using the newly created `BankAccount` object as the source.

For more information on saving and loading objects, see “Save and Load Process” on page 13-2

End of static methods block

End of `classdef`
AccountStatus = 'open';
end

properties (SetAccess = private)
    AccountNumber
    AccountBalance
end

properties (Transient)
    AccountListener
end

events
    InsufficientFunds
end

methods
    function BA = BankAccount(accNum,initBal)
        BA.AccountNumber = accNum;
        BA.AccountBalance = initBal;
        BA.AccountListener = AccountManager.addAccount(BA);
    end

    function deposit(BA, amt)
        BA.AccountBalance = BA.AccountBalance + amt;
        if BA.AccountBalance > 0
            BA.AccountStatus = 'open';
        end
    end

    function withdraw(BA, amt)
        if strcmp(BA.AccountStatus, 'closed') && BA.AccountBalance <= 0
            disp(['Account ',num2str(BA.AccountNumber),' has been closed.'])
            return
        end
        newbal = BA.AccountBalance - amt;
        BA.AccountBalance = newbal;
        if newbal < 0
            notify(BA,'InsufficientFunds')
        end
    end

    function getStatement(BA)
        disp('-------------------------
        disp(['Account: ',num2str(BA.AccountNumber)]))
        ab = sprintf('%.2f',BA.AccountBalance);
        disp(['CurrentBalance: ',ab])
        disp(['Account Status: ',BA.AccountStatus])
        disp('-------------------------')
    end
end
Formulating the AccountManager Class

The purpose of the AccountManager class is to provide services to accounts. For the BankAccount class, the AccountManager class listens for withdrawals that cause the balance to drop into the negative range. When the BankAccount object triggers the InsufficientFunds event, the AccountManager resets the account status.

The AccountManager class stores no data so it does not need properties. The BankAccount object stores the handle of the listener object.

The AccountManager performs two operations:

- Assign a status to each account as a result of a withdrawal
- Adds an account to the system by monitoring account balances.

Class Components

The AccountManager class implements two methods:

- assignStatus — Method that assigns a status to a BankAccount object. Serves as the listener callback.
- addAccount — Method that creates the InsufficientFunds listener.

Implementing the AccountManager Class

The AccountManager class implements both methods as static because there is no need for an AccountManager object. These methods operate on BankAccount objects.
The AccountManager is not intended to be instantiated. Separating the functionality of the AccountManager class from the BankAccount class provides greater flexibility and extensibility. For example, doing so enables you to:

- Extend the AccountManager class to support other types of accounts while keeping the individual account classes simple and specialized.
- Change the criteria for the account status without affecting the compatibility of saved and loaded BankAccount objects.
- Develop an Account superclass that factors out what is common to all accounts without requiring each subclass to implement the account management functionality.

### AccountManager Class Synopsis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AccountManager Class</th>
<th>Discussion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>classdef AccountManager</code></td>
<td>This class defines the InsufficientFunds event listener and the listener callback.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>methods (Static)</code></td>
<td>There is no need to create an instance of this class so the methods defined are static. See “Static Methods” on page 9-24.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>function assignStatus(BA)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>if BA.AccountBalance &lt; 0</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>if BA.AccountBalance &lt; -200</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>BA.AccountStatus = 'closed';</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>else</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>BA.AccountStatus = 'overdrawn';</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>end</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>end</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>end</code></td>
<td>The assignStatus method is the callback for the InsufficientFunds event listener. It determines the value of a BankAccount object AccountStatus property based on the value of the AccountBalance property. The BankAccount class constructor calls the AccountManager addAccount method to create and store this listener.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>function lh = addAccount(BA)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>lh = addlistener(BA, 'InsufficientFunds', @(src, ~)AccountManager.assignStatus(src));</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>end</code></td>
<td>addAccount creates the listener for the InsufficientFunds event that the BankAccount class defines. See “Control Listener Lifecycle” on page 11-23</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
AccountManager Class | Discussion
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>end</td>
<td>end statements for methods and for classdef.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Expand for Class Code

```matlab
classdef AccountManager
    methods (Static)
        function assignStatus(BA)
            if BA.AccountBalance < 0
                if BA.AccountBalance < -200
                    BA.AccountStatus = 'closed';
                else
                    BA.AccountStatus = 'overdrawn';
                end
            end
        end
        function lh = addAccount(BA)
            lh = addlistener(BA, 'InsufficientFunds', ...
                @(src, ~)AccountManager.assignStatus(src));
        end
    end
end
```

Using BankAccount Objects

The BankAccount class, while overly simple, demonstrates how MATLAB classes behave. For example, create a BankAccount object with an account number and an initial deposit of $500:

```matlab
BA = BankAccount(1234567,500)

BA =

    BankAccount with properties:

    AccountNumber: 1234567
    AccountBalance: 500
    AccountListener: [1x1 event.listener]
```

Use the getStatement method to check the status:

```matlab
getStatement(BA)
```
Developing Classes — Typical Workflow

Account: 1234567
CurrentBalance: 500.00
Account Status: open

Make a withdrawal of $600, which results in a negative account balance:

withdraw(BA,600)
getStatement(BA)

Account: 1234567
CurrentBalance: -100.00
Account Status: overdrawn

The $600 withdrawal triggered the InsufficientsFunds event. The current criteria defined by the AccountManager class results in a status of overdrawn.

Make another withdrawal of $200:

withdraw(BA,200)
getStatement(BA)

Account: 1234567
CurrentBalance: -300.00
Account Status: closed

Now the AccountStatus has been set to closed by the listener and further attempts to make withdrawals are blocked without triggering the event:

withdraw(BA,100)

Account 1234567 has been closed.

If the AccountBalance is returned to a positive value by a deposit, then the AccountStatus is returned to open and withdrawals are allowed again:

deposit(BA,700)
getStatement(BA)
Account: 1234567
CurrentBalance: 400.00
Account Status: open
Class to Manage Writable Files

In this section...

“Flexible Workflow” on page 3-19
“Performing a Task with an Object” on page 3-19
“Defining the Filewriter Class” on page 3-19
“Using Filewriter Objects” on page 3-21

Flexible Workflow

The MATLAB language does not require you to define classes for all the code you write. You can use objects along with ordinary functions. This section illustrates the use of an object that implements the basic task of writing text to a file.

Performing a Task with an Object

One of the advantages of an object instead of writing a function to perform a task is that objects can encapsulate related data. For example, consider the task of writing data to a file. It involves the following steps:

• Opening a file for writing and saving the file identifier
• Using the file identifier to write data to the file
• Using the file identifier to close the file

Defining the Filewriter Class

This class writes text to a file. The advantage of using a class for this purpose is to:

• Hide private data — The caller does not need to manage the file identifier.
• Ensure only one file identifier is in use at any time — Copies of handle objects reference the same file identifier as the original.
• Provide automatic file closing when the object is deleted — the object’s delete method takes care of cleanup without needing to be called explicitly.

The Filewriter class derives from the handle class. Therefore, a Filewriter object is a handle object. All copies of handle objects reference the same internal data. There is only one file identifier in use, even if you make copies of the object.
Also, handle classes define a `delete` method, which is called automatically when MATLAB destroys a handle object. This example overrides the `delete` method. This method closes the file before deleting the object and losing file identifier.

**The Filewriter Class**

```matlab
classdef Filewriter < handle
    properties (Access = private)
        FileID
    end

    methods
        function obj = Filewriter(filename)
            obj.FileID = fopen(filename,'a');
        end

        function writeToFile(obj,text_str)
            fprintf(obj.FileID,'%s\n',text_str);
        end

        function delete(obj)
            fclose(obj.FileID);
        end
    end
end
```

**Filewriter Class Synopsis**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Filewriter Class</th>
<th>Discussion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>classdef Filewriter &lt; handle</code></td>
<td>This class derives from <code>handle</code> to provide a single reference to the file identifier and use the class destructor to close the file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>properties (Access = private)</td>
<td>For general information on class destructors, see “Handle Class Destructor” on page 7-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FileID</td>
<td>Only <code>Filewriter</code> class methods can access file identifier.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end</td>
<td>“Property Attributes” on page 8-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>methods</td>
<td>For method syntax, see “Methods and Functions” on page 5-17</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Filewriter Class

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Discussion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>function obj = Filewriter(filename)</code></td>
<td>Class constructor opens file for writing and saves file identifier in private property. See fopen and “Rules for Constructors” on page 9-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>function writeToFile(obj,text_str)</code></td>
<td>Write a text string to open file. See ferror and fseek.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>function delete(obj)</code></td>
<td>delete method closes file before destroying Filewriter object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>See “Handle Class Destructor” on page 7-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end</td>
<td>end statements for methods and for classdef.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Using Filewriter Objects

Provides a file name to create a Filewriter object. Use the writeToFile method to write text to the file. The following statements create a file named mynewclass.m and write one line to it. The clear all command deletes the Filewriter object. Clearing the object variable calls its delete method, which closes the file.

```matlab
fw = Filewriter('MyNewClass.m');
writeToFile(fw,'classdef < handle')
clear fw
type MyNewClass

classdef MyNewClass < handle

Filewriter objects provide functionality that you can use from functions and within other classes. You can create an ordinary function that uses this object, as the writeClassFile function does below.

This example creates only one simple class template, but another version could accept a cell array of attribute name/value pairs, method names, and so on.

```matlab
function writeClassFile(classname,superclass)
    fw = Filewriter([classname '.m']);
```
if nargin > 1
    writeToFile(fw,['classdef ' classname ' < ' superclass])
else
    writeToFile(fw,['classdef ' classname])
end
writeToFile(fw,'    properties ')
writeToFile(fw,'    end')
writeToFile(fw,'    methods ')
writeToFile(fw,'        function')
writeToFile(fw,'    end')
writeToFile(fw,'    end')
writeToFile(fw,'end')
end

To create a class file template, call writeClassFile with the name of the new class and its superclass. Use the type command to display the contents of the file:

writeClassFile('MyNewClass','handle')
edit MyNewClass

Here is the template file in the editor ready to add code:
See Also
fclose | fopen | fprintf

More About
• “Handle Class Destructor” on page 7-14
Class to Represent Structured Data

In this section...

“Objects As Data Structures” on page 3-24
“Structure of the Data” on page 3-24
“The TensileData Class” on page 3-25
“Create an Instance and Assign Data” on page 3-25
“Restrict Properties to Specific Values” on page 3-26
“Simplifying the Interface with a Constructor” on page 3-27
“Calculate Data on Demand” on page 3-28
“Displaying TensileData Objects” on page 3-29
“Method to Plot Stress vs. Strain” on page 3-30
“TensileData Class Synopsis” on page 3-31

Objects As Data Structures

This example defines a class for storing data with a specific structure. Using a consistent structure for data storage makes it easier to create functions that operate on the data. A MATLAB struct with field names describing the particular data element is a useful way to organize data. However, a class can define both the data storage (properties) and operations that you can perform on that data (methods). This example illustrates these advantages.

Background for the Example

For this example, the data represents tensile stress/strain measurements. These data are used to calculate the elastic modulus of various materials. In simple terms, stress is the force applied to a material and strain is the resulting deformation. Their ratio defines a characteristic of the material. While this is an over simplification of the process, it suffices for this example.

Structure of the Data

This table describes the structure of the data.
### The TensileData Class

This example begins with a simple implementation of the class and builds on this implementation to illustrate how features enhance the usefulness of the class.

The first version of the class provides only data storage. The class defines a property for each of the required data elements.

```matlab
classdef TensileData
    properties
        Material
        SampleNumber
        Stress
        Strain
        Modulus
    end
end
```

### Create an Instance and Assign Data

The following statements create a `TensileData` object and assign data to it:

```matlab
td = TensileData;
td.Material = 'Carbon Steel';
td.SampleNumber = 001;
td.Stress = [2e4 4e4 6e4 8e4];
td.Strain = [.12 .20 .31 .40];
td.Modulus = mean(td.Stress./td.Strain);
```
Advantages of a Class vs. a Structure

Treat the TensileData object (td in the statements above) much as you would any MATLAB structure. However, defining a specialized data structure as a class has advantages over using a general-purpose data structure, like a MATLAB struct:

• Users cannot accidentally misspell a field name without getting an error. For example, typing the following:

```matlab
td.Modulis = ...
```

would simply add a new field to a structure, but returns an error when td is an instance of the TensileData class.

• A class is easy to reuse. Once you have defined the class, you can easily extend it with subclasses that add new properties.

• A class is easy to identify. A class has a name so that you can identify objects with the whos and class functions and the Workspace browser. The class name makes it easy to refer to records with a meaningful name.

• A class can validate individual field values when assigned, including class or value.

• A class can restrict access to fields, for example, allowing a particular field to be read, but not changed.

Restrict Properties to Specific Values

Restrict properties to specific values by defining a property set access method. MATLAB calls the set access method whenever setting a value for a property.

Material Property Set Function

The Material property set method restricts the assignment of the property to one of the following strings: aluminum, stainless steel, or carbon steel.

Add this function definition to the methods block.

```matlab
classdef TensileData
    properties
        Material
        SampleNumber
        Stress
        Strain
```
When there is an attempt to set the `Material` property, MATLAB calls the `set.Material` method before setting the property value.

If the value matches the acceptable values, the function sets the property to that value. The code within set method can access the property directly to avoid calling the property set method recursively.

For example:

```matlab
td = TensileData;
td.Material = 'brass';
```

Error using `TensileData/set.Material`
Invalid Material

**Simplifying the Interface with a Constructor**

Simplify the interface to the `TensileData` class by adding a constructor that:

- Enables you to pass the data as arguments to the constructor
- Assigns values to properties

The constructor is a method having the same name as the class.

```matlab
methods
    function td = TensileData(material,samplenum,stress,strain)
        if nargin > 0
            td.Material = material;
```

td.SampleNumber = samplenum;
td.Stress = stress;
td.Strain = strain;
end
end
end

Create a TensileData object fully populated with data using the following statement:

\[
\text{td} = \text{TensileData('carbon steel',1,...}
\begin{align*}
[2e4 & 4e4 & 6e4 & 8e4],... \\
[.12 & .20 & .31 & .40])
\end{align*}
\]

**Calculate Data on Demand**

If the value of a property depends on the values of other properties, define that property using the Dependent attribute. MATLAB does not store the values of dependent properties. The dependent property get method determines the property value when the property is queried.

**Calculating Modulus**

TensileData objects do not store the value of the Modulus property. The constructor does not have an input argument for the value of the Modulus property. The value of the Modulus:

- Is calculated from the Stress and Strain property values
- Needs to change if the value of the Stress or Strain property changes

Therefore, it is better to calculate the value of the Modulus property only when its value is requested. Use a property get access method to calculate the value of the Modulus.

**Modulus Property Get Method**

The Modulus property depends on Stress and Strain, so its Dependent attribute is true. Place the Modulus property in a separate properties block and set the Dependent attribute.

The get.Modulus method calculates and returns the value of the Modulus property.
Define the property get method in a methods block using only default attributes.

methods
    function modulus = get.Modulus(obj)
        ind = find(obj.Strain > 0);
        modulus = mean(obj.Stress(ind)./obj.Strain(ind));
    end
end

This method calculates the average ratio of stress to strain data after eliminating zeros
in the denominator data.

MATLAB calls the `get.Modulus` method when the property is queried. For example,

```matlab
td = TensileData('carbon steel',1,...
    [2e4 4e4 6e4 8e4],...
    [.12 .20 .31 .40]);
td.Modulus
ans =
    1.9005e+005
```

**Modulus Property Set Method**

To set the value of a `Dependent` property, the class must implement a property set
method. There is no need to allow explicit setting of the `Modulus` property. However, a
set method enables you to provide a customized error message. The `Modulus` set method
references the current property value and then returns an error:

```matlab
methods
    function obj = set.Modulus(obj,-)
        fprintf('%s\n','Modulus is: ',obj.Modulus)
        error('You cannot set the Modulus property');
    end
end
```

**Displaying TensileData Objects**

The `TensileData` class overloads the `disp` method. This method controls object display
in the command window.
The `disp` method displays the value of the `Material`, `SampleNumber`, and `Modulus` properties. It does not display the `Stress` and `Strain` property data. These properties contain raw data that is not easily viewed in the command window.

The `disp` method uses `fprintf` to display formatted text in the command window:

```matlab
methods
    function disp(td)
        fprintf(1,...
            'Material: %s
Sample Number: %g
Modulus: %1.5g\n',... 
            td.Material,td.SampleNumber,td.Modulus);
    end
end
```

**Method to Plot Stress vs. Strain**

It is useful to view a graph of the stress/strain data to determine the behavior of the material over a range of applied tension. The `TensileData` class overloads the MATLAB `plot` function.

The `plot` method creates a linear graph of the stress versus strain data and adds a title and axis labels to produce a standardized graph for the tensile data records:

```matlab
methods
    function plot(td,varargin)
        plot(td.Strain,td.Stress,varargin{:})
        title([\'Stress/Strain plot for Sample',... 
            num2str(td.SampleNumber)])
        ylabel('Stress (psi)')
        xlabel('Strain %')
    end
end
```

The first argument to this method is a `TensileData` object, which contains the data.

The method passes a variable list of arguments (`varargin`) directly to the built-in `plot` function. The `TensileData` `plot` method allows you to pass line specifier arguments or property name/value pairs.

For example:

```matlab
td = TensileData('carbon steel',1,...
    [2e4 4e4 6e4 8e4],[.12 .20 .31 .40]);
plot(td,'+-b','LineWidth',2)
```
TensileData Class Synopsis

Example Code

```matlab
classdef TensileData
    properties
        Material
        SampleNumber
        Stress
        Strain
    end
end
```

Discussion

Value class enables independent copies of object. For more information, see “Comparison of Handle and Value Classes” on page 7-2.

See “Structure of the Data” on page 3-24.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example Code</th>
<th>Discussion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **properties** (Dependent)  
  Modulus  
  end | Calculate Modulus when queried.  
For information about this code, see “Calculate Data on Demand” on page 3-28  
For general information, see “Access Methods for Dependent Properties” on page 8-24  
For general information about methods, see “Ordinary Methods” on page 9-7  
For information about this code, see “Simplifying the Interface with a Constructor” on page 3-27  
For general information about constructors, see “Class Constructor Methods” on page 9-16 |
| **methods** |  
  
  **function** td = TensileData(material,samplenum,...  
  stress,strain)  
  **if** nargin > 0  
  td.Material = material;  
  td.SampleNumber = samplenum;  
  td.Stress = stress;  
  td.Strain = strain;  
  **end**  
  **end** | Restrict possible values for Material property.  
For information about this code, see “Restrict Properties to Specific Values” on page 3-26.  
For general information about property set methods, see “Property Set Methods” on page 8-19.  
Calculate Modulus property when queried.  
For information about this code, see “Modulus Property Get Method” on page 3-28.  
For general information about property get methods, see “Property Get Methods” on page 8-22. |
|  
  **function** obj = set.Material(obj,material)  
  **if** (strcmpi(material,'aluminum') ||  
  strcmpi(material,'stainless steel') ||  
  strcmpi(material,'carbon steel'))  
  obj.Material = material;  
  **else**  
  error('Invalid Material')  
  **end**  
  **end** |  
  
  **function** m = get.Modulus(obj)  
  ind = find(obj.Strain > 0);  
  m = mean(obj.Stress(ind)./obj.Strain(ind));  
  **end** |  |
Add set method for **Dependent Modulus** property. For information about this code, see “Modulus Property Set Method” on page 3-29.

For general information about property set methods, see “Property Set Methods” on page 8-19.

Overload `disp` method to display certain properties.

For information about this code, see “Displaying TensileData Objects” on page 3-29.

For general information about overloading disp, see “Overload the disp Function” on page 18-38.

Overload `plot` function to accept TensileData objects and graph stress vs. strain.

“Method to Plot Stress vs. Strain” on page 3-30.

end statements for methods and for `classdef`.

### Example Code

```matlab
function obj = set.Modulus(obj,~)
    fprintf('%s%d
','Modulus is: ',obj.Modulus)
    error('You cannot set Modulus property);
end

function disp(td)
    sprintf(1,'Material: %s
Sample Number: %g
Modulus: %1.5g
','......
','td.Material,td.SampleNumber,td.Modulus)
end

function plot(td,varargin)
    plot(td.Strain,td.Stress,varargin{:})
    title(['Stress/Strain plot for Sample'
        num2str(td.SampleNumber)])
    ylabel('Stress (psi)')
    xlabel('Strain %')
end
end
```

### Expand for Class Code

```matlab
classdef TensileData
    properties
        Material
        SampleNumber
        Stress
        Strain
    end
    properties (Dependent)
        Modulus
    end
end
```
methods

function td = TensileData(material,samplenum,stress,strain)
    if nargin > 0
        td.Material = material;
        td.SampleNumber = samplenum;
        td.Stress = stress;
        td.Strain = strain;
    end
end

function obj = set.Material(obj,material)
    if (strcmpi(material,'aluminum') ||
        strcmpi(material,'stainless steel') ||
        strcmpi(material,'carbon steel'))
        obj.Material = material;
    else
        error('Invalid Material')
    end
end

function m = get.Modulus(obj)
    ind = find(obj.Strain > 0);
    m = mean(obj.Stress(ind)./obj.Strain(ind));
end

function obj = set.Modulus(obj,~)
    fprintf('%s%d
','Modulus is: ',obj.Modulus)
    error('You cannot set Modulus property');
end

function disp(td)
    fprintf('Material: %s
Sample Number: %g
Modulus: %1.5g
',...
    td.Material,td.SampleNumber,td.Modulus)
end

function plot(td,varargin)
    plot(td.Strain,td.Stress,varargin{:})
    title(['Stress/Strain plot for Sample ',...
        num2str(td.SampleNumber)])
    xlabel('Strain %')
    ylabel('Stress (psi)')
end
More About

• “Class Components” on page 5-5
Class to Implement Linked Lists

In this section...

“Class Definition Code” on page 3-36
“dlnode Class Design” on page 3-36
“Create Doubly Linked List” on page 3-37
“Why a Handle Class for Linked Lists?” on page 3-38
“dlnode Class Synopsis” on page 3-39
“Specialize the dlnode Class” on page 3-50

Class Definition Code

For the class definition code listing, see “dlnode Class Synopsis” on page 3-39.

To use the class, create a folder named @dlnode and save dlnode.m to this folder. The parent folder of @dlnode must be on the MATLAB path. Alternatively, save dlnode.m to a path folder.

dlnode Class Design

dlnode is a class for creating doubly linked lists in which each node contains:

- Data array
- Handle to the next node
- Handle to the previous node

Each node has methods that enables the node to be:

- Inserted before a specified node in a linked list
- Inserted after a specific node in a linked list
- Removed from a list

Class Properties

The dlnode class implements each node as a handle object with three properties:

- Data — Contains the data for this node
- Next — Contains the handle of the next node in the list (SetAccess = private)
• **Prev** — Contains the handle of the previous node in the list (**SetAccess = private**)

This diagram shows a list with three-nodes n1, n2, and n3. It also shows how the nodes reference the next and previous nodes.

```
Class Methods

The **dlnode** class implements the following methods:

• **dlnode** — Construct a node and assign the value passed as an input to the **Data** property
• **insertAfter** — Insert this node after the specified node
• **insertBefore** — Insert this node before the specified node
• **removeNode** — Remove this node from the list and reconnect the remaining nodes
• **clearList** — Remove large lists efficiently
• **delete** — Private method called by MATLAB when deleting the list.

Create Doubly Linked List

Create a node by passing the node's data to the **dlnode** class constructor. For example, these statements create three nodes with data values 1, 2, and 3:

```
n1 = dlnode(1);
n2 = dlnode(2);
n3 = dlnode(3);
```

Build these nodes into a doubly linked list using the class methods designed for this purpose:

```
n2.insertAfter(n1) % Insert n2 after n1
n3.insertAfter(n2) % Insert n3 after n2
```
Now the three nodes are linked:

\[ n1.\text{Next} \ % \text{Points to } n2 \]

\[
\text{ans} =
\begin{array}{l}
d\text{lnode with properties:} \\
\qquad \text{Data: 2} \\
\qquad \text{Next: [1x1 dlnode]} \\
\qquad \text{Prev: [1x1 dlnode]}
\end{array}
\]

\[ n2.\text{Next}.\text{Prev} \ % \text{Points back to } n2 \]

\[
\text{ans} =
\begin{array}{l}
d\text{lnode with properties:} \\
\qquad \text{Data: 2} \\
\qquad \text{Next: [1x1 dlnode]} \\
\qquad \text{Prev: [1x1 dlnode]}
\end{array}
\]

\[ n1.\text{Next}.\text{Next} \ % \text{Points to } n3 \]

\[
\text{ans} =
\begin{array}{l}
d\text{lnode with properties:} \\
\qquad \text{Data: 3} \\
\qquad \text{Next: []} \\
\qquad \text{Prev: [1x1 dlnode]}
\end{array}
\]

\[ n3.\text{Prev}.\text{Prev} \ % \text{Points to } n1 \]

\[
\text{ans} =
\begin{array}{l}
d\text{lnode with properties:} \\
\qquad \text{Data: 1} \\
\qquad \text{Next: [1x1 dlnode]} \\
\qquad \text{Prev: []}
\end{array}
\]

### Why a Handle Class for Linked Lists?

Each node is unique in that no two nodes can be previous to or next to the same node.
For example, a node object, `node`, contains in its `Next` property the handle of the next node object, `node.Next`. Similarly, the `Prev` property contains the handle of the previous node, `node.Prev`. Using the three-node linked list defined in the previous section, you can demonstrate that the following statements are true:

```matlab
define node = next node == node2
```

Now suppose you assign `n2` to `x`:

```matlab
define x = n2
```

The following two equalities are then true:

```matlab
define x == n1.next
x.prec == n1
```

But each instance of a node is unique so there is only one node in the list that can satisfy the conditions of being equal to `n1.Next` and having a `Prev` property that contains a handle to `n1`. Therefore, `x` must point to the same node as `n2`.

This means there has to be a way for multiple variables to refer to the same object. The MATLAB `handle` class provides a means for both `x` and `n2` to refer to the same node.

The handle class defines the `eq` method (use `methods(handle)` to list the handle class methods), which enables the use of the `==` operator with all handle objects.

**Related Information**

For more information on handle classes, see “Comparison of Handle and Value Classes” on page 7-2.

**dlnode Class Synopsis**

This section describes the implementation of the `dlnode` class.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example Code</th>
<th>Discussion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>classdef dlnode &lt; handle</code></td>
<td>“dlnode Class Design” on page 3-36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“Why a Handle Class for Linked Lists?” on page 3-38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“Comparison of Handle and Value Classes” on page 7-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example Code</td>
<td>Discussion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| properties
  Data
end          | “dlnode Class Design” on page 3-36 |
| properties (SetAccess = private)
  Next = dlnode.empty;
  Prev = dlnode.empty;
end          | “Property Attributes” on page 8-7: SetAccess. Initialize these properties to empty dlnode objects. For general information about properties, see “Defining Properties” on page 8-4 |
| methods      | For general information about methods, see “How to Use Methods” on page 9-2 |
| function node = dlnode(Data)
  if (nargin > 0)
    node.Data = Data;
  end
end          | Creating an individual node (not connected) requires only the data. For general information about constructors, see “Rules for Constructors” on page 9-16 |
| function insertAfter(newNode, nodeBefore)
  removeNode(newNode);
  newNode.Next = nodeBefore.Next;
  newNode.Prev = nodeBefore;
  if ~isempty(nodeBefore.Next)
    nodeBefore.Next.Prev = newNode;
  end
  nodeBefore.Next = newNode;
end          | Insert node into a doubly linked list after specified node, or link the two specified nodes if there is not already a list. Assigns the correct values for Next and Prev properties. “Insert Nodes” on page 3-44 |
| function insertBefore(newNode, nodeAfter)
  removeNode(newNode);
  newNode.Next = nodeAfter;
  newNode.Prev = nodeAfter.Prev;
  if ~isempty(nodeAfter.Prev)
    nodeAfter.Prev.Next = newNode;
  end
  nodeAfter.Prev = newNode;
end          | Insert node into doubly linked list before specified node, or link the two specified nodes if there is not already a list. This method assigns correct values for Next and Prev properties. See “Insert Nodes” on page 3-44 |
### Example Code

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>function removeNode(node)</th>
<th>Discussion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>if ~isscalar(node)</td>
<td>Remove node and fix the list so that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>error('Nodes must be scalar')</td>
<td>remaining nodes are properly connected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end</td>
<td>node argument must be scalar.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prevNode = node.Prev;</td>
<td>Once there are no references to node,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nextNode = node.Next;</td>
<td>MATLAB deletes it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>if ~isempty(prevNode)</td>
<td>“Remove a Node” on page 3-45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prevNode.Next = nextNode;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>if ~isempty(nextNode)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nextNode.Prev = prevNode;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>node.Next = dlnode.empty;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>node.Prev = dlnode.empty;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>function clearList(node)</th>
<th>Discussion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>prev = node.Prev;</td>
<td>Avoid recursive calls to destructor as a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>next = node.Next;</td>
<td>result of clearing the list variable. Loop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>removeNode(node)</td>
<td>through list to disconnect each node.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>while ~isempty(next)</td>
<td>When there are no references to a node,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>node = next;</td>
<td>MATLAB calls the class destructor (see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>next = node.Next;</td>
<td>the delete method) before deleting it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>removeNode(node);</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>while ~isempty(prev)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>node = prev;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prev = node.Prev;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>removeNode(node);</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>methods (Access = private)</th>
<th>Discussion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>function delete(node)</td>
<td>Class destructor method. MATLAB calls the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clearList(node);</td>
<td>delete method you delete a node that is still</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end</td>
<td>connected to the list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end</td>
<td>End of private methods and end of class</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>definition.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Expand for Class Code

```matlab
classdef dlnode < handle

% dlnode A class to represent a doubly-linked node.
% Link multiple dlnode objects together to create linked lists.

properties
  Data
end

properties(SetAccess = private)
  Next = dlnode.empty;
  Prev = dlnode.empty;
end
```
methods

function node = dlnode(Data)
    % Construct a dlnode object
    if nargin > 0
        node.Data = Data;
    end
end

function insertAfter(newNode, nodeBefore)
    % Insert newNode after nodeBefore.
    removeNode(newNode);
    newNode.Next = nodeBefore.Next;
    newNode.Prev = nodeBefore;
    if ~isempty(nodeBefore.Next)
        nodeBefore.Next.Prev = newNode;
    end
    nodeBefore.Next = newNode;
end

function insertBefore(newNode, nodeAfter)
    % Insert newNode before nodeAfter.
    removeNode(newNode);
    newNode.Next = nodeAfter;
    newNode.Prev = nodeAfter.Prev;
    if ~isempty(nodeAfter.Prev)
        nodeAfter.Prev.Next = newNode;
    end
    nodeAfter.Prev = newNode;
end

function removeNode(node)
    % Remove a node from a linked list.
    if ~isscalar(node)
        error('Input must be scalar')
    end
    prevNode = node.Prev;
    nextNode = node.Next;
    if ~isempty(prevNode)
        prevNode.Next = nextNode;
    end
    if ~isempty(nextNode)
        nextNode.Prev = prevNode;
function clearList(node)
    % Clear the list before
    % clearing list variable
    prev = node.Prev;
    next = node.Next;
    removeNode(node);
    while ~isempty(next)
        node = next;
        next = node.Next;
        removeNode(node);
    end
    while ~isempty(prev)
        node = prev;
        prev = node.Prev;
        removeNode(node);
    end
end

methods (Access = private)
function delete(node)
    clearList(node)
end
end

Class Properties

Only dlnode class methods can set the Next and Prev properties because these properties have private set access (SetAccess = private). Using private set access prevents client code from performing any incorrect operation with these properties. The dlnode class methods perform all the operations that are allowed on these nodes.

The Data property has public set and get access, allowing you to query and modify the value of Data as required.

Here is how the dlnode class defines the properties:

properties
**Data**
end

```
properties(SetAccess = private)
    Next = dlnode.empty;
    Prev = dlnode.empty;
end
```

**Construct a Node Object**

To create a node object, specify the node's data as an argument to the constructor:

```matlab
function node = dlnode(Data)
    if nargin > 0
        node.Data = Data;
    end
end
```

**Insert Nodes**

There are two methods for inserting nodes into the list — `insertAfter` and `insertBefore`. These methods perform similar operations, so this section describes only `insertAfter` in detail.

```matlab
function insertAfter(newNode, nodeBefore)
    removeNode(newNode);
    newNode.Next = nodeBefore.Next;
    newNode.Prev = nodeBefore;
    if ~isempty(nodeBefore.Next)
        nodeBefore.Next.Prev = newNode;
    end
    nodeBefore.Next = newNode;
end
```

**How insertAfter Works**

First, `insertAfter` calls the `removeNode` method to ensure that the new node is not connected to any other nodes. Then, `insertAfter` assigns the `newNode.Next` and `Prev` properties to the handles of the nodes that are after and before the `newNode` location in the list.

For example, suppose you want to insert a new node, `nnew`, after an existing node, `n1`, in a list containing `n1—n2—n3`.

First, create `nnew`:

```matlab
nnew = dlnode(rand(3));
```
Next, call `insertAfter` to insert `nnew` into the list after `n1`:

```javascript
nnew.insertAfter(n1)
```

The `insertAfter` method performs the following steps to insert `nnew` in the list between `n1` and `n2`:

- Set `nnew.Next` to `n1.Next` (`n1.Next` is `n2`):
  ```javascript
  nnew.Next = n1.Next;
  ```
- Set `nnew.Prev` to `n1`
  ```javascript
  nnew.Prev = n1;
  ```
- If `n1.Next` is not empty, then `n1.Next` is still `n2`, so `n1.Next.Prev` is `n2.Prev`, which is set to `nnew`
  ```javascript
  n1.Next.Prev = nnew;
  ```
- `n1.Next` is now set to `nnew`
  ```javascript
  n1.Next = nnew;
  ```

### Remove a Node

The `removeNode` method removes a node from a list and reconnects the remaining nodes. The `insertBefore` and `insertAfter` methods always call `removeNode` on the node to insert before attempting to connect it to a linked list.

Calling `removeNode` ensures the node is in a known state before assigning it to the `Next` or `Prev` property:

```javascript
function removeNode(node)
    if ~isscalar(node)
```
For example, suppose you remove n2 from a three-node list (n1–n2–n3):

```
n2.removeNode;
```

![Diagram of a three-node list with arrows indicating the connections between nodes n1, n2, and n3. The diagram shows the removal of n2 and the reconnection of the remaining nodes.]

**removeNode** removes n2 from the list and reconnects the remaining nodes with the following steps:

```
n1 = n2.Prev;
n3 = n2.Next;
if n1 exists, then
    n1.Next = n3;
if n3 exists, then
    n3.Prev = n1
```

The list is rejoined because n1 connects to n3 and n3 connects to n1. The final step is to ensure that **n2.Next** and **n2.Prev** are both empty (i.e., n2 is not connected):

```
n2.Next = dlnode.empty;
```
n2.Prev = dlnode.empty;

**Removing a Node From a List**

Suppose you create a list with ten nodes and save the handle to the head of the list:

```matlab
head = dlnode(1);
for i = 10:-1:2
    new = dlnode(i);
    insertAfter(new,head);
end
```

Now remove the third node (Data property assigned the value 3):

```matlab
removeNode(head.Next.Next)
```

Now the third node in the list has a data value of 4:

```matlab
head.Next.Next
```

ans =

```
    dlnode with properties:
        Data: 4
        Next: [1x1 dlnode]
        Prev: [1x1 dlnode]
```

And the previous node has a Data value of 2:

```matlab
head.Next
```

ans =

```
    dlnode with properties:
        Data: 2
        Next: [1x1 dlnode]
        Prev: [1x1 dlnode]
```

**Delete a Node**

To delete a node, call the `removeNode` method on that node. The `removeNode` method disconnects the node and reconnects the list before allowing MATLAB to destroy the removed node. MATLAB destroys the node once references to it by other nodes are removed and the list is reconnected.
Delete the List

When you create a linked list and assign a variable that contains, for example, the head or tail of the list, clearing that variable causes the destructor to recurse through the entire list. With large enough list, clearing the list variable can result in MATLAB exceeding its recursion limit.

The clearList method avoids recursion and improves the performance of deleting large lists by looping over the list and disconnecting each node. clearList accepts the handle of any node in the list and removes the remaining nodes.

```matlab
function clearList(node)
    if ~isscalar(node)
        error('Input must be scalar')
    end
    prev = node.Prev;
    next = node.Next;
    removeNode(node)
    while ~isempty(next)
        node = next;
        next = node.Next;
```
removeNode(node);
end
while ~isempty(prev)
    node = prev;
    prev = node.Prev;
    removeNode(node)
end

For example, suppose you create a list with a large number of nodes:

head = dlnode(1);
for k = 100000:-1:2
    nextNode = dlnode(k);
    insertAfter(nextNode,head)
end

The variable head contains the handle to the node at the head of the list:

head

head =

dlnode with properties:

    Data: 1
    Next: [1x1 dlnode]
    Prev: []

head.Next

ans =

dlnode with properties:

    Data: 2
    Next: [1x1 dlnode]
    Prev: [1x1 dlnode]

You can call clearList to remove the whole list:

clearList(head)

The only nodes that have not been deleted by MATLAB are those for which there exists an explicit reference. In this case, those references are head and nextNode:
head
head =

dlnode with properties:
    Data: 1
    Next: []
    Prev: []

nextNode
nextNode =

dlnode with properties:
    Data: 2
    Next: []
    Prev: []

You can remove these nodes by clearing the variables:
clear head nextNode

The delete Method

The delete method simply calls the clearList method:

methods (Access = private)
    function delete(node)
        clearList(node)
    end
end

The delete method has private access to prevent users from calling delete when intending to delete a single node. MATLAB calls delete implicitly when the list is destroyed.

To delete a single node from the list, use the removeNode method.

Specialize the d1node Class

The d1node class implements a doubly linked list and provides a convenient starting point for creating more specialized types of linked lists. For example, suppose you want to create a list in which each node has a name.
Rather than copying the code used to implement the `dlnode` class, and then expanding upon it, you can derive a new class from `dlnode` (i.e., subclass `dlnode`). You can create a class that has all the features of `dlnode` and also defines its own additional features. And because `dlnode` is a handle class, this new class is a handle class too.

**NamedNode Class Definition**

To use the class, create a folder named `@NamedNode` and save `NamedNode.m` to this folder. The parent folder of `@NamedNode` must be on the MATLAB path. Alternatively, save `NamedNode.m` to a path folder.

The following class definition shows how to derive the `NamedNode` class from the `dlnode` class:

```matlab
classdef NamedNode < dlnode
    properties
        Name = '';
    end
    methods
        function n = NamedNode (name,data)
            if nargin == 0
                name = '';
                data = [];
            end
            n = n@dlnode(data);
            n.Name = name;
        end
    end
end
```

The `NamedNode` class adds a `Name` property to store the node name.

The constructor calls the class constructor for the `dlnode` class, and then assigns a value to the `Name` property.

**Use NamedNode to Create a Doubly Linked List**

Use the `NamedNode` class like the `dlnode` class, except that you specify a name for each node object. For example:

```matlab
n(1) = NamedNode('First Node',100);
n(2) = NamedNode('Second Node',200);
n(3) = NamedNode('Third Node',300);
```
Now use the insert methods inherited from `dlnode` to build the list:

```matlab
n(2).insertAfter(n(1))
n(3).insertAfter(n(2))
```

A single node displays its name and data when you query its properties:

```matlab
n(1).Next
```

```matlab
ans =

    NamedNode with properties:

    Name: 'Second Node'
    Data: 200
    Next: [1x1 NamedNode]
    Prev: [1x1 NamedNode]
```

```matlab
n(1).Next.Next
```

```matlab
ans =

    NamedNode with properties:

    Name: 'Third Node'
    Data: 300
    Next: []
    Prev: [1x1 NamedNode]
```

```matlab
n(3).Prev.Prev
```

```matlab
ans =

    NamedNode with properties:

    Name: 'First Node'
    Data: 100
    Next: [1x1 NamedNode]
    Prev: []
```

**More About**

- “The Handle Superclass” on page 7-11
Class for Graphing Functions

In this section...

“Class Definition Block” on page 3-53
“Using the topo Class” on page 3-54
“Behavior of the Handle Class” on page 3-55

The class block is the code that starts with the classdef key word and terminates with the end key word. The following example illustrated a simple class definition that uses:

- Handle class
- Property set and get functions
- Use of a delete method for the handle object
- Static method syntax

Class Definition Block

The following code defines a class called topo. It is derived from handle so it is a handle class, which means it references the data it contains. See “Using the topo Class” on page 3-54 for information on how this class behaves.

classdef topo < handle
% topo is a subclass of handle
properties
    FigHandle % Store figure handle
    FofXY % function handle
    Lm = [-2*pi 2*pi]; % Initial limits
end % properties

properties (Dependent, SetAccess = private)
    Data
end % properties Dependent = true, SetAccess = private

methods
    function obj = topo(fnc,limits)
% Constructor assigns property values
        obj.FofXY = fnc;
        obj.Lm = limits;
    end % topo

    function set.Lm(obj,lim)
% Lm property set function
        if ~(lim(1) < lim(2))
            error('Limits must be monotonically increasing')
        else
            obj.Lm = lim;
        end
    end % set.Lm
end % topo
obj.Lm = lim;
end
end % set.Lm

function data = get.Data(obj)
% get function calculates Data
% Use class name to call static method
[x,y] = topo.grid(obj.Lm);
matrix = obj.FofXY(x,y);
data.X = x;
data.Y = y;
data.Matrix = matrix;% Return value of property
end % get.Data

function surflight(obj)
% Graph function as surface
obj.FigHandle = figure;
'FaceColor',[.8 .8 0],'EdgeColor',[0 .2 0],...
'FaceLighting','gouraud');
camlight left; material shiny; grid off
colormap copper
end % surflight method

function delete(obj)
% Delete the figure
h = obj.FigHandle;
if ishandle(h)
delete(h);
else
return
end
end % delete
end % methods

methods (Static = true) % Define static method
function [x,y] = grid(lim)
inc = (lim(2)-lim(1))/35;
[x,y] = meshgrid(lim(1):inc:lim(2));
end % grid
end % methods Static = true
end % topo class

Using the topo Class

This class is designed to display a combination surface/contour graph of mathematical functions of two variables evaluated on a rectangular domain of x and y. For example, any of the following functions can be evaluated over the specified domain (note that x and y have the same range of values in this example just for simplicity).

\[ x \cdot \exp(-x^2 - y^2); \quad [-2 \ 2] \]
\[ \sin(x) \cdot \sin(y); \quad [-2\pi \ 2\pi] \]
sqrt(x.^2 + y.^2); [-2*pi 2*pi]

To create an instance of the class, passing a function handle and a vector of limits to the constructor. The easiest way to create a function handle for these functions is to use an anonymous function:

tobj = topo(@(x,y) x.*exp(-x.^2-y.^2),[-2 2]);

The class surflight method uses the object to create a graph of the function. The actual data required to create the graph is not stored. When the surflight method accesses the Data property, the property's get function performs the evaluation and returns the data in the Data property structure fields. This data is then plotted. The advantage of not storing the data is the reduced size of the object.

**Behavior of the Handle Class**

The topo class is defined as a handle class. This means that instances of this class are handle objects that reference the underlying data store created by constructing the object. For example, suppose you create an instance of the class and create a copy of the object:

tobj = topo(@(x,y) x.*exp(-x.^2-y.^2),[-2 2]);
a = tobj;
surflight(a)
Now suppose you change the `FofXY` property so that it contains a function handle that points to another function:

```matlab
tobj.FofXY = @(x,y) y.*exp(-x.^2-y.^2);
surflight(a)
```

Because `a` is a copy of the handle object `tobj`, changes to the data referenced by `tobj` also change the data referenced by `a`.

**How a Value Class Differs**

If `topo` were a value class, the objects `tobj` and `a` would not share data; each would have its own copy of the property values.
Static Data
Static Data

In this section...

“What Is Static Data” on page 4-2
“Static Variable” on page 4-2
“Static Data Object” on page 4-3
“Constant Data” on page 4-5

What Is Static Data

Static data refers to data that all objects of the class share and that you can modified after creation.

Use static data to define counters used by class instances or other data that is shared among all objects of a class. Unlike instance data, static data does not vary from one object to another. MATLAB provides several ways to define static data, depending on your requirements.

Static Variable

Classes can use a persistent variable to store static data. Define a static method or local function in which you create a persistent variable. The method or function provides access to this variable. Use this technique when you want to store one or two variables.

Saving an object of the class defining the persistent variable does not save the static data associated with the class. To save your static data in an object, or define more extensive data, use the static data object technique “Static Data Object” on page 4-3

Implementation

The StoreData class defines a static method that declares a persistent variable Var. The setgetVar method provides set and get access to the data in the persistent variable. Because the setgetVar method has public access, you can set and get the data stored in the persistent variable globally. Control the scope of access by setting the method Access attribute.

classdef StoreData
    methods (Static)
        % Implementation details
    end
end
function out = setgetVar(data)
    persistent Var;
    if nargin
        Var = data;
    end
    out = Var;
end
end

Set the value of the variable by calling `setgetVar` with an input argument. The method assigns the input value to the persistent variable:

StoreData.setgetVar(10);

Get the value of the variable by calling `setgetVar` with no input argument:

a = StoreData.setgetVar
a =
    10

Clear the persistent variable by calling `clear` on the `StoreData` class:

clear StoreData
a = StoreData.setgetVar
a =
 []

Add a method like `setgetVar` to any class in which you want the behavior of a static property.

**Static Data Object**

To store more extensive data, define a handle class with public properties. Assign an object of the class to a constant property of the class that uses the static data. This technique is useful when you want to:

- Add more properties or methods that modify the data.
- Save objects of the data class and reload the static data.
Implementation

The SharedData class is a handle class, which enables you to reference the same object data from multiple handle variables:

```matlab
classdef SharedData < handle
    properties
        Data1
        Data2
    end
end
```

The UseData class is the stub of a class that uses the data stored in the SharedData class. The UseData class stores the handle to a SharedData object in a constant property.

```matlab
classdef UseData
    properties (Constant)
        Data = SharedData;
    end
    % Class code here
end
```

The Data property contains the handle of the SharedData object. MATLAB constructs the SharedData object when loading the UseData class. All subsequently created instances of the UseData class refer to the same SharedData object.

To initialize the SharedData object properties, load the UseData class by referencing the constant property.

```matlab
h = UseData.Data
```

```
SharedData with properties:

    Data1: []
    Data2: []
```

Use the handle to the SharedData object to assign data to property values:

```matlab
h.Data1 = 'MyData1';
h.Data2 = 'MyData2';
```

Each instance of the UseData class refers to the same handle object:
a1 = UseData;
a2 = UseData;

Reference the data using the object variable:

a1.Data.Data1
ans =
MyData1

Assign a new value to the properties in the SharedData object:

a1.Data.Data1 = rand(3);

All new and existing objects of the UseData class share the same SharedData object. a2 now has the rand(3) data that was assigned to a1 in the previous step:

a2.Data.Data1
ans =

0.8147    0.9134    0.2785
0.9058    0.6324    0.5469
0.1270    0.0975    0.9575

To reinitialize the constant property, clear all instances of the UseData class and then clear the class:

clear a1 a2
clear UseData

Constant Data

To store constant values that do not change, assign the data to a constant property. All instances of the class share the same value for that property. Control the scope of access to constant properties by setting the property Access attribute.

The only way to change the value of a constant property is to change the class definition. Use constant properties like public final static fields in Java®.

See Also

clear | persistent
Related Examples
• “Properties with Constant Values” on page 15-2
• “Static Methods” on page 9-24

More About
• “Method Attributes” on page 9-5
• “Property Attributes” on page 8-7
• “Static Properties” on page 5-66
Class Definition—Syntax Reference

• “Class Files and Folders” on page 5-2
• “Class Components” on page 5-5
• “Classdef Block” on page 5-10
• “Properties” on page 5-12
• “Methods and Functions” on page 5-17
• “Methods In Separate Files” on page 5-21
• “Events and Listeners” on page 5-25
• “Attribute Specification” on page 5-27
• “Call Superclass Methods on Subclass Objects” on page 5-30
• “Representative Class Code” on page 5-32
• “MATLAB Code Analyzer Warnings” on page 5-37
• “Objects In Switch Statements” on page 5-39
• “Operations on Objects” on page 5-46
• “Use of Editor and Debugger with Classes” on page 5-50
• “Automatic Updates for Modified Classes” on page 5-51
• “Compatibility with Previous Versions” on page 5-58
• “Comparison of MATLAB and Other OO Languages” on page 5-61
Class Files and Folders

Options for Class Folders

There are two ways to create folders that contain class-definition files:

- *Path folder* — a folder that is on the MATLAB path.
- *Class folder* — a folder that is in a path folder and is named with the @ character and the class name. For example:

  
  @MyClass

  
  Class folders are not directly on the MATLAB path. The path folder that contains the class folder is on the MATLAB path.

Options for Class Files

There are two ways to specify classes with respect to files and folders:

- Create a single, self-contained class definition file in a path folder or a class folder
- Define a class in multiple files, which requires you to use a class folder inside a path folder

Create a Single, Self-Contained Class Definition File

Create a single, self-contained class definition file in a folder on the MATLAB® path. The name of the file must match the class (and constructor) name and must have the `.m` extension. Define the class entirely in this file. You can put other single-file classes in this folder.

The following diagram shows an example of this folder organization. *pathfolder* is a folder on the MATLAB path.
Distribute the Class Definition to Multiple Files

If you use multiple files to define a class, put all the class-definition files (the file containing the classdef and all class method files) in a single @ClassName folder. That class folder must be inside a folder that is on the MATLAB path. You can define only one class in a class folder.

A path folder can contain classes defined in both class folders and single files without a class folder.

Group Classes with Package Folders

The parent folder to a package folder is on the MATLAB path, but the package folder is not. Package folders (which always begin with a + character) can contain multiple class definitions, package-scoped functions, and other packages. A package folder defines a new name space in which you can reuse class names. Use the package name to refer to classes and functions defined in package folders (for example, packagefld1.ClassNameA(), packagefld2.packageFunction()).
More About

- “Class and Path Folders” on page 6-15
- “Packages Create Namespaces” on page 6-21
- “Methods In Separate Files” on page 5-21
Class Components

In this section...

“Class Building Blocks” on page 5-5
“Class Definition Block” on page 5-5
“Properties Block” on page 5-6
“Methods Block” on page 5-6
“Events Block” on page 5-7
“A Complete Class” on page 5-8
“Enumeration Block” on page 5-8
“Related Information” on page 5-9

Class Building Blocks

MATLAB organizes class definition code into modular blocks, delimited by keywords. All keywords have an associated end statement:

- `classdef...end` — Definition of all class components
- `properties...end` — Declaration of property names, specification of property attributes, assignment of default values
- `methods...end` — Declaration of method signatures, method attributes, and function code
- `events...end` — Declaration of event name and attributes
- `enumeration...end` — Declaration of enumeration members and enumeration values

`properties`, `methods`, `events`, and `enumeration` are keywords only within a `classdef` block.

Class Definition Block

The `classdef` block contains the class definition within a file that starts with the `classdef` keyword and terminates with the `end` keyword.

classdef (ClassAttributes) ClassName < SuperClass
... end

For example, this `classdef` defines a class called `MyClass` that subclasses the `handle` class, but cannot be used to derive subclasses:

```matlab
classdef (Sealed) MyClass < handle
... end
```

See, “Classdef Block” on page 5-10 for more syntax information.

**Properties Block**

The `properties` block (one for each unique set of attribute specifications) contains property definitions, including optional initial values. The properties block starts with the `properties` keyword and terminates with the `end` keyword.

```matlab
classdef ClassName
    properties (PropertyAttributes)
        ...
    end
... end
```

For example, this class defines a property called `Prop1` that has private access and has a default value equal to the output of the `date` function.

```matlab
classdef MyClass
    properties (Access = private)
        Prop1 = date;
    end
... end
```

See “Properties” on page 5-12 for more information.

**Methods Block**

The `methods` block (one for each unique set of attribute specifications) contains function definitions for the class methods. The methods block starts with the `methods` keyword and terminates with the `end` keyword.
classdef ClassName
    methods (MethodAttributes)
    ...
    end
    ...
end

For example:

```matlab
classdef MyClass
    methods (Access = private)
        function obj = myMethod(obj)
            ...
        end
    end
end
```

See “Methods and Functions” on page 5-17 for more information.

**Events Block**

The events block (one for each unique set of attribute specifications) contains the names of events that this class declares. The events block starts with the events keyword and terminates with the end keyword.

```matlab
classdef ClassName
    events (EventAttributes)
        EventName
    end
    ...
end
```

For example, this class defined an event called StateChange with a ListenAccess set to protected:

```matlab
classdef EventSource
    events (ListenAccess = protected)
        StateChanged
    end
    ...
end
```

See “Events and Listeners” on page 5-25 for more information.
A Complete Class

A complete class definition contains any combination of properties, methods, and events code blocks.

classdef (Sealed) MyClass < handle
  properties (Access = private)
    Prop1 = datenum(date);
  end
  properties
    Prop2
  end
  methods
    function obj = MyClass(x)
      obj.Prop2 = x;
    end
  end
  methods (Access = {?MyOtherClass})
    function d = myMethod(obj)
      d = obj.Prop1 + x;
    end
  end
  events (ListenAccess = protected)
    StateChanged
  end
end

Enumeration Block

The enumeration block contains the enumeration members defined by the class. The enumeration block starts with the enumeration keyword and terminates with the end keyword.

classdef ClassName < SuperClass
  enumeration
    EnumerationMember
  end
  ...
end

For example, this class defines two enumeration members that represent logical false and true:

classdef Boolean < logical
See, “How to Use Enumerations” on page 14-5 for more information.

**Related Information**

“Class and Path Folders” on page 6-15
Classdef Block

In this section...

“How to Specify Attributes and Superclasses” on page 5-10
“Class Attribute Syntax” on page 5-10
“Superclass Syntax” on page 5-11

How to Specify Attributes and Superclasses

The classdef block contains the class definition. The classdef line is where you specify:

- Class attributes
- Superclasses

The classdef block contains the properties, methods, and events subblocks.

Class Attribute Syntax

Class attributes modify class behavior in some way. Assign values to class attributes only when you want to change their default value.

No change to default attribute values:

classdef ClassName
  ...
end

One or more attribute values assigned:

classdef (attribute1 = value,...)
  ...
end

For example, the TextString class specifies that it cannot be used to derive subclasses:

classdef TextString (Sealed)
  ...
end
See “Class Attributes” on page 6-5 for a list of attributes and a discussion of the behaviors they control.

**Superclass Syntax**

Derive a class from one or more other classes by specifying the superclasses on the `classdef` line:

```matlab
classdef ClassName < SuperclassName
...
end
```

For example, the `LinkedList` class inherits from classes called `Array` and `handle`:

```matlab
classdef LinkedList < Array & handle
...
end
```

**Related Examples**

- “Create Subclasses — Syntax and Techniques” on page 12-7
Properties

In this section...

“What You Can Define” on page 5-12
“Initialize Property Values” on page 5-12
“Define Default Values” on page 5-13
“Assign Property Values from Constructor” on page 5-13
“Initialize Properties to Unique Values” on page 5-14
“Property Attributes” on page 5-14
“Property Access Methods” on page 5-15
“Reference Object Properties Using Variables” on page 5-16

What You Can Define

You can control aspects of property definitions in the following ways:

• Specify a default value for each property individually
• Assign property values in a class constructor
• Assign property attribute values on a per block basis
• Define methods that execute when the property is set or queried
• Define properties that do not store values, but whose values depend on other properties

Note: Always use case sensitive property names in your MATLAB code. Properties cannot have the same name as the class.

Initialize Property Values

There are two basic approaches to initializing property values:

• In the property definition — MATLAB evaluates the expression only once and assigns the same value to the property of every instance.
• In a class constructor — MATLAB evaluates the assignment expression for each instance, which ensures that each instance has a unique value.

Define Default Values

Within a `properties` block, you can control an individual property's default value. Assign default values as a value or MATLAB expressions. Expressions cannot reference variables. For example:

• **Prop1** — No assignment results in empty `[]` default value
• **Prop2** — Assign character array as default value
• **Prop3** — Assign result of expression as default value

```matlab
classdef ClassName
    properties
        Prop1
        Prop2 = 'some text';
        Prop3 = sin(pi/12);
    end
end
```

If the class definition does not specify a default property value, MATLAB sets the property value to empty `double ([])`.

**Note:** Evaluation of property default values occurs only when the value is first needed, and only once when MATLAB first initializes the class. MATLAB does not reevaluate the expression each time you create an instance of the class.

See, “When MATLAB Evaluates Expressions” on page 6-11 for more information on the evaluation of expressions that you assign as property default values.

Assign Property Values from Constructor

To assign values to a property from within the class constructor, reference the object that the constructor returns (the output variable `obj`):

```matlab
classdef MyClass
    properties
        Prop1
    end
end
```
When you assign a property in the class constructor, MATLAB evaluates the assignment statement for each object you create. Assign property values in the constructor if you want each object to contain a unique value for that property.

For example, suppose you want to assign a unique handle object to the property of another object each time you create one of those objects. Assign the handle object to the property in the constructor. Call the handle object constructor to create a unique handle object with each instance of your class.

See, “Referencing the Object in a Constructor” on page 9-18 for more information on constructor methods.

**Initialize Properties to Unique Values**

MATLAB assigns properties to the specified default values only once when MATLAB loads the class definition. Therefore, if you initialize a property value with a handle-class constructor, MATLAB calls this constructor only once and every instance references the same handle object. If you want a property value to be initialized to a new instance of a handle object each time you create an object, assign the property value in the constructor.

**Property Attributes**

All properties have attributes that modify certain aspects of the property's behavior. Specified attributes apply to all properties in a particular properties block. For example:

```matlab
classdef ClassName
    properties (PropertyAttribute = value)
        Prop1
        Prop2
    end
end
```

For example, only methods in the same class definition can modify and query the **Salary** and **Password** properties.
This restriction exists because the class defines these properties in a properties block with the Access attribute set to private.

Property Attributes

See, “Property Attributes” on page 8-7 for a description of property attributes you can specify.

Property Access Methods

MATLAB calls whenever setting or querying a property value. Define property set access or get access methods in methods blocks that specify no attributes and have the following syntax:

```matlab
methods
    function obj = set.PropertyName(obj,value)
        ...
    end

    function value = get.PropertyName(obj)
        ...
    end
end
```

MATLAB does not call the property set access method when assigning the default value specified in the property's definition block.

For example, the set.Password method tests the length of the character array assigned to a property named Password. If there are less than seven characters in the value assigned to the property, MATLAB returns the error. Otherwise, MATLAB assigns the specified value to the property.

```matlab
function obj = set.Password(obj,pw)
    if numel(pw) < 7
```
error('Password must have at least 7 characters')
else
  obj.Password = pw;
end

See “Property Access Methods” on page 8-14 for more information on property access methods.

Reference Object Properties Using Variables

MATLAB can resolve a property name from a char variable using an expression of the form:

object.(PropertyNameVar)

where PropertyNameVar is a variable containing the name of a valid object property. Use this syntax when passing property names as arguments. For example, the getPropValue function returns the value of the KeyType property:

PropName = 'KeyType';
function o = getPropValue(obj,PropName)
  o = obj.(PropName);
end

More About

• “How to Use Properties” on page 8-2
Methods and Functions

In this section...

“The Methods Block” on page 5-17
“Method Calling Syntax” on page 5-17
“Private Methods” on page 5-19
“More Detailed Information On Methods” on page 5-19
“Class-Related Functions” on page 5-19
“How to Overload Functions and Operators” on page 5-20

The Methods Block

Define methods as MATLAB functions within a methods block, inside the classdef block. The constructor method has the same name as the class and returns an object. You can assign values to properties in the class constructor. Terminate all method functions with an end statement.

classdef ClassName
    properties
        PropertyName
    end
    methods
        function obj = ClassName(arg1,...)
            obj.PropertyName = arg1;
            ...
        end
        function ordinaryMethod(obj,arg1,...)
            ...
        end
    end
    methods (Static)
        function staticMethod(arg1,...)
            ...
        end
    end
end

Method Calling Syntax

MATLAB differs from languages like C++ and Java in that there is no special hidden class object passed to all methods. You must pass an object of the class explicitly to the method. The left most argument does not need to be the class object, and the argument
list can have multiple objects. MATLAB dispatches to the method defined by the class of the dominant argument. For more information, see “Method Invocation” on page 9-10.

Methods must on the MATLAB path when called. For example, if you create an object and then change your current folder to a folder from which the method file is not visible, MATLAB errors when you to call that method.

Always use case sensitive method names in your MATLAB code.

**Ordinary Methods**

Call ordinary methods using MATLAB function syntax or dot notation. For example, suppose you have a class that defines `ordinaryMethod`. Pass an object of the defining class and whatever arguments are required.

```matlab
classdef MyClass
    methods
        function out = ordinaryMethod(obj,arg1)
            ...
        end
    end
end
```

Call `ordinaryMethod` using the object `obj` of the class and either syntax:

- `obj = MyClass;
  r = ordinaryMethod(obj,arg1);
  r = obj.ordinaryMethod(arg1);`

**Static Methods**

Static methods do not require an object of the class. To call a static method, prefix the method name with the class name so that MATLAB can determine what class defines the method.

```matlab
classdef MyClass
    methods (Static)
        function out = staticMethod(arg1)
            ...
        end
    end
end
```

Call `staticMethod` using the syntax `classname.methodname`: 
r = MyClass.staticMethod(arg1);

See “Static Methods” on page 9-24 for information on methods that do not require objects of their class.

**Private Methods**

Use the `Access` method attribute to create a private method. You do not need to use a private folder.

See “Method Attributes” on page 9-5 for a list of method attributes.

**More Detailed Information On Methods**

“Methods”

**Class-Related Functions**

You can define functions that are not class methods in the file that contains the class definition (`classdef`). Define local functions outside of the `classdef - end` block, but in the same file as the class definition. Functions defined in `classdef` files work like local functions. You can call these functions from anywhere in the same file, but they are not visible outside of the file in which you define them.

Local functions in `classdef` files are useful for utility functions that you use only within that file. These functions can take or return arguments that are instances of the class but, it is not necessary, as in the case of ordinary methods. For example, the following code defines `myUtilityFcn` outside the `classdef` block:

```matlab
classdef MyClass
    properties
        PropName
    end
    methods
        function obj = MyClass(arg1)
            obj.PropName = arg1;
        end
    end
end % End of classdef

function myUtilityFcn
```
... end

You also can create package functions, which require the use of the package name when calling these functions.

**How to Overload Functions and Operators**

Overload MATLAB functions for your class by defining a class method with the same name as the function that you want to overload. MATLAB dispatches to the class method when the function is called with an instance of the class.

You can overload MATLAB arithmetic, logical, relational, and indexing operators by defining class methods with the appropriate names.

See the handle class for a list of operations defined for that class. All classes deriving from `handle` inherit these methods.

**More About**

- “Packages Create Namespaces” on page 6-21
- “Class Operator Implementation” on page 17-40
- “Class Precedence” on page 6-19
Methods In Separate Files

In this section...

“Methods In Class Folders” on page 5-21
“Define Method in Function File” on page 5-22
“Specify Method Attributes in classdef File” on page 5-22
“Methods That You Must Define In the classdef File” on page 5-23

Methods In Class Folders

You can define class methods in files that are separate from the class definition file, with certain exceptions (see “Methods That You Must Define In the classdef File” on page 5-23).

To use multiple files for class definitions, put the class files in a folder having a name beginning with the @ character followed by the name of the class (this is called a class folder). Ensure that the parent folder of the class folder is on the MATLAB path.

If the class folder is contained in one or more package folders, then the top-level package folder must be on the MATLAB path.

For example, the folder @MyClass must contain the file MyClass.m (which contains the classdef block) and can contain other methods and function defined in files having a .m extension. The folder @MyClass can contain a number of files:

@MyClass/MyClass.m
@MyClass/subsref.m
@MyClass/subsasgn.m
@MyClass/horzcat.m
@MyClass/vertcat.m
@MyClass/myFunc.m

Note: MATLAB treats any .m file in the class folder as a method of the class. The base name of the file must be a valid MATLAB function name. Valid function names begin with an alphabetic character, and can contain letters, numbers, or underscores.
Define Method in Function File

To define a method in a separate file in the class folder, create the function in a file with the .m extension. Do not use the method-end keywords in that file. Name the file with the function name, as with any function.

In the myFunc.m file, implement the method:

```matlab
function output = myFunc(obj,arg1,arg2)
    ...% code here
end
```

It is a good practice to declare the function signature in the classdef file in a methods block:

```matlab
classdef MyClass
    methods
        output = myFunc(obj,arg1,arg2)
    end
end
```

If you want to use nondefault method attributes for a method implemented in a separate file, you must add the function signature to a methods block with the attribute specification.

Specify Method Attributes in classdef File

If you specify method attributes for a method that you define in a separate function file, include the method signature in a methods block in the classdef file. This methods block specifies the nondefault attributes that apply to the method.

For example, the following code shows a method with Access set to private in the methods block. The method implementation resides in a separate file. Do not include the function or end keywords in the methods block. Include only the function signature showing input and output arguments.

```matlab
classdef MyClass
    methods (Access = private)
        output = myFunc(obj,arg1,arg2)
    end
end
```
In a file named `myFunc.m`, in the `@MyClass` folder, define the function:

```matlab
function output = myFunc(obj,arg1,arg2)
...
end
```

If you specify nondefault attributes for a method, include the method signature in the file with the `classdef` block.

### Static Methods in Separate Files

To create a static method, set the method `Static` attribute to `true` and list the function signature in a static methods block in the `classdef` file. Include the input and output arguments with the function name. For example:

```matlab
classdef MyClass
...
    methods (Static)
        output = staticFunc1(arg1,arg2)
        staticFunc2
    end
...
end
```

Define the functions in separate files using the same function signature. For example, in the file `@MyClass/staticFunc1.m`:

```matlab
function output = staticFunc1.arg1,arg2)
...
end
```

and in `@Myclass/staticFunc2.m`:

```matlab
function staticFunc2
...
end
```

### Methods That You Must Define In the classdef File

You must define the following methods in the `classdef` file. You cannot define these methods in separate files:

- Class constructor
• Delete method
• All functions that use dots in their names, including:
  • Converter methods that must use the package name as part of the class name because the class is contained in packages
  • Property set and get access methods

Related Information
• “Converters for Package Classes” on page 17-11.
• “Property Access Methods” on page 8-14

Related Examples
• “Update Graphs Using Events and Listeners” on page 11-38
Events and Listeners

In this section...

“Define and Trigger Events” on page 5-25
“Listen for Events” on page 5-25

Define and Trigger Events

To define an event, declare a name for the event in an events block. Trigger the event using the handle class notify method. Only classes derived from the handle class can define events.

For example, MyClass class:

- Subclasses handle
- Defines an event named StateChange
- Triggers the event using the inherited notify method in its upDateUI method.

```matlab
classdef MyClass < handle
    events
        StateChange
    end
end
methods
    function upDateUI(obj)
        ...
        notify(obj,'StateChange');
    end
end
```

Listen for Events

Any number of objects can listen to the StateChange event. When notify executes, MATLAB calls all registered listener callbacks. MATLAB passes the handle of the object generating the event and event data to the callback functions. To create a listener, use the addlistener method of the handle class.

```matlab
addlistener(event_obj,'StateChange',@myCallback)
```

Related Examples

- “Learn to Use Events and Listeners” on page 11-2
• “Events and Listeners — Syntax and Techniques” on page 11-19
Attribute Specification

In this section...

“Attribute Syntax” on page 5-27
“Attribute Descriptions” on page 5-27
“Attribute Values” on page 5-28
“Simpler Syntax for true/false Attributes” on page 5-28

Attribute Syntax

Attributes modify the behavior of classes and class components (properties, methods, and events). Attributes enable you to define useful behaviors without writing complicated code. For example, you can create a read-only property by setting its SetAccess attribute to private, but leaving its GetAccess attribute set to public:

```
properties (SetAccess = private)
    ScreenSize = getScreenSize;
end
```

All class definition blocks (classdef, properties, methods, and events) support specific attributes. All attributes have default values. Specify attribute values only in cases where you want to change from the default value to another predefined value.

Note: Specify the value of a particular attribute only once in any component block.

Attribute Descriptions

For lists of supported attributes, see:

- “Class Attributes” on page 6-5
- “Property Attributes” on page 8-7
- “Method Attributes” on page 9-5
- “Event Attributes” on page 11-17
Attribute Values

When you specify attribute values, those values affect all the components defined within the defining block. For example, the following property definition blocks set the:

- AccountBalance property SetObservable attribute to true
- SSNumber and CreditCardNumber properties' Hidden attribute to true and SetAccess attribute to private.

Defining properties with different attribute settings requires multiple properties blocks.

```plaintext
properties (SetObservable = true)
  AccountBalance
end
properties (SetAccess = private, Hidden = true)
  SSNumber
  CreditCardNumber
end
```

Specified multiple attributes in a comma-separated list, as shown in the previous example.

When specifying class attributes, place the attribute list directly after the classdef keyword:

```plaintext
classdef (AttributeName = attributeValue) ClassName
  ...
end
```

Simpler Syntax for true/false Attributes

You can use a simpler syntax for attributes whose values are true or false — the attribute name alone implies true and adding the not operator (~) to the name implies false. For example:

```plaintext
methods (Static)
  ...
end
```

Is the same as:

```plaintext
methods (Static = true)
  ...
```
end

Use the `not` operator before an attribute name to define it as `false`:

```ruby
methods (~Static)
  ...
end
```

Is the same as:

```ruby
methods (Static = false)
  ...
end
```

All attributes that take a logical value (that is, `true` or `false`) have a default value of `false`. Therefore, specify an attribute only if you want to set it to `true`.

**Related Examples**

- “Expressions in Class Definitions” on page 6-8
Call Superclass Methods on Subclass Objects

In this section...

“How to Call Superclass Constructor” on page 5-30
“How to Call Superclass Methods” on page 5-31

How to Call Superclass Constructor

If you create a subclass object, MATLAB calls the superclass constructor to initialize the superclass part of the subclass object. By default, MATLAB calls the superclass constructor without arguments. If you want the superclass constructor called with specific arguments, explicitly call the superclass constructor from the subclass constructor. The call to the superclass constructor must come before any other references to the object.

The syntax for calling the superclass constructor uses an @ symbol:

```
obj = obj@MySuperClass(SuperClassArguments);
```

In the following class, the MySub object is initialized by the MySuperClass constructor. The superclass constructor constructs the MySuperClass part of the object using the specified arguments.

```matlab
classdef MySub < MySuperClass
    methods
        function obj = MySub(arg1,arg2,...)
            obj = obj@MySuperClass(SuperClassArguments);
            ...
        end
    end
end
```
See “Constructing Subclasses” on page 9-19 for more information.

**How to Call Superclass Methods**

Subclass methods can call superclass methods if both methods have the same name. From the subclass, reference the method name and superclass name with the @ symbol.

This diagram illustrates how to call the superMethod defined by MySuperClass.

For example, a subclass can call a superclass disp method to implement the display of the superclass part of the object. Then the subclass adds code to display the subclass part of the object:

```matlab
classdef MySub < MySuperClass
    methods
        function disp(obj)
            disp@MySuperClass(obj)
            ...%subclass code
        end
    end
end
```

**Related Examples**

- “Modify Superclass Methods” on page 12-15
Representative Class Code

In this section...

“Class Calculates Area” on page 5-32
“Description of Class Definition” on page 5-34

Class Calculates Area

The CircleArea class shows the syntax of a typical class definition. This class stores a value for the radius of a circle and calculates the area of the circle when you request this information. CircleArea also implements methods to graph, display, and create objects of the class.

To use the CircleArea class, copy this code into a file named CircleArea.m and save this file in a folder that is on the MATLAB path.

classdef CircleArea
    properties
        Radius
    end
    properties (Constant)
        P = pi;
    end
    properties (Dependent)
        Area
    end
    methods
        function obj = CircleArea(r)
            if nargin > 0
                obj.Radius = r;
            end
        end
        function val = get.Area(obj)
            val = obj.P*obj.Radius^2;
        end
        function obj = set.Radius(obj,val)
            if val < 0
                error('Radius must be positive')
            end
            obj.Radius = val;
        end
        function plot(obj)
Use the CircleArea Class

Create an object using the dialog box:

```matlab
ca = CircleArea.createObj
```

Add a value for radius and click **OK**.

Query the area of the defined circle:
ca.Area
ans =

    164.2202

Call the overloaded plot method:
plot(ca)

Description of Class Definition

Class definition code begins with the `classdef` keyword followed by the class name:

```
classdef CircleArea
```
Define the **Radius** property within the `properties-end` keywords. Use default attributes:

```matlab
properties
    Radius
end
```

Define the `P` property as **Constant** (“Properties with Constant Values” on page 15-2). Call the `pi` function only once when class is initialized.

```matlab
properties (Constant)
    P = pi;
end
```

Define the **Area** property as **Dependent** because its value depends on the **Radius** property.

```matlab
properties (Dependent)
    Area
end
```

methods % Begin defining methods

The `CircleArea` class constructor method has the same name as the class and accepts the value of the circle radius as an argument. This method also allows no input arguments. (“Class Constructor Methods” on page 9-16)

```matlab
function obj = CircleArea(r)
    if nargin > 0
        obj.Radius = r;
    else
        obj.Radius = 0;
    end
end
```

Because the **Area** property is **Dependent**, it does not store its value. The `get.Area` method calculates the value of the **Area** property whenever it is queried. (“Access Methods for Dependent Properties” on page 8-24)

```matlab
function val = get.Area(obj)
    val = obj.P*obj.Radius^2;
end
```

The `set.Radius` method tests the value assigned to the **Radius** property to ensure the value is not less than zero. MATLAB calls `set.Radius` to assign a value to **Radius**. (“Property Set Methods” on page 8-19.)
function obj = set.Radius(obj,val)
    if val < 0
        error('Radius must be positive')
    end
    obj.Radius = val;
end

The CircleArea class overloads the plot function. The plot method uses the rectangle function to create a circle and draws the radius. (“Overload Functions for Your Class” on page 9-26

function plot(obj)
    r = obj.Radius;
    d = r*2;
    pos = [0 0 d d];
    curv = [1 1];
    rectangle('Position',pos,'Curvature',curv)
    line([0,r],[r,r])
    text(r/2,r+.5,['r = ',num2str(r)])
    axis equal
end

The CircleArea class overloads the disp function to change the way MATLAB displays objects in the command window.

function disp(obj)
    rad = obj.Radius;
    disp(['Circle with radius: ',num2str(rad)])
end

methods (Static)
The CircleArea class defines a Static method that uses a dialog box to create an object. (“Static Methods” on page 9-24

function obj = createObj
    prompt = {'Enter the Radius'};
    dlgTitle = 'Radius';
    rad = inputdlg(prompt,dlgTitle);
    r = str2double(rad{:});
    obj = CircleArea(r);
end

End of Static methods block and end of classdef block.

end
end
Syntax Warnings and Property Names

The MATLAB Code Analyzer helps you optimize your code and avoid syntax errors while you write code. It is useful to understand some of the rules that the Code Analyzer applies in its analysis of class definition code. This understanding helps you avoid situations in which MATLAB allows code that is undesirable.

Variable/Property Name Conflict Warnings

The Code Analyzer warns about the use of variable names in methods that match the names of properties. For example, suppose a class defines a property called `EmployeeName` and in this class, there is a method that uses `EmployeeName` as a variable:

```matlab
properties
    EmployeeName
end
methods
    function someMethod(obj,n)
        EmployeeName = n;
    end
end
```

While the previous function is legal MATLAB code, it results in Code Analyzer warnings for two reasons:

- The value of `EmployeeName` is never used
- `EmployeeName` is the name of a property that is used as a variable

If the function `someMethod` contained the following statement instead:

```matlab
obj.EmployeeName = n;
```
The Code Analyzer generates no warnings.

If you change `someMethod` to:

```matlab
function EN = someMethod(obj)
    EN = EmployeeName;
end
```

The Code Analyzer returns only one warning, suggesting that you might actually want to refer to the `EmployeeName` property.

While this version of `someMethod` is legal MATLAB code, it is confusing to give a property the same name as a function. Therefore, the Code Analyzer provides a warning suggesting that you might have intended the statement to be:

```matlab
EN = obj.EmployeeName;
```

**Exception to Variable/Property Name Rule**

Suppose you define a method that returns a value of a property and uses the name of the property for the output variable name. For example:

```matlab
function EmployeeName = someMethod(obj)
    EmployeeName = obj.EmployeeName;
end
```

The Code Analyzer does not warn when a variable name is the same as a property name when the variable is:

- An input or output variable
- A global or persistent variable

In these particular cases, the Code Analyzer does not warn you that you are using a variable name that is also a property name. Therefore, a coding error like the following:

```matlab
function EmployeeName = someMethod(obj)
    EmployeeName = EmployeeName; % Forgot to include obj.
end
```

does not trigger a warning from the Code Analyzer.
Objects In Switch Statements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>In this section…</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>“Evaluation of Switch Statement” on page 5-39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“How to Define the eq Method” on page 5-41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Enumerations in Switch Statements” on page 5-43</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Evaluation of Switch Statement

MATLAB enables you to use objects in `switch` and `case` statements if the object’s class defines an `eq` method. The `eq` method implements the `==` operation on objects of that class.

For objects, `switch_expression == case_expression` defines how MATLAB evaluates `switch` and `cases` statements.

**Note:** You do not need to define `eq` methods for enumeration classes. See “Enumerations in Switch Statements” on page 5-43.

Handle Objects in Switch Statements

All classes derived from the `handle` class inherit an `eq` method. The expression,

\[ h1 == h2 \]

is `true` if `h1` and `h2` are handles for the same object.

For example, the `BasicHandle` class derives from `handle`:

```matlab
classdef BasicHandle < handle
    properties
        Prop1
    end
    methods
        function obj = BasicHandle(val)
            if nargin > 0
                obj.Prop1 = val;
            end
    end
```
Create a `BasicHandle` object and use it in a `switch` statement:

```matlab
h1 = BasicHandle('Handle Object');
h2 = h1;
```

Here is the `switch` statement code:

```matlab
switch h1
    case h2
        disp('h2 is selected')
    otherwise
        disp('h2 not selected')
end
```

The result is:

```
h2 is selected
```

**Object Must Be Scalar**

The `switch` statements work only with scalar objects. For example:

```matlab
h1(1) = BasicHandle('Handle Object');
h1(2) = BasicHandle('Handle Object');
h1(3) = BasicHandle('Handle Object');
h2 = h1;
```

```matlab
switch h1
    case h2
        disp('h2 is selected')
    otherwise
        disp('h2 not selected')
end
```

The result is:

```
SWITCH expression must be a scalar or string constant.
```

In this case, `h1` is not scalar. Use `isscalar` to determine if an object is scalar before entering a `switch` statement.
How to Define the eq Method

To enable the use of value-class objects in switch statements, implement an eq method for the class. Use the eq method to determine what constitutes equality of two object of the class.

Behave Like a Built-in Type

Some MATLAB functions also use the built-in == operator in their implementation. Therefore, your implementation of eq should be replaceable with the built-in eq to enable objects of your class work like built-in types in MATLAB code.

Design of eq

Implement the eq method to returns a logical array representing the result of the == comparison.

For example, the SwitchOnVer class implements an eq method that returns true for the == operation if the value of the Version property is the same for both objects. In addition, eq works with arrays the same way as the built-in eq. For the following expression:

\[ \text{obj1} == \text{obj2} \]

The eq method works like this:

- If both \text{obj1} and \text{obj2} are scalar, eq returns a scalar value.
- If both \text{obj1} and \text{obj2} are nonscalar arrays, then these arrays must have the same dimensions, and eq returns an array of the same size.
- If one input argument is scalar and the other is a nonscalar array, then eq treats the scalar object as if it is an array having the same dimensions as the nonscalar array.

Implementation of eq

Here is a class that implements an eq method. Ensure your implementation contains appropriate error checking for the intended use.

classdef SwitchOnVer
    properties
        Version
    end
    methods
        function obj = SwitchOnVer(ver)
            if nargin > 0
                % Insert your implementation here
            end
        end
    end
end
obj.Version = ver;
end

function bol = eq(obj1,obj2)
if ~strcmp(class(obj1),class(obj2))
    error('Objects are not of the same class')
end
s1 = numel(obj1);
s2 = numel(obj2);
if s1 == s2
    bol = false(size(obj1));
    for k=1:s1
        if obj1(k).Version == obj2(k).Version
            bol(k) = true;
        else
            bol(k) = false;
        end
    end
elseif s1 == 1
    bol = scalarExpEq(obj2,obj1);
elseif s2 == 1
    bol = scalarExpEq(obj1,obj2);
else
    error('Dimension missmatch')
end

function ret = scalarExpEq(ns,s)
% ns is nonscalar array
% s is scalar array
ret = false(size(ns));
n = numel(ns);
for kk=1:n
    if ns(kk).Version == s.Version
        ret(kk) = true;
    else
        ret(kk) = false;
    end
end

Use SwitchOnVer objects in switch statements:

% Create known versions of objects
ov1 = SwitchOnVer(1.0);
ov2 = SwitchOnVer(2.0);
ov3 = SwitchOnVer(3.0);
...

... if isscalar(objIn)
    switch(objIn)
        case ov1
            disp('This is version 1.0')
        case ov2
            disp('This is version 2.0')
        case ov3
            disp('This is version 3.0')
        otherwise
            disp('There is no version')
    end
else
    error('Input object must be scalar')
end

Enumerations in Switch Statements

MATLAB enables you to use enumerations in switch statements without requiring an explicitly defined eq method for the enumeration class.

For example, the WeeklyPlanner class defines enumerations for five days of the week. The switch/case statements in the todaySchedule static method dispatch on the enumeration member corresponding to the current day of the week. The date and datestr functions return a character string with the name of the current day.

'classdef WeeklyPlanner
    enumeration
        Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday
    end
    methods (Static)
        function todaySchedule
            dayName = datestr(date,'dddd');
            dayEnum = WeeklyPlanner.(dayName);
            switch dayEnum
                case WeeklyPlanner.Monday
                    disp('Monday schedule')
                case WeeklyPlanner.Tuesday
...
disp('Tuesday schedule')
case WeeklyPlanner.Wednesday
disp('Wednesday schedule')
case WeeklyPlanner.Thursday
disp('Thursday schedule')
case WeeklyPlanner.Friday
disp('Friday schedule')
end
end
end
end

Call todaySchedule to display today's schedule:
WeeklyPlanner.todaySchedule

**Enumerations Derived from Built-In Types**

Enumeration classes that derived from built-in types inherit the superclass `eq` method. For example, the `FlowRate` class derives from `int32`:

```matlab
classdef FlowRate < int32
    enumeration
        Low    (10)
        Medium (50)
        High   (100)
    end
end
```

The `switchEnum` function switches on the input argument, which can be a `FlowRate` enumeration value.

```matlab
function switchEnum(inpt)
    switch inpt
        case 10
            disp('Flow = 10 cfm')
        case 50
            disp('Flow = 50 cfm')
        case 100
            disp('Flow = 100 cfm')
    end
end
```

Call `switchEnum` with an enumerated value:
switchEnum(FlowRate.Medium)

Flow = 50 cfm
Operations on Objects

Object Operations

A fundamental purpose of objects is to contain data and facilitate ways to manipulate that data. Objects often define their own version of ordinary MATLAB functions that work with the object. For example, you can create a timeseries object and pass the object to plot:

```matlab
ts = timeseries(rand(100,1),.01:.01:1,'Name','Data1');
plot(ts)
```
However, MATLAB does not call the standard `plot` function. MATLAB calls the `timeseries plot` method, which can extract the data from the `timeseries` object and create a customized graph.

**Help on Objects**

Suppose you use an `audioplayer` object to play audio with MATLAB. To do this, load audio data into MATLAB and create an `audioplayer`:

```matlab
load('handel','Fs','y')
chorus = audioplayer(y,Fs);
```
The `audioplayer` function creates an object that you access using the object variable `chorus`. MATLAB stores the audio source and other information in the object properties.

Here are the properties and values for the `chorus` instance of the `audioplayer`:

```matlab
chorus =
```

Click the link to get the documentation on `audioplayer` objects.

```
with properties:
    SampleRate: 8192
    BitsPerSample: 16
    NumberOfChannels: 1
    DeviceID: -1
    CurrentSample: 1
    TotalSamples: 73113
    Running: 'off'
    StartFcn: []
    StopFcn: []
    TimerFcn: []
    TimerPeriod: 0.0500
    Tag: ''
    UserData: []
    Type: 'audioplayer'
```

The object’s documentation discusses the purpose of the object and describes the properties and methods that you use when working with objects of that class.

You can also list the methods to see what operations you can perform. Pass the object to the `methods` function to see the list:

```matlab
methods(chorus)
```

```
Methods for class audioplayer:
    audioplayer   getdisp       pause       resume       stop
```
To play the audio, use the play method:

```matlab
play(chorus)
```

## Functions to Test Objects

These functions provide logical tests, which are useful when using objects in ordinary functions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>isa</code></td>
<td>Determine whether an argument is an object of specific class.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>isequal</code></td>
<td>Determine if two objects are equal, which means both objects are of the same class and size and their corresponding property values are equal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>isobject</code></td>
<td>Determine whether input is a MATLAB object</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Functions to Query Class Components

These functions provide information about object class components.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>class</code></td>
<td>Return class of object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>enumeration</code></td>
<td>Display class enumeration members and names.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>events</code></td>
<td>List event names defined by the class.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>methods</code></td>
<td>List methods implemented by the class.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>methodsview</code></td>
<td>List methods in separate window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>properties</code></td>
<td>List class property names.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Use of Editor and Debugger with Classes

How to Refer to Class Files

Define classes in files just like scripts and functions. To use the editor or debugger with a class file, use the full class name. For example, suppose the file for a class, `myclass.m` is in the following location:

`+PackFld1/+PackFld2/@myclass/myclass.m`

To open `myclass.m` in the MATLAB editor, you could reference the file using dot-separated package names:

```matlab
edit PackFld1.PackFld2.myclass
```

You could also use path notation:

```matlab
edit +PackFld1/+PackFld2/@myclass/myclass
```

If `myclass.m` is not in a class folder, then enter:

```matlab
edit +PackFld1/+PackFld2/myclass
```

To refer to functions inside a package folder, use dot or path separators:

```matlab
edit PackFld1.PackFld2.packFunction
edit +PackFld1/+PackFld2/packFunction
```

To refer to a function defined in its own file inside of a class folder, use:

```matlab
edit +PackFld1/+PackFld2/@myclass/myMethod
```

How to Debug Class Files

For debugging, `dbstop` accepts any of the file specifications used by the `edit` command.

See “Automatic Updates for Modified Classes” on page 5-51 for information about clearing class.
Automatic Updates for Modified Classes

In this section...

“When MATLAB Loads Class Definitions” on page 5-51
“Consequences of Automatic Update” on page 5-52
“What Happens When Class Definitions Change” on page 5-52
“Actions That Do Not Trigger Updates” on page 5-53
“Multiple Updates to Class Definitions” on page 5-53
“When Updates Are Not Possible” on page 5-53
“Potential Consequences of Class Updates” on page 5-54
“Updates to Class Attributes” on page 5-54
“Updates to Property Definitions” on page 5-54
“Updates to Method Definitions” on page 5-56
“Updates to Event Definitions” on page 5-56

When MATLAB Loads Class Definitions

MATLAB loads a class definition:

• The first time the class is referenced.
• Whenever the definition of a loaded class changes and MATLAB returns to the command prompt.
• When you change the MATLAB path and cause a different definition of the class to be used.

MATLAB allows only one definition for a class to exist at any time. Therefore, MATLAB attempts to update all existing objects of a class automatically to conform to the new class definition. You do not need to call clear classes to remove existing objects when you change their defining class.

Note: Using an editor other than the MATLAB editor or using MATLAB Online™ can result in delays to automatic updating.
Consequences of Automatic Update

MATLAB follows a set of basic rules when updating existing objects. An automatic update can result in:

- Existing objects being updated to the new class definition.
- An error if MATLAB cannot convert the objects to the new class definition or if there is an error in the class definition itself.

Here is an example of what happens when you create an instance of a concrete class edit the class definition to make the class abstract.

```plaintext
a = MyClass;
% Edit MyClass to make it Abstract

a
```

Error using MyClass/display
Cannot update object because the class 'MyClass' is now abstract.

**Note:** MATLAB does not update metaclass instances when you change the definition of a class. You must get new metaclass data after updating a class definition.

What Happens When Class Definitions Change

MATLAB updates existing objects when a class definition changes, including the following situations:

- Value change to handle — Existing objects become independent handles referring to different objects.
- Enumeration member added — Existing objects preserve the enumeration members they had previously, even if the underlying values have changed.
- Enumeration member removed — Existing objects that are not using the removed member have the same enumeration members that they had previously. Existing objects that use the removed member replace the removed member with the default member of the enumeration.
- Enumeration block removed — Enumeration members are taken out of use.
- Superclass definition changed — Changes applied to all subclasses in the hierarchy of that superclass.
• Superclass added or removed — Change of superclass applied to all existing objects.

**Actions That Do Not Trigger Updates**

These actions do not update existing objects:

• Calling the `class` function on an out-of-date object
• Assigning an out-of-date object to a variable
• Calling a method that does not access class data

Objects do not update until referenced in a way that exposes the change, such as invoking the object display.

**Multiple Updates to Class Definitions**

Updates do not occur incrementally. Updates conform to the latest version of the class.

**When Updates Are Not Possible**

Some class updates result in an invalid class definition. In these cases, objects do not update until the error is resolved:

• Adding a superclass can result in a property or method being defined twice.
• Changing a superclass to be `Sealed` when objects of one of its subclasses exists results in an invalid subclass definition.

Some class updates cause situations in which MATLAB cannot update existing objects to conform to a modified class definition. These cases result in errors until you delete the objects:

• Adding an enumeration block to a nonenumeration class
• Redefining a class to be abstract
• Removing a class from a heterogeneous hierarchy that results in there being no default object to replace existing objects in a heterogeneous array
• Updating a class to restrict array formation behavior, such as overloading array indexing and concatenation.
• Inheriting a `subsref`, `subsasgn`, `cat`, `vertcat`, or `horzcat` method
• Redefining a handle class to be a value class.
Potential Consequences of Class Updates

- Following an update, existing objects can be incompatible with the new class definition. For example, a newly added property can require execution of the constructor to be valid.

- Removing or renaming properties can lose the data held in the property. For example, if a property holds the only reference to another object and you remove that property from the class, the MATLAB deletes the object because there are no longer any references to it.

- Removing a class from a heterogeneous class hierarchy can result in invalid heterogeneous array elements. In this case, the default object for the heterogeneous hierarchy replaces these array elements.

Updates to Class Attributes

Changing class attributes can change existing object behavior or make the objects invalid. MATLAB returns an error when you access the invalid objects.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Change</th>
<th>Effect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Make Abstract = true</td>
<td>Accessing existing objects returns an error.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change AllowedSubclasses</td>
<td>Newly created objects can inherit from different superclasses than existing objects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change ConstructOnLoad</td>
<td>Loading classes obeys the current value of ConstructOnLoad.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change HandleCompatible</td>
<td>Newly created objects can have different class hierarchy than existing objects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change Hidden</td>
<td>Appearance of class in list of superclasses and access by help function can change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change InferiorClasses</td>
<td>Method dispatching for existing objects can change.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Make Sealed = true</td>
<td>Existing subclass objects return errors when accessed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Updates to Property Definitions

When you change the definition of class properties, MATLAB applies the changes to existing objects of the class.
### Automatic Updates for Modified Classes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Change</th>
<th>Effect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Add property</td>
<td>Adds the new property to existing objects of the class. Sets the property values to the default value (which is [] if the class definition does not specify a default).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remove property</td>
<td>Removes the property from existing objects of the class. Attempts to access the removed property fail.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change property default value</td>
<td>Does not apply the new default value to existing objects of the class.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Move property between subclass and superclass</td>
<td>Does not apply different default value when property definition moves between superclass and subclass.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change property attribute value</td>
<td>Applies changes to existing objects of the class.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some cases require transitional steps:

- **Abstract** — Existing objects of a class that becomes abstract cannot be updated. Delete these objects.
- **Access** — Changes to the public, protected, or private property access settings affect access to existing objects.

Changes to the access lists do not change existing objects. However, if you add classes to the access list, instances of those classes have access to this property. If you remove classes from the access list, objects of those classes no longer have access to this property.

- **Dependent** — If changed to true, existing objects no longer store property values. If you want to query the property value, add a property get method for the property.
- **Transient** — If changed to true, objects already saved, reload this property value. If changed to false, objects already saved reload this property using the default value.
Updates to Method Definitions

When you change the definition of class methods, MATLAB changes the affected class member in existing objects as follows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Change</th>
<th>Effect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Add method</td>
<td>You can call the new method on existing objects of the class.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modify method</td>
<td>Modifications are available to existing objects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remove method</td>
<td>You can on longer call deleted method on existing objects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change method attribute value</td>
<td>Apply changes to existing objects of the class.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Some cases require transitional steps:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Abstract — Existing objects of a class that becomes abstract cannot be updated. Delete these objects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Access — Changes to method public, protected, or private access settings affect access to existing objects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Changes to the access lists do not change existing instances. However, if you add classes to the access list, instances of those classes have access to this method. If you remove classes from the access list, objects of those classes no longer have access to this method.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Sealed — If changed to true and existing subclasses already have defined the method, MATLAB returns an error because the new class definition cannot be applied to existing subclasses.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Updates to Event Definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Change</th>
<th>Effect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Add event</td>
<td>Existing objects of the class support the new event.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Change event name

New event name is visible to existing objects of the class. MATLAB:

- Does not update existing metaclass objects
- Does update newly acquired metaclass objects
- Does not update listeners to use new event name

#### Remove event

Existing objects no longer support deleted event.

#### Change event attribute value

Apply changes to existing objects of the class.

Some cases require transitional steps:

- **ListenAccess** — Changes to event `public`, `protected`, or `private` listen access settings affect access to existing objects.

  Changes to the access list do not change existing objects. However, if you add classes to the access list, objects of those classes can create listeners for this event. If you remove classes from the access list, objects of those classes are not allowed to create listeners for this event.

- **NotifyAccess** — Changes to event `public`, `protected`, or `private` notify access settings affect access to existing objects.

  Changes to the access list do not change existing objects. However, if you add classes to the access list, instances of those classes can trigger this event. If you remove classes, objects of those classes are not able to trigger this event.

---

### Related Examples

- “Use of Editor and Debugger with Classes” on page 5-50
Compatibility with Previous Versions

In this section...

“New Class-Definition Syntax Introduced with MATLAB Software Version 7.6” on page 5-58
“Changes to Class Constructors” on page 5-59
“New Features Introduced with Version 7.6” on page 5-59
“Examples of Old and New” on page 5-60

New Class-Definition Syntax Introduced with MATLAB Software Version 7.6

MATLAB software Version 7.6 introduces a new syntax for defining classes. This new syntax includes:

- The `classdef` keyword begins a block of class-definitions code. An `end` statement terminates the class definition.
- Within the `classdef` code block, `properties`, `methods`, and `events` are also keywords delineating where you define the respective class members.

Cannot Mix Class Hierarchy

It is not possible to create class hierarchies that mix classes defined before Version 7.6 and current class definitions that use `classdef`. Therefore, you cannot subclass an old class to create a version of the new class.

Only One “@” Class Folder per Class

For classes defined using the new `classdef` keyword, a class folder shadows all class folders that occur after it on the MATLAB path. Classes defined in class folders must locate all class files in that single folder. However, classes defined in class folders continue to take precedence over functions and scripts having the same name, even those functions and scripts that come before them on the path.

Private Methods

You do not need to define private folders in class folders in Version 7.6. You can set the method’s `Access` attribute to `private` instead.
Changes to Class Constructors

Class constructor methods have two major differences. Class constructors:

• Do not use the `class` function.
• Must call the superclass constructor only if you want to pass arguments to its constructor. Otherwise, no call to the superclass constructor is necessary.

Example of Old and New Syntax

Compare the following two `Stock` constructor methods. The `Stock` class is a subclass of the `Asset` class, which requires arguments passed to its constructor.

Constructor Function Before Version 7.6

```matlab
function s = Stock(description,num_shares,share_price)
    s.NumShares = num_shares;
    s.SharePrice = share_price;
    % Construct Asset object
    a = Asset(description,'stock',share_price*num_shares);
    % Use the class function to define the stock object
    s = class(s,'Stock',a);
end % End of function
```

Write the same `Stock` class constructor as shown here. Define the inheritance on the `classdef` line and define the constructor within a `methods` block.

Constructor Function for Version 7.6

```matlab
classdef Stock < Asset
    ...
    methods
        function s = Stock(description,num_shares,share_price)
            % Call superclass constructor to pass arguments
            s = s@Asset(description,'stock',share_price*num_shares);
            s.NumShares = num_shares;
            s.SharePrice = share_price;
            end % End of function
        end % End of methods block
    end % End of classdef block
```

New Features Introduced with Version 7.6
• Properties: “How to Use Properties” on page 8-2
• Handle classes: “Comparison of Handle and Value Classes” on page 7-2
• Events and listeners: “Events and Listeners — Concepts” on page 11-12
• Class member attributes: “Attribute Specification” on page 5-27
• Abstract classes: “Abstract Classes” on page 12-80
• Dynamic properties: “Dynamic Properties — Adding Properties to an Instance” on page 8-30
• Ability to subclass MATLAB built-in classes: “Create Subclasses — Syntax and Techniques” on page 12-7
• Packages for scoping functions and classes: “Packages Create Namespaces” on page 6-21. MATLAB does not support packages for classes created before MATLAB Version 7.6 (that is, classes that do not use `classdef`).
• The JIT/Accelerator supports objects defined only by classes using `classdef`.

**Examples of Old and New**

The MATLAB Version 7.6 implementation of classes uses different syntax from previous releases. However, classes written in previous versions continue to work. Most of the code you use to implement the methods is likely to remain the same, except where you take advantage of new features.

The following sections reimplement examples using the latest syntax. The original MATLAB Classes and Objects documentation implemented these same examples and provide a comparison of old and new syntax.

“Class Design for Polynomials” on page 19-2

“A Simple Class Hierarchy” on page 20-2

“Containing Assets in a Portfolio” on page 20-20
Comparison of MATLAB and Other OO Languages

In this section...

“Some Differences from C++ and Java Code” on page 5-61
“Object Modification” on page 5-62
“Static Properties” on page 5-66
“Common Object-Oriented Techniques” on page 5-67

Some Differences from C++ and Java Code

The MATLAB programming language differs from other object-oriented languages, such as C++ or Java in some important ways.

Public Properties

Unlike fields in C++ or the Java language, you can use MATLAB properties to define a public interface separate from the implementation of data storage. You can provide public access to properties because you can define set and get access methods that execute automatically when assigning or querying property values. For example, the following statement:

myobj.Material = 'plastic';

assigns the string plastic to the Material property of myobj. Before making the actual assignment, myobj executes a method called set.Material (assuming the class of myobj defines this method), which can perform any necessary operations. See “Property Access Methods” on page 8-14 for more information on property access methods.

You can also control access to properties by setting attributes, which enable public, protected, or private access. See “Property Attributes” on page 8-7 for a full list of property attributes.

No Implicit Parameters

In some languages, one object parameter to a method is always implicit. In MATLAB, objects are explicit parameters to the methods that act on them.
Dispatching

In MATLAB classes, method dispatching is not based on method signature, as it is in C++ and Java code. When the argument list contains objects of equal precedence, MATLAB uses the left-most object to select the method to call.

However, if the class of an argument is superior to the class of the other arguments, MATLAB dispatches to the method of the superior argument, regardless of its position within the argument list.

See “Class Precedence” on page 6-19 for more information.

Calling Superclass Method

- In C++, you call a superclass method using the scoping operator: `superclass::method`
- In Java code, you use: `superclass.method`

The equivalent MATLAB operation is `method@superclass`.

Other Differences

In MATLAB classes, there is no equivalent to C++ templates or Java generics. However, MATLAB is weakly typed and it is possible to write functions and classes that work with different types of data.

MATLAB classes do not support overloading functions using different signatures for the same function name.

Object Modification

MATLAB classes can define public properties, which you can modify by explicitly assigning values to those properties on a given instance of the class. However, only classes derived from the handle class exhibit reference behavior. Modifying a property value on an instance of a value classes (classes not derived from `handle`), changes the value only within the context in which the modification is made.

The sections that follow describe this behavior in more detail.

Objects Passed to Functions

MATLAB passes all variables by value. When you pass an object to a function, MATLAB copies the value from the caller into the parameter variable in the called function.
However, MATLAB supports two kinds of classes that behave differently when copied:

- **Handle classes** — a handle class instance variable refers to an object. A copy of a handle class instance variable refers to the same object as the original variable. If a function modifies a handle object passed as an input argument, the modification affects the object referenced by both the original and copied handles.

- **Value classes** — the property data in an instance of a value class are independent of the property data in copies of that instance (although, a value class property could contain a handle). A function can modify a value object that is passed as an input argument, but this modification does not affect the original object.

See “Comparison of Handle and Value Classes” on page 7-2 for more information on the behavior and use of both kinds of classes.

**Passing Value Objects**

When you pass a value object to a function, the function creates a local copy of the argument variable. The function can modify only the copy. If you want to modify the original object, return the modified object and assign it to the original variable name. For example, consider the value class, `SimpleClass`:

```matlab
classdef SimpleClass
    properties
        Color
    end
    methods
        function obj = SimpleClass(c)            if nargin > 0
                obj.Color = c;            end
        end
    end
end
```

Create an instance of `SimpleClass`, assigning a value of `red` to its `Color` property:

```matlab
obj = SimpleClass('red');
```

Pass the object to the function `g`, which assigns `blue` to the `Color` property:

```matlab
function y = g(x)
    x.Color = 'blue';
    y = x;
end
```
\[ y = g(obj); \]

The function \( g \) modifies its copy of the input object and returns that copy, but does not change the original object.

\[ y.\text{Color} \]
\[ \text{ans} = \]
\[ \text{blue} \]

\[ \text{obj.\text{Color}} \]
\[ \text{ans} = \]
\[ \text{red} \]

If the function \( g \) did not return a value, the modification of the object \( \text{Color} \) property would have occurred only on the copy of \( \text{obj} \) within the function workspace. This copy would have gone out of scope when the function execution ended.

Overwriting the original variable actually replaces it with a new object:

\[ \text{obj} = g(obj); \]

**Passing Handle Objects**

When you pass a handle to a function, the function makes a copy of the handle variable, just like when passing a value object. However, because a copy of a handle object refers to the same object as the original handle, the function can modify the object without having to return the modified object.

For example, suppose you modify the \texttt{SimpleClass} class definition to make a class derived from the handle class:

\begin{verbatim}
classdef SimpleHandleClass < handle
    properties
        Color
    end
    methods
        function obj = SimpleHandleClass(c)
            if nargin > 0
                obj.Color = c;
            end
        end
    end
\end{verbatim}
Create an instance of `SimpleHandleClass`, assigning a value of `red` to its `Color` property:

```
obj = SimpleHandleClass('red');
```

Pass the object to the function `g`, which assigns `blue` to the `Color` property:

```
y = g(obj);
```

The function `g` sets the `Color` property of the object referred to by both the returned handle and the original handle:

```
y.Color
ans =
blue

obj.Color
ans =
blue
```

The variables `y` and `obj` refer to the same object:

```
y.Color = 'yellow';
obj.Color
ans =
yellow
```

The function `g` modified the object referred to by the input argument (`obj`) and returned a handle to that object in `y`.

**MATLAB Passes Handles by Value**

A handle variable is a reference to an object. MATLAB passes this reference by value.

Handles do not behave like references in C++. If you pass an object handle to a function and that function assigns a different object to that handle variable, the variable in the caller is not affected. For example, suppose you define a function `g2`:
function y = g2(x)
    x = SimpleHandleClass('green');
    y = x;
end

Pass a handle object to g2:

obj = SimpleHandleClass('red');
y = g2(obj);
y.Color

ans =
green

obj.Color

ans =
red

The function overwrites the handle passed in as an argument, but does not overwrite the object referred to by the handle. The original handle obj still references the original object.

**Static Properties**

In MATLAB, classes can define constant properties, but not "static" properties in the sense of other languages like C++. You cannot change constant properties from the initial value specified in the class definition.

MATLAB has long-standing rules that variables always take precedence over the names of functions and classes. Assignment statements introduce a variable if one does not exist.

Expressions of this form

A.B = C

Introduce a new variable, A, that is a struct containing a field B whose value is C. If A.B = C could refer to a static property of class A, then class A would take precedence over variable A.
This behavior would be a significant incompatibility with prior releases of MATLAB. For example, the introduction of a class named A on the MATLAB path could change the meaning of an assignment statement like A.B = C inside a .m code file.

In other languages, classes rarely use static data, except as private data within the class or as public constants. In MATLAB, you can use constant properties the same way you use public final static fields in Java. To use data that is internal to a class in MATLAB, create persistent variables in private or protected methods or local functions used privately by the class.

Avoid static data in MATLAB. If a class has static data, using the same class in multiple applications causes conflicts among applications. Conflicts are less of an issue in some other languages. These languages compile applications into executables that run in different processes. Each process has its own copy of the class static data. MATLAB, frequently runs many different applications in the same process and environment with a single copy of each class.

For ways to define and use static data in MATLAB, see “Static Data” on page 4-2.

**Common Object-Oriented Techniques**

This table provides links to sections that discuss object-oriented techniques commonly used by other object-oriented languages.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Technique</th>
<th>How to Use in MATLAB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Operator overloading</td>
<td>“Class Operator Implementation” on page 17-40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiple inheritance</td>
<td>“Subclass Multiple Classes” on page 12-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subclassing</td>
<td>“Create Subclasses — Syntax and Techniques” on page 12-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destructor</td>
<td>“Handle Class Destructor” on page 7-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data member scoping</td>
<td>“Property Attributes” on page 8-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Packages (scoping classes)</td>
<td>“Packages Create Namespaces” on page 6-21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Named constants</td>
<td>See “Properties with Constant Values” on page 15-2 and “Defining Named Values” on page 14-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enumerations</td>
<td>“How to Use Enumerations” on page 14-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Static methods</td>
<td>“Static Methods” on page 9-24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technique</td>
<td>How to Use in MATLAB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Static properties</td>
<td>Not supported. See <code>persistent</code> variables. For the equivalent of Java <code>static final</code> or C++ <code>static const</code> properties, use <code>Constant</code> properties. See “Properties with Constant Values” on page 15-2. For mutable static data, see “Static Data” on page 4-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constructor</td>
<td>“Class Constructor Methods” on page 9-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copy constructor</td>
<td>No direct equivalent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reference/reference classes</td>
<td>“Comparison of Handle and Value Classes” on page 7-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abstract class/Interface</td>
<td>“Abstract Classes” on page 12-80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garbage collection</td>
<td>“Object Lifecycle” on page 7-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instance properties</td>
<td>“Dynamic Properties — Adding Properties to an Instance” on page 8-30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Importing classes</td>
<td>“Importing Classes” on page 6-26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Events and Listeners</td>
<td>“Events and Listeners — Concepts” on page 11-12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Defining and Organizing Classes

• “User-Defined Classes” on page 6-2
• “Class Definition” on page 6-4
• “Class Attributes” on page 6-5
• “Expressions in Class Definitions” on page 6-8
• “Class and Path Folders” on page 6-15
• “Class Precedence” on page 6-19
• “Packages Create Namespaces” on page 6-21
• “Importing Classes” on page 6-26
User-Defined Classes

In this section...

“What is a Class Definition” on page 6-2
“Attributes for Class Members” on page 6-2
“Kinds of Classes” on page 6-3
“Constructing Objects” on page 6-3
“Class Hierarchies” on page 6-3

What is a Class Definition

A MATLAB class definition is a template whose purpose is to provide a description of all the elements that are common to all instances of the class. Class members are the properties, methods, and events that define the class.

MATLAB classes are defined in code blocks, with sub-blocks delineating the definitions of various class members. See “classdef Syntax” on page 6-4 for details on the classdef block.

Attributes for Class Members

Attributes modify the behavior of classes and the members defined in the class-definition block. For example, you can specify that methods are static or that properties are abstract, and so on. The following sections describe these attributes:

• “Class Attributes” on page 6-5
• “Method Attributes” on page 9-5
• “Property Attributes” on page 8-7
• “Event Attributes” on page 11-17

Class definitions can provide information, such as inheritance relationships or the names of class members without actually constructing the class. See “Class Metadata” on page 16-2.

See “Specifying Attributes” on page 6-6 for more on attribute syntax.
Kinds of Classes

There are two kinds of MATLAB classes—handle and value classes.

- Handle classes create objects that reference the data contained. Copies refer to the same data.
- Value classes make copies of the data whenever the object is copied or passed to a function. MATLAB numeric types are value classes.

See “Comparison of Handle and Value Classes” on page 7-2 for a more complete discussion.

Constructing Objects

For information on class constructors, see “Class Constructor Methods” on page 9-16

For information on creating arrays of objects, see “Create Object Arrays” on page 10-2

Class Hierarchies

For more information on how to define class hierarchies, see “Hierarchies of Classes — Concepts” on page 12-2.
Class Definition

**classdef Syntax**

Class definitions are blocks of code that are delineated by the `classdef` keyword at the beginning and the `end` keyword at the end. Files can contain only one class definition.

The following diagram shows the syntax of a `classdef` block. Only comments and blank lines can precede the `classdef` key word.

```
classdef (ConstructOnLoad = true) PositiveIntegers < Integers & Positives
...
end
```

**Related Examples**

- “A Simple Class” on page 2-2
- “Developing Classes — Typical Workflow” on page 3-8
- “Class to Represent Structured Data” on page 3-24
Class Attributes

In this section...

“Specifying Class Attributes” on page 6-5
“Specifying Attributes” on page 6-6

Specifying Class Attributes

All classes support the attributes listed in the following table. Attributes enable you to modify the behavior of class. Attribute values apply to the class defined within the `classdef` block.

```matlab
classdef (Attribute1 = value1, Attribute2 = value2,...) ClassName
    ...
end
```

For more information on attribute syntax, see “Attribute Specification” on page 5-27.

Class Attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abstract</td>
<td>logical</td>
<td>If specified as true, this class is an abstract class (cannot be instantiated).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(default = false)</td>
<td>See “Abstract Classes” on page 12-80 for more information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AllowedSubclasses</td>
<td>meta.class object or</td>
<td>List classes that can subclass this class. Specify subclasses as meta.class</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
|                    | cell array of meta.class objects | objects in the form:
|                    |                        |   • A single meta.class object                                               |
|                    |                        |   • A cell array of meta.class objects. An empty cell array, {} , is the same as | |
|                    |                        |   a Sealed class (no subclasses).                                             |
|                    |                        | Specify meta.class objects using the `ClassName` syntax only.               |
|                    |                        | See “Specify Allowed Subclasses” on page 12-22 for more information.        |
### Attribute Name | Class | Description
--- | --- | ---
ConstructOnLoad | logical (default = false) | If true, MATLAB calls the class constructor when loading an object from a MAT-file. Therefore, you must implement the constructor so it can be called with no arguments without producing an error.

See “Initialize Objects When Loading” on page 13-27 for more information.

HandleCompatible | logical (default = false) for value classes | If specified as true, this class can be used as a superclass for handle classes. All handle classes are HandleCompatible by definition. See “Support Both Handle and Value Subclasses” on page 12-36 for more information.

Hidden | logical (default = false) | If true, this class does not appear in the output of the superclasses or help functions.

InferiorClasses | meta.class object or cell array of meta.class objects | Use this attribute to establish a precedence relationship among classes. Specify a cell array of meta.class objects using the ? operator.

The fundamental classes are always inferior to user-defined classes and do not show up in this list.

See “Class Precedence” on page 6-19 and “Dominant Argument in Overloaded Graphics Functions” on page 9-40.

Sealed | logical (default = false) | If true, this class can not be subclassed.

---

**Specifying Attributes**

Attributes are specified for class members in the `classdef`, `properties`, `methods`, and `events` definition blocks. The particular attribute setting applies to all members defined within that particular block. This means that, for example, you might use multiple
properties definition blocks so you can apply different attribute setting to different properties.

**Superclass Attributes Are Not Inherited**

Class attributes are not inherited, so superclass attributes do not affect subclasses.

**Attribute Syntax**

Specify class attribute values in parentheses, separating each attribute name/attribute value pair with a comma. The attribute list always follows the `classdef` or class member key word, as shown below:

```
classdef (attribute-name = expression, ...) ClassName
    properties (attribute-name = expression, ...)
    ...
    end
    methods (attribute-name = expression, ...)
    ...
    end
    events (attribute-name = expression, ...)
    ...
    end
end
```

**More About**

- “Expressions in Attribute Specifications” on page 6-9
Expressions in Class Definitions

In this section...

| “Basic Knowledge” on page 6-8 |
| “Where to Use Expressions in Class Definitions” on page 6-8 |
| “How MATLAB Evaluates Expressions” on page 6-11 |
| “When MATLAB Evaluates Expressions” on page 6-11 |
| “Expression Evaluation in Handle and Value Classes” on page 6-11 |

Basic Knowledge

The material presented in this section builds on an understanding of the following information:

- “Operators and Elementary Operations”
- “Properties” on page 5-12
- “Attribute Specification” on page 5-27

Where to Use Expressions in Class Definitions

An expression used in a class definition can be any valid MATLAB statement that evaluates to a single array. Use expressions to define property default values and in attribute specifications. Here are some examples used in a class definition:

```matlab
classdef MyClass
    % Some attributes are set to logical values
    properties (Constant = true)
        CnstProp = 2^.5;
    end
    properties
        % Static method of this class
        Prop1 = MyClass.setupAccount;
        % Constant property from this class
        Prop2 = MyClass.CnstProp;
        % Function that returns a value
        Prop3 = datestr(now)
        % A class constructor
        Prop4 = AccountManager;
end
```
Expressions in Class Definitions

```matlab
end
methods (Static)
    function accNum = setupAccount
        accNum = randi(9,[1,12]);
    end
end
end
```

Enumerations that derived from MATLAB types can use expression to assign a value:

```matlab
classdef FlowRate < int32
    enumeration
        Low (10)
        Medium (FlowRate.Low*5)
        High (FlowRate.Low*10)
    end
end
```

MATLAB does not call property set methods when assigning the result of default value expressions to properties. (See “Property Access Methods” on page 8-14 for information about these special methods.)

### Expressions in Attribute Specifications

For attributes values that are logical `true` or `false`, class definitions can specify attribute values using expressions. For example, this assignment makes `MyClass` sealed (cannot be subclassed) for versions of MATLAB before R2014b (`verLessThan`)

```matlab
classdef (Sealed = verLessThan('matlab','R2014b')) MyClass
```

The expression on the right side of the equals sign (=) must evaluate to `true` or `false`. You cannot use any definitions from the class file in this expression, including any constant properties, static methods, and local functions.

While you can use conditional expression to set attribute values, doing so can cause the class definition to change based on external conditions. Ensure that this behavior is consistent with your class design.

**Note:** The `AllowedSubclasses` and the `InferiorClasses` attributes require an explicit specification of a cell array of `meta.class` objects as their values. You cannot use expressions to return these values.
Expressions in Default Property Specifications

Property definitions allow you to specify default values for properties using any expression that has no reference to variables. For example, VectorAngle defines a constant property (Rad2Deg) and uses it in an expression that defines the default value of another property (Angle). The default value expression also uses a static method (getAngle) defined by the class:

```matlab
classdef VectorAngle
    properties (Constant)
        Rad2Deg = 180/pi;
    end
    properties
        Angle = VectorAngle.Rad2Deg*VectorAngle.getAngle([1 0],[0 1]);
    end
    methods
        function obj = VectorAngle(vx,vy)
            obj.Angle = VectorAngle.getAngle(vx,vy);
        end
    end
    methods (Static)
        function r = getAngle(vx,vy)
            % Calculate angle between 2D vectors
            cr = vx(1)*vy(1) + vx(2)*vy(2)/sqrt(vx(1)^2 + vx(2)^2) * ...
            sqrt(vy(1)^2 + vy(2)^2);
            r = acos(cr);
        end
    end
end
```

You cannot use the input variables to the constructor to define the default value of the Angle property. For example, this definition for the Angle property is not valid:

```matlab
properties
    Angle = VectorAngle.Rad2Deg*VectorAngle.getAngle(vx,vy);
end
```

Attempting to create an instance causes an error:

```matlab
a = VectorAngle([1,0],[0,1])
```

Error using VectorAngle
Unable to update the class 'VectorAngle' because the new definition contains an
Expressions in Class Definitions

Expression in class methods execute like expressions in any function. MATLAB evaluates an expression within the function workspace when the method executes. Therefore, expressions used in class methods are not considered part of the class definition and are not discussed in this section.

How MATLAB Evaluates Expressions

MATLAB evaluates the expressions used in the class definition without any workspace. Therefore, these expressions cannot reference variables of any kind.

MATLAB evaluates expressions in the context of the class file, so these expressions can access any functions, static methods, and constant properties of other classes that are on your path at the time MATLAB initializes the class. Expressions defining property default values can access constant properties defined in their own class.

When MATLAB Evaluates Expressions

MATLAB evaluates the expressions in class definitions only when initializing the class. Initialization occurs before the first use of the class.

After initialization, the values returned by these expressions are part of the class definition and are constant for all instances of the class. Each instance of the class uses the results of the initial evaluation of the expressions without reevaluation.

If you clear a class, then MATLAB reinitializes the class by reevaluating the expressions that are part of the class definition. (see “Automatic Updates for Modified Classes” on page 5-51)

Expression Evaluation in Handle and Value Classes

The following example shows how value and handle object behave when assigned to properties as default values. Suppose you have the following classes.

Expressions in Value Classes

The ClassExp class has a property that contains a ContClass object:
classdef ContClass
    properties
        % Assign current date and time
        TimeProp = datestr(now);
    end
end

classdef ClassExp
    properties
        ObjProp = ContClass;
    end
end

When you first use the ClassExp class, MATLAB creates an instance of the ContClass class. MATLAB initializes both classes at this time. All instances of ClassExp include a copy of this same instance of ContClass.

a = ClassExp;
a.ObjProp.TimeProp

ans =
08-Oct-2003 17:16:08

The TimeProp property of the ContClass object contains the date and time when MATLAB initialized the class. Creating additional instances of the ClassExp class shows that the date string has not changed:

b = ClassExp;
b.ObjProp.TimeProp

ans =
08-Oct-2003 17:16:08

Because this example uses a value class for the contained object, each instance of the ClassExp has its own copy of the object. For example, suppose you change the value of the TimeProp property on the object contained by ClassExp object b:

b.ObjProp.TimeProp = datestr(now)

ans =
08-Oct-2003 17:22:49
The copy of the object contained by object `a` is unchanged:

```matlab
a.ObjProp.TimeProp
```

```
ans =

08-Oct-2003 17:16:08
```

### Expressions in Handle Classes

Now consider the behavior if the contained object is a handle object:

```matlab
classdef ContClass < handle
    properties
        TimeProp = datestr(now);
    end
end
```

Creating two instances of the `ClassExp` class shows that MATLAB created an object when it initialized the `ContClass`. MATLAB used a copy of the object handle for each instance of the `ClassExp` class. This means there is one `ContClass` object and the `ObjProp` property of each `ClassExp` object contains a copy of its handle.

Create an instance of the `ClassExp` class and note the time of creation:

```matlab
a = ClassExp;
a.ObjProp.TimeProp
```

```
ans =

08-Oct-2003 17:46:01
```

Create a second instance of the `ClassExp` class. The `ObjProp` contains the handle of the same object:

```matlab
b = ClassExp;
b.ObjProp.TimeProp
```

```
ans =

08-Oct-2003 17:46:01
```

Reassign the value of the contained object's `TimeProp` property:

```matlab
b.ObjProp.TimeProp = datestr(now);
```
b.ObjProp.TimeProp
ans =
08-Oct-2003 17:47:34

The `ObjProp` property of object `b` contains a handle to the same object as the `ObjProp` property of object `a`. The value of the `TimeProp` property has changed on this object as well:

a.ObjProp.TimeProp
ans =
08-Oct-2003 17:47:34

See Also
datestr | now

More About
• “Comparison of Handle and Value Classes” on page 7-2
Class and Path Folders

There are two types of folders that can contain class definitions.

- Path folders — Folder name does not use an @ character and is itself on the MATLAB path. Use this type of folder when you want multiple classes in one folder. However, the entire class definition must be in one file.

- Class folders — Folder name begins with an @ character followed by the class name. The folder is not on the MATLAB path, but its parent folder is on the path. Use this type of folder when you want to use multiple files for one class definition.

See the `path` function for information about the MATLAB path.

Path Folders

Put class definition files in folders that are on the MATLAB path. Class definitions placed in path folders behave like any ordinary function with respect to precedence—the first occurrence of a name on the MATLAB path takes precedence over all subsequent occurrences.

The name of the file must match the name of the class, as specified with the `classdef` key word. Using a path folder eliminates the need to create a separate class folder for each class. However, the entire class definition, including all methods, must be contained within a single file.

```matlab
.../path_folder/MyClass1.m
.../path_folder/MyClass2.m
```
Defining and Organizing Classes

Class Folders

A class folder must be contained in a path folder, but is not itself on the MATLAB path. Place the class definition file inside the class folder, which can also contain separate method files. The class definition file must have the same name as the class folder (without the @ character) and the class definition (beginning with the `classdef` keyword) must appear in the file before any other code (white space and comments do not constitute code).

Define only one class per folder. All files must have a .m extension.

You must use a class folder if you want to use more than one file for your class definition. MATLAB treats any .m file in the class folder as a method of the class.

The base name of the file must be a valid MATLAB function name. Valid function names begin with an alphabetic character, and can contain letters, numbers, or underscores. See “Methods In Separate Files” on page 5-21 for more information.

Access to Functions Defined in Private Folders

Private folders contain functions that are accessible only from functions defined in folders immediately above the `private` folder. If a class folder contains a `private` folder, only the class (or classes) defined in that folder can access functions defined in the `private` folder. Subclasses do not have access to superclass private functions.

See “Private Functions”

If you want a subclass to have access to the private functions of the superclass, a better approach is to define the functions as protected methods of the superclass (that is, in a methods block with the Access attribute defined as protected).

No Class Definitions in Private Folders

You cannot put class definitions in private folders because doing so would not meet the requirements for class or path folders.
Class Precedence and MATLAB Path

When multiple class definition files with the same name exist, the precedence of a given file is determined by its location on the MATLAB path. All class definition files before a class on the path (whether in a class folder or not) take precedence. The class takes precedence over all class definition files occurring later on the path.

For example, consider a path with the following folders, containing the files indicated:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Order in Path</th>
<th>Folder and File</th>
<th>File Defines</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>fldr1/foo.m</td>
<td>Class foo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>fldr2/foo.m</td>
<td>Function foo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>fldr3/@foo/foo.m</td>
<td>Class foo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>fldr4/@foo/bar.m</td>
<td>Method bar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>fldr5/foo.m</td>
<td>Class foo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Here is the logic that MATLAB applies to determine which version of foo to call:

Class `fldr1/foo.m` takes precedence over the class `fldr3/@foo` because:
- `fldr1/foo.m` is before `fldr3/@foo` on the path

Class `fldr3/@foo` takes precedence over function `fldr2/foo.m` because:
- `fldr3/@foo` is a class in a class folder
- `fldr2/foo.m` is not a class
- Classes in class folders take precedence over functions

Function `fldr2/foo.m` takes precedence over class `fldr5/foo.m` because:
- `fldr2/foo.m` comes before class `fldr5/foo.m` on the path
- `fldr5/foo.m` is not in a class folder
- Classes that are not defined in class folders obey the path order with respect to functions.

Class `fldr3/@foo` takes precedence over class `fldr4/@foo` because
- The method `bar` is not recognized as part of the `foo` class that is defined only by `fldr3/@foo`
If \texttt{fldr3/@foo/foo.m} does not contain a \texttt{classdef} keyword (that is, it is a MATLAB class prior to Version 7.6), then \texttt{fldr4/@foo/bar.m} becomes a method of the \texttt{foo} class defined in \texttt{fldr3/@foo}

**Previous Behavior of Classes Defined in Class Folders**

In MATLAB Versions 5 through 7, class folders do not shadow other class folders having the same name, but residing in later path folders. Instead, the class the combination of methods from all class folders having the same name define the class. This is no longer true.

For backward compatibility, classes defined in class folders always take precedence over functions and scripts having the same name, even those that come before them on the path.

**More About**

- “Packages Create Namespaces” on page 6-21
Class Precedence

In this section...

“Basic Knowledge” on page 6-19
“Why Mark Classes as Inferior” on page 6-19
“InferiorClasses Attribute” on page 6-19

Basic Knowledge

This topic explains how to control which class method MATLAB calls when multiple classes have the same method.

The material presented in this topic builds on an understanding of the following information:

- “Class Metadata” on page 16-2
- “Attribute Specification” on page 5-27

Why Mark Classes as Inferior

When more than one class defines methods with the same name or when classes overload functions, MATLAB determines which method or function to call based on the dominant argument. Here is how MATLAB determines the dominant argument:

1. Determine the dominant argument based on the class of arguments.
2. If there is a dominant argument, call the method of the dominant class.
3. If arguments are of equal precedence, use the left-most argument as the dominant argument.
4. If the class of the dominant argument does not define a method with the name of the called function, call the first function on the path with that name.

InferiorClasses Attribute

Specify the relative precedence of user-defined classes using the class InferiorClasses attribute. To specify classes that are inferior to the class you are defining, assign a cell array of class meta.class objects to this attribute.
For example, the following `classdef` declares that `MyClass` is dominant over `ClassName1` and `ClassName2`.

```matlab
classdef (InferiorClasses = {?ClassName1, ?ClassName2}) MyClass
    ...
end
```

The `?` operator combined with a class name creates a `meta.class` object. See `metaclass`.

MATLAB built-in classes are always inferior to user-defined classes and should not be used in this list.

The built-in classes include: `double`, `single`, `char`, `logical`, `int64`, `uint64`, `int32`, `uint32`, `int16`, `uint16`, `int8`, `uint8`, `cell`, `struct`, and `function_handle`.

**Dominant Class**

MATLAB uses class dominance when evaluating expressions involving objects of more than one class. The dominant class determines:

- Which class method to call when more than one class defines methods with the same names.
- The class of arrays that are formed by combining objects of different classes, assuming MATLAB can convert the inferior objects to the dominant class.

**No Attribute Inheritance**

Subclasses do not inherit a superclass `InferiorClasses` attribute. Only classes specified in the subclass `InferiorClasses` attribute are inferior to subclass objects.

**More About**

- “Class Precedence and MATLAB Path” on page 6-17
- “Dominant Argument in Overloaded Graphics Functions” on page 9-40
Packages Create Namespaces

In this section...

“Package Folders” on page 6-21
“Internal Packages” on page 6-22
“Referencing Package Members Within Packages” on page 6-22
“Referencing Package Members from Outside the Package” on page 6-23
“Packages and the MATLAB Path” on page 6-24

Package Folders

Packages are special folders that can contain class folders, function and class definition files, as well as other packages. The names of classes and functions are scoped to the package folder. A package is a namespace within which names must be unique. Function and class names need to be unique only within the package. Using a package provides a means to organize classes and functions. Packages also enable you to reuse the names of classes and functions in different packages.

Note: Packages are not supported for classes created prior to MATLAB Version 7.6 (i.e., classes that do not use classdef).

Package folders always begin with the + character. For example,

+mypack
+mypack/pkfcn.m  % a package function
+mypack/@myClass % class folder in a package

The parent of the top-level package folder folder must be on the MATLAB path.

Listing the Contents of a Package

List the contents of a package using the help command:

help event

Contents of event:

EventData - event.EVENTDATA  Base class for event data
PropertyEvent - event.PROPERTYEVENT Event data for object property events
listener - event.LISTENER Listener object
proplistener - event.PROPLISTENER Listener object for property events

You can also use the `what` command:

`what event`

Classes in directory `Y:xxx\matlab\toolbox\matlab\lang\+event`

EventData PropertyEvent listener proplistener

**Internal Packages**

MathWorks® reserves the use of packages named `internal` for utility functions used by internal MATLAB code. Functions that belong to an `internal` package are intended for MathWorks use only. Using functions or classes that belong to an `internal` package is strongly discouraged. These functions and classes are not guaranteed to work in a consistent manner from one release to the next. Any of these functions and classes might be removed from the MATLAB software in any subsequent release without notice and without documentation in the product release notes.

**Referencing Package Members Within Packages**

All references to packages, functions, and classes in the package must use the package name prefix, unless you import the package. (See “Importing Classes” on page 6-26.) For example, call this package function:

```
+mypack/pkfcn.m
```

With this syntax:

```
z = mypack.pkfcn(x,y);
```

Definitions do not use the package prefix. For example, the function definition line of the `pkfcn.m` function would include only the function name:

```
function z = pkfcn(x,y)
```

Define a package class with only the class name:

```
classdef myClass
```
but call it with the package prefix:

```matlab
obj = mypack.myClass(arg1, arg2, ...);
```

Calling class methods does not require the package name because you have an object of the class. You can use dot or function notation:

```matlab
obj.myMethod(arg)
myMethod(obj, arg)
```

A static method requires the full class name, which includes the package name:

```matlab
mypack.myClass.stMethod(arg)
```

### Referencing Package Members from Outside the Package

Functions, classes, and other packages contained in a package are scoped to that package. To reference any of the package members, prefix the package name to the member name, separated by a dot. For example, the following statement creates an instance of `MyClass`, which is contained in `mypack` package.

```matlab
obj = mypack.MyClass;
```

### Accessing Class Members — Various Scenarios

This section shows you how to access various package members from outside a package. Suppose you have a package `mypack` with the following contents:

```matlab
+mypack
+mypack/myfcn.m
+mypack/@MyFirstClass
+mypack/@MyFirstClass/myFcn.m
+mypack/@mMyFirstClass/otherFcn.m
+mypack/@MyFirstClass/MyFirstClass.m
+mypack/@MySecondClass
+mypack/@MySecondClass/MySecondClass.m
+mypack/+mysubpack
+mypack/+mysubpack/myFcn.m
```

Invoke the `myFcn` function in `mypack`:

```matlab
mypack.myFcn(arg)
```

Create an instance of each class in `mypack`:
obj1 = mypack.MyFirstClass;
obj2 = mypack.MySecondClass(arg);

Invoke the `myFcn` function that is in the package `mysubpack`:

`mypack.mysubpack.myFcn(arg1,arg2);`

If `mypack.MyFirstClass` has a method called `myFcn`, call it like any method call on an object:

`obj = mypack.MyFirstClass;
myFcn(obj,arg);`

If `mypack.MyFirstClass` has a property called `MyProp`, assign it using dot notation and the object:

`obj = mypack.MyFirstClass;
obj.MyProp = x;`

**Packages and the MATLAB Path**

You cannot add package folders to the MATLAB path, but you must add the package parent folder to the path. Package members are not accessible if the package parent folder is not on the MATLAB.

Package members remain scoped to the package even if the package folder is the current folder. You must, therefore, always refer to the package members using the package name.

Package folders do not shadow other package folders that are positioned later on the path, unlike classes, which do shadow other classes. If two or more packages have the same name, MATLAB treats them all as one package. If redundantly named packages in different path folders define the same function name, then MATLAB finds only one of these functions.

**Resolving Redundant Names**

Suppose a package and a class have the same name. For example:

`fldr1/+foo`
`fldr2/@foo/foo.m`

A call to `which foo` returns the path to the executable class constructor:
A function and a package can have the same name. However, a package name by itself is not an identifier so if a redundant name occurs alone, it identifies the function. Executing a package name alone returns an error.

**Package Functions vs. Static Methods**

In cases where a package and a class have the same name, a static method takes precedence over a package function. For example:

```
fldr1/+foo/bar.m % bar is a function in package foo
fldr2/@foo/bar.m % bar is a static method of class foo
```

A call to `which foo.bar` returns the path to the static method:

```
which foo.bar
fldr2/@foo/bar.m
```

In cases where a path folder contains both package and class folders with the same name, the class static method takes precedence over the package method:

```
fldr1/@foo/bar.m % bar is a static method of class foo
fldr1/+foo/bar.m % bar is a function in package foo
```

A call to `which foo.bar` returns the path to the static method:

```
>> which foo.bar
fldr1/@foo/bar.m
```

**More About**

- “Class and Path Folders” on page 6-15
Importing Classes

Syntax for Importing Classes

Import classes into a function to simplify access to class members. For example, suppose there is a package that contains a number of classes. You need to use only one of these classes in your function, or perhaps even just a static method from that class. Use the `import` command to simplify code. Once you have imported the class, you do not need to reference the package name:

```matlab
function myFunc
    import pkg.cls1
    obj = cls1(arg,...);                 % call cls1 constructor
    obj.Prop = cls1.staticMethod(arg,...); % call cls1 static method
end
```

Import all classes in a package using the syntax `pkg.*`:

```matlab
function myFunc
    import pkg.*
    obj1 = cls1(arg,...); % call pkg.cls1 constructor
    obj2 = cls2(arg,...); % call pkg.cls2 constructor
    a = pkgFunction();    % call package function named pkgFunction
end
```

Import Package Functions

Use `import` to import package functions:

```matlab
function myFunc
    import pkg.pkfcn
    pkfcn(arg,...); % call imported package function
end
```
Package Function and Class Method Name Conflict

Avoid importing an entire package using the * wildcard syntax. Doing so imports an unspecified set of names into the local scope. For example, suppose you have the following folder organization:

+pkg/timedata.m          % package function
+pkg/@MyClass/MyClass.m  % class definition file
+pkg/@MyClass/timedata.m % class method

Import the package and call timedata on an instance of MyClass:

```matlab
import pkg.*
myobj = pkg.MyClass;
timedata(myobj)
```

A call to timedata finds the package function, not the class method because MATLAB applies the import and finds pkg.timedata first. Do not use a package in cases where you have name conflicts and plan to import the package.

Clearing Import List

You can not clear the import list from a function workspace. To clear the base workspace only, use:

```matlab
clear import
```

More About

- “Packages Create Namespaces” on page 6-21
Value or Handle Class — Which to Use

- “Comparison of Handle and Value Classes” on page 7-2
- “Which Kind of Class to Use” on page 7-9
- “The Handle Superclass” on page 7-11
- “Handle Class Destructor” on page 7-14
- “Find Handle Objects and Properties” on page 7-20
- “Implement Set/Get Interface for Properties” on page 7-21
- “Customize Copy” on page 7-28
- “Control Number of Instances” on page 7-34
Comparison of Handle and Value Classes

In this section...

“Basic Difference” on page 7-2
“Why Select Handle or Value” on page 7-3
“Behavior of MATLAB Built-In Classes” on page 7-3
“Behavior of User-Defined Classes” on page 7-4

Basic Difference

A value class constructor returns an instance that is associated with the variable to which it is assigned. If you reassign this variable, MATLAB creates a copy of the original object. If you pass this variable to a function, the function must return the modified object.

A handle class constructor returns a handle object that is a reference to the object created. You can assign the handle object to multiple variables or pass it to functions without causing MATLAB to make a copy of the original object. A function that modifies a handle object passed as an input argument does not need to return the object.

Note: All handle classes must subclass the abstract handle class.

“Object Modification” on page 5-62 compares handle and value object behavior when used as arguments to functions. For an example of how class users work with handle objects, see “Using Handles” on page 1-12.

Create a Value Class

All classes that are not subclasses of the handle class are value classes. Therefore, the following code creates a value class named MyValueClass:

classdef MyValueClass
    ...
end

Create a Handle Class

Subclass the handle class explicitly to create a handle class:
classdef MyHandleClass < handle

end

**Why Select Handle or Value**

Whether you define a value or handle class depends on how you want class instances to behave and what features you want to use.

Handle class—use to satisfy both of these requirements:

- Creating an object creates a reference to the data contained in the object
- Copying the object does not make copies of the object data

For example, use a handle class to implement an object that contains information for a phone book entry. Multiple application programs can access a particular phone book entry, but there can be only one set of underlying data.

Handle classes also support features like events, listeners, and dynamic properties.

Value classes—use to represent entities that do not need to be unique, such as numeric values. For example, use a value class to implement a polynomial data type. You can copy a polynomial object and then modify its coefficients to make a different polynomial without affecting the original polynomial.

“Which Kind of Class to Use” on page 7-9 describes how to select the kind of class to use for your application.

**Behavior of MATLAB Built-In Classes**

If you create an object of the class `int32` and make a copy of this object, the result is two independent objects having no data shared between them. When you change the value of `a`, the value of `b` does not change.

```matlab
a = int32(7);
b = a;
a = a^4;

b
```

```
7
```

This behavior is typical of MATLAB numeric classes.
Graphics objects are handle objects. A handle is a variable that references an object. If you copy the handle, you have another variable that refers to the same object. There is still only one version of the object data.

For example, create a graphics line object and copy its handle to another variable.

```matlab
x = 1:10; y = sin(x);
h1 = line(x,y);
h2 = h1;
```

Set the properties of the same line object using either copy of the handle.

```matlab
set(h2,'Color','red')
set(h1,'Color','green')
```

Call the `delete` function on the line referred to by `h2`. If you attempt to set the `Color` property on the line `h1`, the `set` function returns an error:

```matlab
delete(h2)
set(h1,'Color','blue')
```

Error using matlab.graphics.primitive.Line/set
Invalid or deleted object.

If you delete the object by deleting any one of the existing handles, all copies are now invalid because you deleted the single object to which all copies refer.

**Behavior of User-Defined Classes**

Value class objects behave like built-in numeric classes. Handle class objects behave like MATLAB graphics objects.

**Value Classes**

MATLAB associates objects of value classes with the variables to which you assign them. When you copy a value object, MATLAB also copies the data contained by the object. The new object is independent of changes to the original object. Instances behave like standard MATLAB numeric and `struct` classes. Each property behaves essentially like a MATLAB array. See “Memory Allocation for Arrays” for more information.

**Value Class Behavior**

Use value classes when assigning an object to a variable and passing an object to a function must make a copy of the function. Value objects are always associated with
one workspace or temporary variable and go out of scope when that variable goes out of scope or is cleared. There are no references to value objects, only copies which are objects themselves.

For example, suppose that you define a polynomial class whose Coefficients property stores the coefficients of the polynomial. Copies of these value-class objects are independent of each other:

```plaintext
p = polynomial([1 0 -2 -5]);
p2 = p;
p.Coefficients = [2 3 -1 -2 -3];
p2.Coefficients
```

```plaintext
ans =
   1   0  -2  -5

Handle Classes

Objects of handle classes use a handle to reference objects of the class. A handle is a variable that identifies an instance of a class. When you copy a handle object, MATLAB copies the handle, but does not copy the data stored in the object properties. The copy refers to the same data as the original handle. If you change a property value on the original object, the copied object reflects the same change.

All handle classes are subclasses of the abstract handle class. In addition to providing handle copy semantics, deriving from the handle class enables your class to:

- Inherit a number of useful methods ("Handle Class Methods" on page 7-11)
- Define events and listeners ("Events and Listeners — Syntax and Techniques" on page 11-19)
- Define dynamic properties ("Dynamic Properties — Adding Properties to an Instance" on page 8-30)
- Implement set and get methods ("Implement Set/Get Interface for Properties" on page 7-21)

See “The Handle Superclass” on page 7-11 for more information on the handle class and its methods.

Subclasses of Handle Classes

If you subclass a class that is a subclass of the handle class, your subclass is also a handle class. You do not need to specify the handle superclass explicitly in your class definition. For example, the Employee class is a subclass of the handle class:
Value or Handle Class — Which to Use

```matlab
classdef Employee < handle
    ...
end
```

Create a subclass of the `Employee` class for engineer employees, which is also a handle class. You do not need to specify `handle` as a superclass in the `classdef`:

```matlab
classdef Engineer < Employee
    ...
end
```

**How to Construct Handle Objects**

When constructing a handle, MATLAB creates an object with storage for property values and the constructor function returns a handle to this object. When you assign the handle to a variable or when you pass the handle to a function, MATLAB copies the handle, but not the underlying data.

For example, define a `handle` class that stores data about company employees, such as the department in which they work:

```matlab
classdef Employee < handle
    properties
        Name = '';%'
        Department = '';%'
    end
    methods
        function e = Employee(name,dept)
            e.Name = name;
            e.Department = dept;
        end
        function transfer(obj,newDepartment)
            obj.Department = newDepartment;
        end
    end
end
```

The `transfer` method changes the employee's department (the `Department` property of an `Employee` object). When you change the `Department` property of object `e`, the property value also changes in object `e2`:

```matlab
e = Employee('Fred Smith','QE');
e2 = e;
transfer(e,'Engineering')
```
e2.Department

ans =
Engineering

**Initialize Properties to Contain Handle Objects**

See “Initialize Property Values” on page 5-12 for information on the differences between initializing properties to default values in the properties block and initializing properties from within the constructor. Also, see “Initialize Arrays of Handle Objects” on page 10-10 for related information on working with handle classes.

**Employee as a Value Class**

If the *Employee* class was a value class, then the *transfer* method would modify only its local copy of the *Employee* object. In value classes, methods like *transfer* that modify the object must return a modified object to copy over the existing object variable:

```matlab
function obj = transfer(obj,newDepartment)
    obj.Department = newDepartment;
end
```

When you call *transfer*, assign the output argument to create the modified object.

```matlab
e = transfer(e,'Engineering');
```

In a value class, the *transfer* method does not affect the variable *e2*, which is a different employee object. In this example, having two independent copies of objects representing the same employee is a poor design. It is better to implement the *Employee* class as a handle class.

**Delete Handles**

Destroy handle objects before they become unreachable by explicitly calling the *delete* function. Deleting the handle of a handle class object makes all handles invalid. For example:

```matlab
delete(e2)
e.Department
Invalid or deleted object.
```

Calling the *delete* function on a handle object invokes the destructor function or functions for that object. See “Handle Class Destructor” on page 7-14 for more information.
Related Examples

- “Customize Copy” on page 7-28
Which Kind of Class to Use

In this section...

“Examples of Value and Handle Classes” on page 7-9
“When to Use Handle Classes” on page 7-9
“When to Use Value Classes” on page 7-10

Examples of Value and Handle Classes

Handle and value classes are useful in different situations. For example, value classes enable you to create new array classes that have the same behavior as MATLAB numeric classes.

“Class Design for Polynomials” on page 19-2 and “Class to Represent Structured Data” on page 3-24 provides examples of value classes.

Handle classes enable you to create objects that more than one function or object can share. Handle objects allow more complex interactions among objects because they allow objects to reference each other.

“Class to Implement Linked Lists” on page 3-36 and “Developing Classes — Typical Workflow” on page 3-8 provides examples of a handle class.

When to Use Handle Classes

Use a handle class when:

- No two instances of a class can have the same state, making it impossible to have exact copies. For example:
  - A copy of a graphics object (such as a line) has a different position in its parents list of children than the object from which it was copied. Therefore, the two objects are not identical.
  - Nodes in lists or trees having specific connectivity to other nodes—no 2 nodes can have the same connectivity.
- The class represents physical and unique objects like serial ports or printers, in which the entity or state cannot exist in a MATLAB variable. However, a handle to such entity can be a variable.
• The class defines events and notifies listeners when an event occurs (notify is a handle class method).
• The class creates listeners by calling the handle class addlistener method.
• The class subclasses the dynamicprops class (a subclass of handle) so that instances can define dynamic properties.
• The class subclasses the matlab.mixin.SetGet class (a subclass of handle) so that it can implement a graphics object style set/get interface to access property values.
• You want to create a singleton class or a class in which you track the number of instances from within the constructor. MATLAB software never creates a unique handle without calling the class constructor. A copy of a handle object is not unique because both original and copy reference the same data.

**When to Use Value Classes**

Value class objects behave like normal MATLAB variables. A typical use of value classes is to define data structures. For example, suppose you want to define a class to represent polynomials. This class can define a property to contain a list of coefficients for the polynomial. It can implement methods that enable you to perform various operations on the polynomial object. For example, implement addition and multiplication without converting the object to another class.

A value class is suitable because you can copy a polynomial object and have two objects that are identical representations of the same polynomial. See “Subclasses of MATLAB Built-In Types” on page 12-44 for more information on value classes.

**Related Examples**

• “Support Both Handle and Value Subclasses” on page 12-36
The Handle Superclass

Build on the Handle Class

The handle class is an abstract class. Therefore, you cannot create objects of this class directly. Use the `handle` class as a superclass to implement subclasses that inherit handle behavior. MATLAB defines a number of classes that derive from the `handle` class. These classes provide specialized functionality to subclasses.

Specialized Handle Base Classes

Derive your class from these `handle` classes to add both handle behavior and specific functionality to your class:

- `matlab.mixin.SetGet` — Provides `set` and `get` methods to access property values.
- `dynamicprops` — Enables you to define properties that are associated with an object, but not the class in general.
- `matlab.mixin.Copyable` Provides a `copy` method that you can customize for your class.

For information on how to define subclasses, see “Create Subclasses — Syntax and Techniques” on page 12-7.

Handle Class Methods

When you derive a class from the `handle` class, the subclass inherits methods that enable you to work more effectively with handle objects.

List the methods of a class by passing the class name to the `methods` function:
methods('handle')

Methods for class handle:

addlistener  findobj      gt           lt
delete       findprop     isvalid      ne
eq           ge           le           notify

**Event and Listener Methods**

For information on how to use the notify and addlistener methods, see “Events and Listeners — Syntax and Techniques” on page 11-19.

**Relational Methods**

TF = eq(H1,H2)
TF = ne(H1,H2)
TF = lt(H1,H2)
TF = le(H1,H2)
TF = gt(H1,H2)
TF = ge(H1,H2)

The handle class overloads these functions to support equality tests and sorting on handles. For each pair of input arrays, these functions return a logical array of the same size. Each element is an element-wise equality or comparison test result. The input arrays must be the same size or one (or both) can be scalar. The method performs scalar expansion as required.

**Test Handle Validity**

Use the isvalid handle class method to determine if a variable is a valid handle object. For example, in the statement:

B = isvalid(H)

B is a logical array in which each element is true if, and only if, the corresponding element of H is a valid handle. B is always the same size as H.

**When MATLAB Destroys Objects**

MATLAB destroys objects in the workspace of a function when the function:
• Reassigns an object variable to a new value
• Does not use an object variable for the remainder of a function
• Function execution ends

When MATLAB destroys an object, it also destroys values stored in the properties of the object and returns any computer memory associated with the object to MATLAB or the operating system.

You do not need to free memory in handle classes. However, there can be other operations that you want to perform when destroying an object. For example, closing a file or shutting down an external program that the object constructor started. You can define a delete method in your handle subclass for these purposes.

See “Handle Class Destructor” on page 7-14 for more information.
Handle Class Destructor

In this section...

“Basic Knowledge” on page 7-14
“Syntax of Class Destructor Method” on page 7-14
“When to Define a Destructor Method” on page 7-15
“Destructors in Class Hierarchies” on page 7-16
“Object Lifecycle” on page 7-16
“Restrict Explicit Object Deletion” on page 7-18
“Nondestructor Delete Methods” on page 7-18

Basic Knowledge

Terms and Concepts

Class destructor — a method named delete that MATLAB calls implicitly before destroying an object of the class. User-defined code can also call delete explicitly to destroy a handle object.

Nondestructor — a method named delete that does not meet the syntax requirements of a valid destructor. Consequently, MATLAB does not call this method implicitly when destroying an object.

Table of method attributes: “Method Attributes” on page 9-5

Syntax of Class Destructor Method

When destroying an object, MATLAB calls the class destructor method, if the class defines one. Create a destructor method by implementing a method named delete. However, MATLAB recognizes a class method named delete as the class destructor only if you define delete as an ordinary method with the appropriate syntax.

To be a valid class destructor, the delete method:

• Must have one scalar input argument, which is an object of the class.
• Must not define output arguments
• Cannot be Sealed, Static, or Abstract

In addition, destructors should not:

• Throw errors
• Create new handles to the object being destroyed

MATLAB does not call a noncompliant delete method when destroying objects of the class.

Declare delete as an ordinary method:

```matlab
methods
    function delete(obj)
        % obj is always scalar
        ...
    end
end
```

**delete Called On an Array**

MATLAB calls the destructor element-wise on an array of objects. Because MATLAB calls the delete method separately for each element in an object array, a delete method is passed only one scalar argument.

Calling delete on a deleted handle should not error and can take no action. This enables delete to work on object arrays containing a mix of valid and invalid objects.

**When to Define a Destructor Method**

Use a class destructor to perform any necessary cleanup operations before MATLAB destroys the object.

For example, suppose an object method opens a file for writing and you want to close the file in your delete method. This delete method calls fclose on a file identifier that is stored in the object FileID property:

```matlab
function delete(obj)
    fclose(obj.FileID);
end
```

For an example, see “Class to Manage Writable Files” on page 3-19.
Destructors in Class Hierarchies

If you create a hierarchy of classes, each class can define its own class destructor. When destroying an object, MATLAB calls the `delete` method of each class in the hierarchy. Defining a `delete` method in a `handle` subclass does not override the `handle` class `delete` method. Subclass `delete` methods augment the superclass `delete` methods.

Inheriting a Sealed Delete Method

You cannot define a valid destructor that is `Sealed`. MATLAB returns an error when you attempt to instantiate a class that defines a `Sealed delete` method.

Normally, declaring a method as `Sealed` prevents subclasses from overriding that method. However, because destructors must be named `delete`, an inherited method named `delete` that is `Sealed` does not prevent subclasses from defining valid destructors.

For example, if a superclass defines a method named `delete` that is not a valid destructor and is `Sealed`, then subclasses:

- Can define valid destructors (which are always named `delete`).
- Cannot define methods named `delete` that are not valid destructors.

Destructors in Heterogeneous Hierarchies

Heterogeneous class hierarchies require that all methods to which heterogeneous arrays are passed must be sealed. However, the rule does not apply to class destructor methods. Because destructor methods cannot be sealed, you can define a valid destructor in a heterogeneous hierarchy that is not sealed, but does function as a destructor.

For information on heterogeneous hierarchies, see “Heterogeneous Arrays” on page 10-21

Object Lifecycle

MATLAB invokes the `delete` method when the lifecycle of an object ends. The lifecycle of an object ends when the object is:

- No longer referenced anywhere
- Explicitly deleted by calling `delete` on the handle
Inside a Function

The lifecycle of an object referenced by a local variable or input argument exists from the time the variable is assigned until the time it is reassigned, cleared, or no longer referenced within that function or any handle array.

A variable goes out of scope when you explicitly clear it or when its function ends. When a variable goes out of scope, if its value belongs to a handle class that defines a `delete` method, MATLAB calls that method. MATLAB defines no ordering among variables in a function. Do not assume that MATLAB destroys one value before another value when the same function contains multiple values.

Sequence During Handle Object Destruction

MATLAB invokes the `delete` methods in the following sequence when destroying an object:

1. The `delete` method for the class of the object
2. The `delete` method of each superclass class, starting with the immediate superclasses and working up the hierarchy to the most general superclasses

MATLAB invokes the `delete` methods of superclasses at the same level in the hierarchy in the order specified in the class definition. For example, the following class definition specifies `supclass1` before `supclass2`. MATLAB calls the `delete` method of `supclass1` before the `delete` method of `supclass2`.

```matlab
classdef myClass < supclass1 & supclass2
    After calling each `delete` method, MATLAB destroys the property values belonging exclusively to the class whose method was called. The destruction of property values that contain other handle objects can cause MATLAB to call the `delete` methods for those objects, if there are no other references to those objects.

Superclass `delete` methods cannot call methods or access properties belonging to a subclass.

Destruction of Objects with Cyclic References

Consider a set of objects that reference other objects of the set such that the references form a cyclic graph. In this case, MATLAB:

• Destroys the objects if they are referenced only within the cycle
• Does not destroy the objects as long as there is an external reference to any of the objects from a MATLAB variable outside the cycle

MATLAB destroys the objects in the reverse of the order of construction.

**Restrict Explicit Object Deletion**

You can destroy handle objects by explicitly calling `delete` on the object:

```matlab
delete(obj)
```

A class can prevent explicit destruction of an object by setting its `delete` method `Access` attribute to `private`. However, a method of the class can call the `private` `delete` method.

If the class `delete` method `Access` attribute is `protected`, only methods of the class and of subclasses can explicitly delete objects of that class.

However, when an object’s lifecycle ends, MATLAB calls the object’s `delete` method when destroying the object regardless of method’s `Access` attribute.

**Inherited Private Delete Methods**

Class destructor behavior differs from the normal behavior of an overridden method. MATLAB executes each `delete` method of each superclass upon destruction, even if that `delete` method is not `public`.

When you explicitly call an object’s `delete` method, MATLAB checks the `delete` method `Access` attribute in the class defining the object, but not in the superclasses of the object. A superclass with a `private delete` method cannot prevent the destruction of subclass objects.

Declaring a private delete method makes most sense for sealed classes. In the case where classes are not sealed, subclasses can define their own delete methods with public access. MATLAB calls a private superclass `delete` method as a result of an explicit call to a public subclass `delete` method.

**Nondestructor Delete Methods**

A class can implement a method named `delete` that is not a valid class destructor, and therefore is not called implicitly by MATLAB when destroying an object. In this case, `delete` behaves like a normal method.
For example, if the superclass implements a Sealed method named `delete` that is not a valid destructor, then MATLAB does not allow subclasses to override this method.

A `delete` method defined by a value class cannot be a class destructor.

**More About**

- “Using Handles” on page 1-12
Find Handle Objects and Properties

In this section...

“Find Handle Objects” on page 7-20
“Find Handle Object Properties” on page 7-20

Find Handle Objects

The `findobj` method enables you to locate handle objects that meet certain conditions.

```matlab
function HM = findobj(H, <conditions>)
```

The `findobj` method returns an array of handles matching the conditions specified.

Find Handle Object Properties

The `findprop` method returns the `meta.property` object for the specified object and property.

```matlab
function mp = findprop(h, 'PropertyName')
```

The property can also be a dynamic property created by the `addprop` method of the `dynamicprops` class.

Use the returned `meta.property` object to obtain information about the property, such as the settings of any of its attributes. For example, the following statements determine that the setting of the `AccountStatus` property `Dependent` attribute is `false`.

```matlab
ba = BankAccount(007, 50, 'open');
mp = findprop(ba, 'AccountStatus');
mp.Dependent
```

ans =

```
  0
```

See Also

handle

Related Examples

• “Class Metadata” on page 16-2
Implement Set/Get Interface for Properties

In this section...

“The Standard Set/Get Interface” on page 7-21
“Subclass matlab.mixin.SetGet” on page 7-21
“Get Method Syntax” on page 7-22
“Set Method Syntax” on page 7-22
“Class Derived from matlab.mixin.SetGet” on page 7-23

The Standard Set/Get Interface

Some MATLAB objects, such as graphics objects, implement an interface based on set and get methods. These methods enable you to set or query the values of object properties.

The matlab.mixin.SetGet class is an abstract base class that provides implementations of these methods. Derive your class from matlab.mixin.SetGet to inherit set and get functionality.

Note: The set and get methods referred to in this section are different from property set access and property get access methods. See “Property Access Methods” on page 8-14 for information on property access methods.

Subclass matlab.mixin.SetGet

Classes inherit set and get methods from matlab.mixin.SetGet:

classdef MyClass < matlab.mixin.SetGet
    ...
end

Because matlab.mixin.SetGet derives from the handle class, your subclass is also a handle class.
Get Method Syntax

The `get` method returns the value of an object property using the object handle and the property name:

\[ v = \text{get}(H, 'Property\_Name'); \]

If you specify an array of handles with a single property name, `get` returns the property value for each object as a cell array of values:

\[ CV = \text{get}(H, 'Property\_Name'); \]

The `CV` array is always a column regardless of the shape of `H`.

If you specify a cell array of string property names and an array of handles, `get` returns a cell array of property values. Each row in the cell corresponds to an object in the handle array. Each column in the cell corresponds to a property name.

\[ \text{props} = \{'Property\_Name1', 'Property\_Name2'\}; \]
\[ CV = \text{get}(H, \text{props}); \]

`get` returns an \( m \)-by-\( n \) cell array, where \( m = \text{length}(H) \) and \( n = \text{length}(	ext{props}) \).

If you specify a handle array, but no property names, `get` returns an array of type `struct` in which each structure in the array corresponds to an object in `H`. Each field in each structure corresponds to a property defined by the class of `H`. The value of each field is the value of the corresponding property.

\[ SV = \text{get}(H); \]

If you do not assign an output variable, then `H` must be scalar.

For an example, see “Using `get` with Arrays of Handles” on page 7-25.

Set Method Syntax

The `set` method assigns the specified value to the specified property for the object with handle `H`. If `H` is an array of handles, MATLAB assigns the value to the property for each object in the array `H`.

\[ \text{set}(H, 'Property\_Name', \text{PropertyValue}); \]

You can pass a cell array of property names and a cell array of property values to `set`: 
props = {'PropertyName1','PropertyName2'};
vals = {Property1Value,Property2Value};
set(H,props,vals)

If length(H) is greater than one, then the property value cell array (vals) can have values for each property in each object. For example, suppose length(H) is 2 (two object handles). You want to assign two property values on each object:

props = {'PropertyName1','PropertyName2'};
vals = {Property11Value,Property12Value;Property21Value,Property22Value};
set(H,props,vals)

The preceding statement is equivalent to the follow two statements:

set(H(1),'PropertyName1',Property11Value,'PropertyName2',Property12Value)
set(H(2),'PropertyName1',Property21Value,'PropertyName2',Property22Value)

If you specify a scalar handle, but no property names, set returns a struct with one field for each property in the class of H. Each field contains an empty cell array.

SV = set(h);

**Class Derived from matlab.mixin.SetGet**

This sample class defines a set/get interface and illustrates the behavior of the inherited methods:

classdef LineType < matlab.mixin.SetGet
    properties
        Style = '-';
        Marker = 'o';
    end
    properties (SetAccess = protected)
        Units = 'points';
    end
    methods
        function obj = LineType(s,m)
            if nargin > 0
                obj.Style = s;
                obj.Marker = m;
            end
        end
        function obj = set.Style(obj,val)
end
if ~(strcmpi(val,'-') || strcmpi(val,'--') || strcmpi(val,'..'))
    error('Invalid line style ')
end
obj.Style = val;
end
function obj = set.Marker(obj,val)
    if ~isstrprop(val,'graphic')
        error('Marker must be a visible character')
    end
    obj.Marker = val;
end
Create an instance of the class and save its handle:

h = LineType('--','*');

Query the value of any object property using the inherited get method:

get(h,'Marker')

ans = 

*  

Set the value of any property using the inherited set method:

set(h,'Marker','Q')

**Property Access Methods Called with set and get**

MATLAB calls property access methods (**set.Style** or **set.Marker** in the **LineType** class) when you use the **set** and **get** methods.

set(h,'Style','-.-')

Error using LineType>LineType.set.Style
Invalid line style

For more information on property access methods, see “Property Access Methods” on page 8-14
**List All Properties**

Return a `struct` containing object properties and their current values using `get`:

```matlab
h = LineType('--','*');
SV = get(h)
SV =

    Style: '--'
    Marker: '*'
    Units: 'points'
```

Return a `struct` containing the properties that have public SetAccess using `set`:

```matlab
S = set(h)
S =

    Style: {}
    Marker: {}
```

The `LineType` class defines the `Units` property with `SetAccess = protected`. Therefore, `S = set(h)` does not create a field for `Units` in `S`.

`set` cannot return possible values for properties.

**Using `get` with Arrays of Handles**

Suppose that you create an array of `LineType` objects:

```matlab
H = [LineType('..','z'),LineType('--','q')]
H =

    1x2 LineType with properties:
    Style
    Marker
    Units
```

When `H` is an array of handles, `get` returns a `(length(H)-by-1)` cell array of property values:

```matlab
CV = get(H,'Style')
```
CV =
    ' .. ' 
    ' .. '

When H is an array of handles and you do not specify a property name, get returns a struct array containing fields with names corresponding to property-names. Assign the output of get to a variable when H is not scalar.

SV = get(H)

SV =

2x1 struct array with fields:
    Style
    Marker
    Units

Get the value of the Marker property from the second array element in the SV array of structures:

SV(2).Marker

ans =

q

**Arrays of Handles, Names, and Values**

You can pass an array of handles, a cell array of property names, and a cell array of property values to set. The property value cell array must have one row of property values for each object in H. Each row must have a value for each property in the property name array:

H = [LineType('..','z'),LineType('--','q')];
set(H,{'Style','Marker'},{'..','o';'--','x'})

The results of this call to set is:

H(1)

ans =

    LineType with properties:
Customize the Property List

Customize the way property lists display by redefining the following methods in your subclass:

- \texttt{setdisp} — When you call \texttt{set} with no output argument and a single scalar handle input, \texttt{set} calls \texttt{setdisp} to determine how to display the property list.

- \texttt{getdisp} — When you call \texttt{get} with no output argument and a single scalar handle input, \texttt{get} calls \texttt{getdisp} to determine how to display the property list.

More About

- “How to Use Properties” on page 8-2
Customize Copy

In this section...

“Customize Copy Operation” on page 7-28
“Copy Properties That Contain Handles” on page 7-29
“Exclude Properties from Copy” on page 7-31

Customize Copy Operation

Customize handle object copy behavior by deriving your class from \texttt{matlab.mixin.Copyable}. The \texttt{matlab.mixin.Copyable} class is an abstract base class that derives from the handle class. \texttt{matlab.mixin.Copyable} provides a template for customizing object copy operations by defining:

- \texttt{copy} — Sealed method that defines the interface for copying objects
- \texttt{copyElement} — Protected method that subclasses can override to customize object copy operations for the subclass

The \texttt{matlab.mixin.Copyable.copy} method, calls the \texttt{copyElement} method. Your subclass customizes the copy operation by defining its own version of \texttt{copyElement}.

The default implementation of \texttt{copyElement} makes shallow copies of all of the nondependent properties. \texttt{copyElement} copies each property value and assigns it to the new (copied) property. If a property value is a handle object, \texttt{copyElement} copies the handle, but not the underlying data.

Override \texttt{copyElement} to implement different copy behavior for different properties. For example, the \texttt{copyElement} method of the \texttt{SpecializedCopy} class:

- Creates a new class object
- Copies the value of \texttt{Prop1} to the new object
- Reinitializes the default value of \texttt{Prop2} by adding a time stamp when the copy is made

\begin{verbatim}
classdef SpecializedCopy < matlab.mixin.Copyable
properties
    Prop1
    Prop2 = datetstr(now);
end
\end{verbatim}
function cp = copyElement(obj)
    cp = SpecializedCopy;
    cp.Prop1 = obj.Prop1;
    cp.Prop2 = datestr(now);
end
end
end

Create an object of the class and assign a value to Prop1:

a  = SpecializedCopy;
a.Prop1 = 7

a =

    SpecializedCopy with properties:

    Prop1: 7
    Prop2: '17-Feb-2015 17:51:23'

Use the inherited copy method to create a copy of a:

b = copy(a)

b =

    SpecializedCopy with properties:

    Prop1: 7
    Prop2: '17-Feb-2015 17:51:58'

The copy (object b) has the same value for Prop1, but the subclass copyElement method assigned a new value to Prop2. Notice the different time stamp.

Copy Properties That Contain Handles

Copying an object also copies the values of object properties. Object properties can contain other objects, including handle objects. If you simply copy the value of a property that contains a handle object, you are actually copying the handle, not the object itself. Therefore, your copy references the same object as the original object. Classes that derive from the matlab.mixin.Copyable class can customize the way the copy method copies objects of the class.
Class to Support Handle Copying

Suppose that you define a class that stores a handle in an object property. You want to be able to copy objects of the class and want each copy of an object to refer to a new handle object. Customize the class copy behavior using these steps:

- Subclass `matlab.mixin.Copyable`.
- Override `copyElement` to control the copying the property containing the handle.
- Because the property value is a handle, create a new default object of the same class.
- Copy property values from the original handle object to the new handle object.

The “HandleCopy” on page 7-30 class customizes copy operations for the property that contains a handle object. The “ColorProp” on page 7-31 class defines the handle object to assign to `Prop2`:

Create an object and assign property values:

```matlab
a = HandleCopy;
a.Prop1 = 7;
a.Prop2 = ColorProp;
```

Make a copy of the object using the `copy` method inherited from `matlab.mixin.Copyable`:

```matlab
b = copy(a);
```

Demonstrate that the handle object contained by object `a` and `b` are independent. Changing the value on object `a` does not affect object `b`:

```matlab
a.Prop2.Color = 'red';
b.Prop2.Color
ans =
blue
```

HandleCopy

The `HandleCopy` class customizes the copy operation for objects of this class.

```matlab
classdef HandleCopy < matlab.mixin.Copyable
    properties
        Prop1 % Shallow copy
        Prop2 % Handle copy
    end
end
```
end

methods (Access = protected)
  function cp = copyElement(obj)
    % Shallow copy object
    cp = copyElement@matlab.mixin.Copyable(obj);
    % Get handle from Prop2
    hobj = obj.Prop2;
    % Create default object
    new_hobj = eval(class(hobj));
    % Add public property values from orig object
    DeepCopy2.propValues(new_hobj,hobj);
    % Assign the new object to property
    cp.Prop2  = new_hobj;
  end
end

methods (Static)
  function propValues(newObj,orgObj)
    pl = properties(orgObj);
    for k = 1:length(pl)
      if isprop(newObj,pl{k})
        newObj.(pl{k}) = orgObj.(pl{k});
      end
    end
  end
end
end

ColorProp

The ColorProp class defines a color by assigning an RGB value to its Color property.

classdef ColorProp < handle
  properties
    Color = [1 0 1];
  end
end

Exclude Properties from Copy

Use the NonCopyable property attribute to indicate that you do not want a copy operation to copy a particular property value. By default, NonCopyable is false, indicating that the property value is copyable. You can set NonCopyable to true only on properties of handle classes.
For classes that derive from `matlab.mixin.Copyable`, the default implementation of `copyElement` honors the `NonCopyable` attribute. Therefore, if a property has its `NonCopyable` attribute set to `true`, then `copyElement` does not copy the value of that property. If you override `copyElement` in your subclass, you can choose how to use the `NonCopyable` attribute.

**Set the Attribute to Not Copy**

Set `NonCopyable` to `true` in a property block:

```matlab
properties (NonCopyable)
    Prop1
end
```

**Default Values**

If a property that is not copyable has a default value assigned in the class definition, the copy operation assigns the default value to the property. For example, the `CopiedClass` assigns a default value to `Prop2`.

```matlab
classdef CopiedClass < matlab.mixin.Copyable
    properties (NonCopyable)
        Prop1
        Prop2 = datestr(now); % Assign current time
    end
end
```

Create an object to copy and assign a value to `Prop1`:

```matlab
a = CopiedClass;
a.Prop1 = 7
```

```matlab
a =

CopiedClass with properties:
    Prop1: 7
    Prop2: '17-Feb-2015 15:19:34'
```

Copy `a` to `b` using the `copy` method inherited from `matlab.mixin.Copyable`:

```matlab
b = copy(a)
```

```matlab
b =
```
CopiedClass with properties:

    Prop1: []
    Prop2: '17-Feb-2015 15:19:34'

In the copy b, the value of Prop1 is not copied. The value of Prop2 is set to its default value, which MATLAB determined when first loading the class. The time stamp does not change.

**Objects with Dynamic Properties**

Subclasses of the `dynamicprops` class allow you to add properties to an object of the class. When a class derived from `dynamicprops` is also a subclass of `matlab.mixin.Copyable`, the default implementation of `copyElement` does not copy dynamic properties. The default value of `NonCopyable` is `true` for dynamic properties.

The default implementation of `copyElement` honors the value of a dynamic property `NonCopyable` attribute. If you want to allow copying of a dynamic property, set its `NonCopyable` attribute to `false`. Copying a dynamic property copies the property value as well as the values of the property attributes.

For example, this copy operation copies the dynamic property, `DynoProp`, because its `NonCopyable` attribute is set to `false`. The object `obj` must be an instance of a class that derives from both `dynamicprops` and `matlab.mixin.Copyable`:

```matlab
p = addprop(obj,'DynoProp');
p.NonCopyable = false;
obj2 = copy(obj);
```

**See Also**

`matlab.mixin.Copyable`

**Related Examples**

- “Dynamic Properties — Adding Properties to an Instance” on page 8-30
Control Number of Instances

In this section...

“Limit Instances” on page 7-34
“Singleton Class Implementation” on page 7-34

Limit Instances

You can limit the number of instances of a class that can exist at any one time. For example, a singleton class can have only one instance and must provide a way to access this instance. Create a singleton class using a:

- Persistent variable to contain the instance
- Sealed class to prevent subclassing (class Sealed attribute set to true)
- Private constructor (method Access attribute set to private)
- Static method to return the handle to the instance, if one exists, or to create the instance when needed.

Singleton Class Implementation

This skeletal class definition shows how you can approach the implementation of a class that allows you to create only one instance at a time:

```matlab
classdef (Sealed) SingleInstance < handle
    methods (Access = private)
        function obj = SingleInstance
            end
    end
    methods (Static)
        function singleObj = getInstance
            persistent localObj
            if isempty(localObj) || ~isvalid(localObj)
                localObj = SingleInstance;
            end
            singleObj = localObj;
        end
    end
end
```
The `getInstance` static method returns a handle to the object, which the class stores in a persistent variable. `getInstance` creates an instance only the first time called in a session or when the object becomes invalid. For example:

```matlab
sobj = SingleInstance.getInstance

sobj =
    SingleInstance with no properties
```

As long as `sobj` exists as a valid handle, calling `getInstance` returns a handle to the same object. If you delete `sobj`, then calling `getInstance` creates an object and returns the handle.

```matlab
delete(sobj)
isvalid(sobj)

ans =
    0

sobj = SingleInstance.getInstance;
isvalid(sobj)

ans =
    1
```

**More About**

- “Handle Class Destructor” on page 7-14
Properties — Storing Class Data

- “How to Use Properties” on page 8-2
- “Defining Properties” on page 8-4
- “Property Attributes” on page 8-7
- “Mutable and Immutable Properties” on page 8-13
- “Property Access Methods” on page 8-14
- “Property Set Methods” on page 8-19
- “Property Get Methods” on page 8-22
- “Access Methods for Dependent Properties” on page 8-24
- “Properties Containing Objects” on page 8-28
- “Dynamic Properties — Adding Properties to an Instance” on page 8-30
How to Use Properties

In this section...

“What Are Properties” on page 8-2
“Types of Properties” on page 8-2

What Are Properties

Properties encapsulate the data that belongs to instances of classes. Data contained in properties can be public, protected, or private. This data can be a fixed set of constant values, or it can depend on other values and calculated only when queried. You control these aspects of property behaviors by setting property attributes and by defining property-specific access methods.

Flexibility of Object Properties

In some ways, properties are like fields of a struct object. However, storing data in an object property provides more flexibility. Properties can:

• Define a constant value that you cannot change outside the class definition. See “Properties with Constant Values” on page 15-2
• Calculate its value based on the current value of other data. See “Property Get Methods” on page 8-22
• Execute a function to determine if an attempt to assign a value meets a certain criteria. See “Property Set Methods” on page 8-19
• Trigger an event notification when any attempt is made to get or set its value. See “Property-Set and Query Events” on page 11-14
• Restrict access by other code to the property value. See the SetAccess and GetAccess attributes “Property Attributes” on page 8-7
• Control whether its value is saved with the object in a MAT-file. See “Save and Load Objects” on page 13-2

Types of Properties

There are two types of properties:

• Stored properties — Use memory and are part of the object
• Dependent properties — No allocated memory and the get access method calculates the value when queried

Features of Stored Properties

• Can assign an initial value in the class definition
• Property value is stored when you save the object to a MAT-file
• Can use a set access method to control possible values, but you are not required to use such methods.

When to Use Stored Properties

• You want to be able to save the property value in a MAT-file
• The property value is not dependent on other property values

Features of Dependent Properties

Dependent properties save memory because property values that depend on other values are calculated only when needed.

When to Use Dependent Properties

Define properties as dependent when you want to:

• Compute the value of a property from other values (for example, you can compute area from Width and Height properties).
• Provide a value in different formats depending on other values. For example, the size of a push button in values determined by the current setting of its Units property.
• Provide a standard interface where a particular property is or is not used, depending on other values. For example, different computer platforms can have different components on a toolbar).

Related Examples

• “Property Attributes” on page 8-7
• “Property Access Methods” on page 8-14
Defining Properties

**Property Definition Block**

The following illustration shows a typical property specification. The `properties` and `end` keywords delineate a block of code that defines properties having the same attribute settings.

```
properties (SetAccess = protected)

Coefficients = [0 0 1];

end
```

*Note:* Properties cannot have the same name as the class
Assigning a Default Value

The preceding example shows the Coefficients property specified as having a default value of \([0 \ 0 \ 1]\).

You can initialize property values with MATLAB expressions. However, these expressions cannot refer to the class that you are defining in any way, except to call class static methods. MATLAB executes expressions that create initial property values only when initializing the class, which occurs just before first using the class. See “Define Default Values” on page 5-13 for more information about how MATLAB evaluates default value expressions.

Access Property Values

Property access syntax is like MATLAB structure field syntax. For example, if \(\text{obj}\) is an object of a class, then you can get the value of a property by referencing the property name:

\[
\text{val} = \text{obj.PropertyName}
\]

Assign values to properties by putting the property reference on the left side of the equal sign:

\[
\text{obj.PropertyName} = \text{val}
\]

When you access a property, MATLAB executes any property set or get access method and triggering any enabled property events.

Inheritance of Properties

When you derive one class from another class, the derived (subclass) class inherits all the properties of the superclass. In general, subclasses define only properties that are unique to that particular class. Superclasses define properties that more than one subclass use.

Specify Property Attributes

Attributes specified with the properties keyword apply to all property definitions that follow in that block. If you want to apply attribute settings to certain properties only, reuse the properties keyword and create another property block for those properties.
For example, the following code shows the SetAccess attribute set to private for the IndependentVar and Order properties, but not for the Coefficients property:

```matlab
properties
    Coefficients = [0 0 1];
end
properties (SetAccess = private)
    IndependentVar
    Order = 0;
end
```

These properties (and any others placed in this block) have private set access.

For information about the properties of a specific class, use the `properties` function.

**More About**

- “Properties” on page 5-12
- “Property Attributes” on page 8-7
Property Attributes

In this section...

“Specifying Property Attributes” on page 8-7
“Table of Property Attributes” on page 8-7

Specifying Property Attributes

Assign property attributes on the same line as the properties keyword:

```matlab
properties (Attribute1 = value1, Attribute2 = value2,...) 
... 
end 
```

For example, give the Data property private access:

```matlab
properties (Access = private) 
    Data 
end 
```

For more information on attribute syntax, see “Attribute Specification” on page 5-27.

Table of Property Attributes

Attributes enable you to modify the behavior of properties. All properties support the attributes listed in the following table.

Attribute values apply to all properties defined within the `properties...end` code block that specifies the nondefault values.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AbortSet</td>
<td>logical</td>
<td>If true, MATLAB does not set the property value if the new value is the same as the current value. MATLAB does not call the property set method, if one exists. For handle classes, setting <code>AbortSet</code> to <code>true</code> also prevent the triggering of property <code>PreSet</code> and <code>PostSet</code> events.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute Name</td>
<td>Class</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abstract</td>
<td>logical</td>
<td>See “Abort Set When Value Does Not Change” on page 11-34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>If true, the property has no implementation, but a concrete subclass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>must redefine this property without Abstract being set to true.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Abstract properties cannot define set or get access methods. See “Property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Access Methods” on page 8-14.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Abstract properties cannot define initial values. See “Assigning a Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Value” on page 8-5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• All subclasses must specify the same values as the superclass for the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>property SetAccess and GetAccess attributes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Abstract=true use with the class attribute Sealed=false (the default).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access</td>
<td>• enumeration, default = public</td>
<td>public – unrestricted access</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• meta.class object</td>
<td>protected – access from class or subclasses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• cell array of meta.class objects</td>
<td>private – access by class members only (not subclasses)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>List of classes that have get and set access to this property. Specify classes as meta.class objects in the form:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• A single meta.class object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• A cell array of meta.class objects. An empty cell array, {}, is the same as private access.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute Name</td>
<td>Class</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constant</td>
<td>logical</td>
<td>See “Control Access to Class Members” on page 12-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Use <strong>Access</strong> to set both <strong>SetAccess</strong> and <strong>GetAccess</strong> to the same value. Query the values of <strong>SetAccess</strong> and <strong>GetAccess</strong> directly (not <strong>Access</strong>).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Constant</strong> properties cannot be <strong>Dependent</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>SetAccess</strong> is ignored.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>default = false</td>
<td>Set to <strong>true</strong> if you want only one value for this property in all instances of the class:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Subclasses inherit constant properties, but cannot change them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Constant</strong> properties cannot be <strong>Dependent</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>SetAccess</strong> is ignored.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dependent</td>
<td>logical</td>
<td>See “Properties with Constant Values” on page 15-2 for more information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>default = false</td>
<td>If <strong>false</strong>, property value is stored in object. If <strong>true</strong>, property value is not stored in object. The set and get functions cannot access the property by indexing into the object using the property name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>MATLAB does not display in the command window the names and values of <strong>Dependent</strong> properties that do not define a get method (scalar object display only).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• “Calculate Data on Demand” on page 3-28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• “Property Get Methods” on page 8-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• “Avoid Property Initialization Order Dependency” on page 13-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GetAccess</td>
<td>enumeration</td>
<td><strong>public</strong> — unrestricted access</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute Name</td>
<td>Class</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>default = <code>public</code></td>
<td><strong>protected</strong> — access from class or subclasses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>private</strong> — access by class members only (not from subclasses)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>List classes that have get access to this property. Specify classes as <code>meta.class</code> objects in the form:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• A single <code>meta.class</code> object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• A cell array of <code>meta.class</code> objects. An empty cell array, <code>{}</code>, is the same as <code>private</code> access.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>See “Control Access to Class Members” on page 12-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>MATLAB does not display in the command window the names and values of properties having <code>protected</code> or <code>private GetAccess</code> or properties whose <code>Hidden</code> attribute is <code>true</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The <code>struct</code> function defines fields for all properties when converting objects to structs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GetObservable</td>
<td>logical</td>
<td>If <code>true</code>, and it is a handle class property, then you can create listeners for access to this property. The listeners are called whenever property values are queried. See “Property-Set and Query Events” on page 11-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>default = <code>false</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hidden</td>
<td>logical</td>
<td>Determines if the property should be shown in a property list (e.g., Property Inspector, call to <code>set</code> or <code>get</code>, etc.).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>default = <code>false</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute Name</td>
<td>Class</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NonCopyable</td>
<td>logical</td>
<td>MATLAB does not display in the command window the names and values of properties whose Hidden attribute is true or properties having protected or private GetAccess.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Indicate if property value should be copied when object is copied. You can set NonCopyable to false only in handle classes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>default = false</td>
<td>For more information, see “Exclude Properties from Copy” on page 7-31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SetAccess</td>
<td>enumeration</td>
<td>public — unrestricted access</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>protected — access from class or subclasses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>private — access by class members only (not from subclasses)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>immutable — property can be set only in the constructor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>See “Mutable and Immutable Properties” on page 8-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>default = public</td>
<td>List classes that have set access to this property. Specify classes as meta.class objects in the form:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• A single meta.class object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• A cell array of meta.class objects. An empty cell array, {}, is the same as private access.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>See “Control Access to Class Members” on page 12-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute Name</td>
<td>Class</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SetObservable</td>
<td>logical</td>
<td>If true, and it is a handle class property, then you can create listeners for access to this property. The listeners are called whenever property values are modified. See “Property-Set and Query Events” on page 11-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>default = false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transient</td>
<td>logical</td>
<td>If true, property value is not saved when object is saved to a file. See “Save and Load Process” on page 13-2 for more about saving objects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>default = false</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Mutable and Immutable Properties

Set Access to Property Values

The property **SetAccess** attribute enables you to determine under what conditions code can modify object property values. There are four levels of set access that provide varying degrees of access to object property values:

- **SetAccess = public** — any code with access to an object can set public property values. There are differences between the behavior of handle and value classes with respect to modifying object properties.

- **SetAccess = protected** — only code executing from within class methods or methods of subclasses can set property values. You cannot change the value of an object property unless the class or any of its subclasses defines a method to do so.

- **SetAccess = private** — only the defining class can set property values. You can change the value of an object property only if the class defines a method that sets the property.

- **SetAccess = immutable** — only the class constructor can set property values. You cannot change the value of an object property.

More About

- “Object Modification” on page 5-62
Property Access Methods

In this section...

“Property Setter and Getter Methods” on page 8-14
“Set and Get Method Execution and Property Events” on page 8-16
“Access Methods and Properties Containing Arrays” on page 8-17
“Access Methods and Arrays of Objects” on page 8-17
“Modify Property Values with Access Methods” on page 8-18

Property Setter and Getter Methods

Property access methods execute specific code whenever the property value is queried or assigned a value. These methods enable you to perform various operations:

- Execute code before assigning property values to perform actions such as:
  - Impose value range restrictions ("Restrict Properties to Specific Values" on page 3-26)
  - Check for proper types and dimensions
  - Provide error handling
- Execute code before returning the current values of properties to perform actions such as:
  - Calculate the value of properties that do not store values (for an example, see “Calculate Data on Demand” on page 3-28)
  - Change the value of other properties
  - Trigger events (for an example, see “Define and Trigger Event” on page 11-5)

Calling Access Methods

Note: You cannot call property access methods directly.

Property access methods execute automatically whenever you set or query the corresponding property values from outside the access method. MATLAB does not call
access methods recursively. That is, MATLAB does not call the set method when setting
the property from within its set method. Similarly, MATLAB does not call the get method
when querying the property value from within its get method.

Obtain the function handle for the set and get access methods from the property
meta.property object. The meta.property SetMethod and GetMethod properties
contain the function handles that refer to these methods.

Restrictions on Access Methods

Define property access methods only:

• For concrete properties (that is, properties that are not abstract)
• Within the class that defines the property (unless the property is abstract in that
class, in which case the concrete subclass must define the access method).

MATLAB has no default set or get property access methods. Therefore, if you do not
define property access methods, MATLAB software does not invoke any methods before
assigning or returning property values.

Once defined, only the set and get methods can set and query the actual property values.
See “Set Method Behavior” on page 8-20 for information on cases where MATLAB
does not call property set methods.

Note: Property set and get access methods are not equivalent to user-callable set and
get methods used to set and query property values from an instance of the class. See
“Implement Set/Get Interface for Properties” on page 7-21 for information on user-
callable set and get methods.

Access Methods Cannot Call Functions to Access Properties

You can set and get property values only from within your property set or get access
method. You cannot call another function from the set or get method and attempt to
access the property value from that function.

For example, an anonymous function that calls another function to do the actual work
cannot access the property value. Similarly, an access function cannot call another
function to access the property value.
Defining Access Methods

Access methods have special names that include the property name. Therefore, `get.PropertyName` executes whenever `PropertyName` is referenced and `set.PropertyName` executes whenever `PropertyName` is assigned a value.

Define property access methods in a methods block that specifies no attributes. You cannot call these methods directly. MATLAB calls these methods when any code accesses the properties.

Property access methods do not appear in the list of class methods returned by the `methods` command and are not included in the `meta.class` object `Methods` property.

Access Method Function Handles

The property `meta.property` object contains function handles to the property set and get methods. `SetMethod` contains a function handle to the set method. `GetMethod` contains a function handle to the get method.

Obtain these handles from the `meta.property` object:

```matlab
mc = ClassName;
mp = findobj(mc.PropertyList,'Name','PropertyName');
fh = mp.GetMethod;
```

For example, if the class `MyClass` defines a get method for its `Text` property, you can obtain a function handle to this function from the `meta.class` object:

```matlab
mc = MyClass;
mp = findobj(mc.PropertyList,'Name', 'Text');
fh = mp.GetMethod;
```

The returned value, `fh`, contains a function handle to the get method defined for the specified property name for the specified class.

For information on defining function handles, see “Create Function Handle”

Set and Get Method Execution and Property Events

MATLAB software generates events before and after set and get operations. You can use these events to inform listeners that property values have been referenced or assigned. The timing of event generation is as follows:

- **PreGet** — Triggered before calling the property get method
• **PostGet** — Triggered after the property get method has returned its value

If a class computes a property value (\texttt{Dependent = true}), then the behaviors of its set events are like the get events:

• **PreSet** — Triggered before calling the property set method  
• **PostSet** — Triggered after calling the property set method

If a property is not computed (\texttt{Dependent = false}, the default), then the assignment statement with the set method generates the events:

• **PreSet** — Triggered before assigning the new property value within the set method  
• **PostSet** — Triggered after assigning the new property value within the set method

For information about using property events, see “Create Property Listeners” on page 11-31.

**Access Methods and Properties Containing Arrays**

You can use array indexing with properties that contain arrays without interfering with property set and get methods.

For indexed reference:

```matlab
val = obj.PropName(n);
```

MATLAB calls the get method to get the referenced value.

For indexed assignment:

```matlab
obj.PropName(n) = val;
```

MATLAB:

• Invokes the get method to get the property value  
• Performs the indexed assignment on the returned property  
• Passes the new property value to the set method

**Access Methods and Arrays of Objects**

When reference or assignment occurs on an object array, MATLAB calls the set and get methods in a loop. In this loop, MATLAB always passes scalar objects to set and get methods.
Modify Property Values with Access Methods

Property access methods are useful in cases where you want to perform some additional steps before assigning or returning a property value. For example, the Testpoint class uses a property set method to check the range of a value. It then applies scaling if it is within a particular range, and set it to NaN if it is not.

The property get methods applies a scale factor before returning its current value:

```matlab
classdef Testpoint
    properties
        expectedResult = [];
    end
    properties(Constant)
        scalingFactor = 0.001;
    end
    methods
        function obj = set.expectedResult(obj,erIn)
            if erIn >= 0 && erIn <= 100
                erIn = erIn.*obj.scalingFactor;
                obj.expectedResult = erIn;
            else
                obj.expectedResult = NaN;
            end
        end
        function er = get.expectedResult(obj)
            er = obj.expectedResult/obj.scalingFactor;
        end
    end
end
```

More About

• “Properties Containing Objects” on page 8-28
Property Set Methods

In this section...

“Overview of Property Access Methods” on page 8-19
“Property Set Method Syntax” on page 8-19
“Validate Property Set Value” on page 8-20
“Set Method Behavior” on page 8-20

Overview of Property Access Methods

For an overview of property access methods, see “Property Access Methods” on page 8-14

Property Set Method Syntax

MATLAB calls a property's set method whenever a value is assigned to the property. Property set methods have the following syntax, where `PropertyName` is the name of the property.

For a value class:

```matlab
methods
    function obj = set.PropertyName(obj,value)
        ...
    end
```

- `obj` — Object whose property is being assigned a value
- `value` — The new value that is assigned to the property

Value class set functions must return the modified object to the calling function. Handle classes do not need to return the modified object.

For a handle class:

```matlab
methods
    function set.PropertyName(obj,value)
        ...
    end
```
Use default method attributes for property set methods. The methods block defining the set method cannot specify attributes.

**Validate Property Set Value**

Use the property set method to validate the value being assigned to the property. The property set method can perform actions like error checking on the input value before taking whatever action is necessary to store the new property value.

classdef MyClass
    properties
        Prop1
    end
    methods
        function obj = set.Prop1(obj,value)
            if (value > 0)
                obj.Prop1 = value;
            else
                error('Property value must be positive')
            end
        end
    end
end

For an example of a property set method, see “Restrict Properties to Specific Values” on page 3-26.

**Set Method Behavior**

If a property set method exists, MATLAB calls it whenever a value is assigned to that property. However, MATLAB does NOT call property set methods in the following cases:

- Assigning a value to a property from within its own property set method, to prevent recursive calling of the set method. However, property assignments made from functions called by a set method do call the set method.
- Initializing default values in class definitions when loading the class
- Assigning a property to its default value that is specified in the class definition
- Copying a value object (that is, not derived from the handle class). MATLAB does not call the set or get method when copying property values from one object to another.
• Assigning a property value that is the same as the current value when the property’s AbortSet attribute is true. See “Abort Set When Value Does Not Change” on page 11-34 for more information on this attribute.

A set method for one property can assign values to other properties of the object. These assignments do call any set methods defined for the other properties. For example, a graphics window object can have a Units property and a Size property. Changing the Units property can also require a change to the values of the Size property to reflect the new units.
Property Get Methods

In this section...

“Overview of Property Access Methods” on page 8-22
“Property Get Method Syntax” on page 8-22
“Errors Not Returned from Get Method” on page 8-22
“Get Method Behavior” on page 8-22

Overview of Property Access Methods

For an overview of property access methods, see “Property Access Methods” on page 8-14

Property Get Method Syntax

MATLAB calls a property's get method whenever the property value is queried.

Property get methods have the following syntax, where PropertyName is the name of the property. The function must return the property value.

methods
    function value = get.PropertyName(obj)
        ...
end

Errors Not Returned from Get Method

The MATLAB default object display suppresses error messages returned from property get methods. MATLAB does not allow an error issued by a property get method to prevent the display of the entire object.

Use the property set method to validate the property value. Validating the value when setting a property ensures that the object is in a valid state. Use the property get method only to return the value that the set method has validated.

Get Method Behavior

MATLAB does NOT call property get methods in the following cases:
• Getting a property value from within its own property get method, which prevents recursive calling of the get method

• Copying a value object (that is, not derived from the handle class). Neither the set or get method is called when copying property values from one object to another.

Related Examples

• “Access Methods for Dependent Properties” on page 8-24
Access Methods for Dependent Properties

Set and Get Methods for Dependent Properties

Dependent properties do not store data because the value of a dependent property depends on the current state of something else, like a concrete property value. Dependent properties must define a get method to determine the value for the property, when queried.

Typically, the property get method queries other property values to determine what value to return for the dependent property.

For example, the Account class returns a value for the dependent Balance property that depends on the value of the Currency property. The get.Balance method queries the Currency property before calculating a value for the Balance property.

MATLAB calls the get.Balance method when the Balance property is queried. You cannot call get.Balance explicitly.

Here is a partial listing of the class showing a dependent property and its get method:

```matlab
classdef Account
    properties
        Currency
        DollarAmount
    end
    properties (Dependent)
        Balance
    end
... ...
methods
    function value = get.Balance(obj)
        c = obj.Currency;
        switch c
```
case 'E'
    v = obj.DollarAmount / 1.3;
end

case 'P'
    v = obj.DollarAmount / 1.5;
otherwise
    v = obj.DollarAmount;
end

format bank
value = v;
end

Get Method for Dependent Property

One application of a property get method is to determine the value of a property only when you need it, and avoid storing the value. To use this approach, set the property Dependent attribute to true:

properties (Dependent = true)
    PropertyName
end

Now the get method for the PropertyName property determines the value of that property and assigns it to the object from within the method:

function value = get(PropertyName)(obj)
    value = calculateValue;
    ...
end

The get method calls a function or static method calculateValue to calculate the property value and returns value to the code accessing the property. The property get method can take whatever action is necessary within the method to produce the output value.

“Calculate Data on Demand” on page 3-28 provide an example of a property get method.

When to Use Set Methods with Dependent Properties

Although a dependent property does not store its value, there are situations in which you want to define a set method for a dependent property.
For example, suppose that you have a class that changes the name of a property from `OldPropName` to `NewPropName`. To continue to allow the use of the old name without exposing it to new users, make `OldPropName` a dependent property with set and get methods:

```matlab
properties
   NewPropName
end
properties (Dependent, Hidden)
   OldPropName
end
methods
    function obj = set.OldPropName(obj,val)
        obj.NewPropName = val;
    end
    function value = get.OldPropName(obj)
        value = obj.NewPropName;
    end
end
```

There is no memory wasted by storing both old and new property values, and code that accesses `OldPropName` continues to work as expected.

It is sometimes useful for a set method of a dependent property to assign values to other properties of the object. Assignments made from property set methods cause the execution of any set methods defined for those properties. See “Calculate Data on Demand” on page 3-28 for an example.

**When to Use Private Set Access with Dependent Properties**

If you use a dependent property only to return a value, then do not define a set access method for the dependent property. Instead, set the `SetAccess` attribute of the dependent property to `private`. For example, consider the following get method for the `MaxValue` property:

```matlab
methods
    function mval = get.MaxValue(obj)
        mval = max(obj.BigArray(:));
    end
end
```

This example uses the `MaxValue` property to return a value that it calculates only when queried. For this application, define the `MaxValue` property as dependent and private:
properties (Dependent, SetAccess = private)
    MaxValue
end
Properties Containing Objects

In this section...

“Assigning to Read-Only Properties Containing Objects” on page 8-28
“Assignment Behavior” on page 8-28

Assigning to Read-Only Properties Containing Objects

When a class defines a property with private or protected SetAccess, and that property contains an object which itself has properties, assignment behavior depends on whether the property contains a handle or a value object:

- Handle object – you can set properties on handle objects contained in read-only properties
- Value object – you cannot set properties on value object contained in read-only properties.

Assignment Behavior

These classes illustrate the assignment behavior:

- **ReadOnlyProps** – class with two read-only properties. The class constructor assigns a handle object of type HanClass to the PropHandle property and a value object of type ValClass to the PropValue property.
- **HanClass** – handle class with public property
- **ValClass** – value class with public property

```matlab
classdef ReadOnlyProps
    properties(SetAccess = private)
        PropHandle
        PropValue
    end
    methods
        function obj = ReadOnlyProps
            obj.PropHandle = HanClass;
            obj.PropValue = ValClass;
        end
    end
end
```
Create an instance of the `ReadOnlyProps` class:

```matlab
a = ReadOnlyProps
```

```matlab
a =
        ReadOnlyProps with properties:
                  PropHandle: [1x1 HanClass]
                  PropValue: [1x1 ValClass]
```

Use the private `PropHandle` property to set the property of the `HanClass` object it contains:

```matlab
class(a.PropHandle.Hprop)
ans =
    double
```

```matlab
a.PropHandle.Hprop = 7;
```

Attempting to make an assignment to the value class object property is not allowed:

```matlab
a.PropValue.Vprop = 11;
```

You cannot set the read-only property 'PropValue' of `ReadOnlyProps`.

**More About**

- "Mutable and Immutable Properties" on page 8-13
Dynamic Properties — Adding Properties to an Instance

In this section...

“What Are Dynamic Properties” on page 8-30
“Defining Dynamic Properties” on page 8-31
“Responding to Dynamic-Property Events” on page 8-33
“Defining Property Access Methods for Dynamic Properties” on page 8-34
“Dynamic Properties and ConstructOnLoad” on page 8-35

What Are Dynamic Properties

You can attach properties to objects without defining these properties in the class definition. These dynamic properties are sometimes referred to as instance properties. Use dynamic properties to attach temporary data to objects or assign data that you want to associate with an instance of a class, but not all objects of that class.

It is possible for more than one program to define dynamic properties on the same object so you must take care to avoid name conflicts. Dynamic property names must be valid MATLAB identifiers (see “Variable Names”) and cannot be the same name as a method of the class.

Characteristics of Dynamic Properties

Once defined, dynamic properties behave much like class-defined properties:

• Set and query the values of dynamic properties using dot notation (see “Assigning Data to the Dynamic Property” on page 8-32)
• MATLAB saves and loads dynamic properties when you save and load the objects to which they are attached (see “Save and Load Dynamic Properties” on page 13-35 and “Dynamic Properties and ConstructOnLoad” on page 8-35)
• Define attributes for dynamic property (see “Setting Dynamic Property Attributes” on page 8-31).
• Add property set and get access methods (see “Defining Property Access Methods for Dynamic Properties” on page 8-34)
• Listen for dynamic property events (see “Responding to Dynamic-Property Events” on page 8-33)
• Access dynamic property values from object arrays, with restricted syntax (see “Object Arrays with Dynamic Properties” on page 10-13)

**Defining Dynamic Properties**

Any class that is a subclass of the `dynamicprops` class (which is itself a subclass of the `handle` class) can define dynamic properties using the `addprop` method. The syntax is:

```plaintext
P = addprop(H, 'PropertyName')
```

where:

- `P` is an array of `meta.DynamicProperty` objects
- `H` is an array of handles
- `PropertyName` is the name of the dynamic property you are adding to each object

**Naming Dynamic Properties**

Use only valid names when naming dynamic properties (see “Variable Names”). In addition, do not use names that:

- Are the same as the name of a class method
- Are the same as the name of a class event
- Contain a period (`.`)

**Setting Dynamic Property Attributes**

To set property attributes, use the `meta.DynamicProperty` object associated with the dynamic property. For example, if `P` is the object returned by `addprop`, this statement sets the property’s `Hidden` attribute to `true`:

```plaintext
P.Hidden = true;
```

The property attributes `Constant` and `Abstract` have no meaning for dynamic properties. Setting the value of these attributes to `true` has no effect.

**Removing a Dynamic Property**

Remove the dynamic property by deleting its `meta.DynamicProperty` object:
Assigning Data to the Dynamic Property

Suppose, you are using a predefined set of user interface widget classes (buttons, sliders, check boxes, etc.). You want to store the location of each instance of the widget class. Assume that the widget classes are not designed to store location data for your particular layout scheme. You want to avoid creating a map or hash table to maintain this information separately.

Assuming the \texttt{button} class is a subclass of \texttt{dynamicprops}, add a dynamic property to store your layout data. Here is a simple class to create a \texttt{uicontrol} button:

```matlab
classdef button < dynamicprops
    properties
        UiHandle
    end
    methods
        function obj = button(pos)
            if nargin > 0
                if length(pos) == 4
                    obj.UiHandle = uicontrol('Position',pos,...
                        'Style','pushbutton');
                else
                    error('Improper position')
                end
            end
        end
    end
end
```

Create an instance of the \texttt{button} class, add a dynamic property, and set its value:

```matlab
b1 = button([20 40 80 20]);
b1.addprop('myCoord');
b1.myCoord = [2,3];
```

Access the dynamic property just like any other property, but only on the object on which you defined it:

```matlab
b1.myCoord
```

```matlab
ans =
    2     3
```
Responding to Dynamic-Property Events

You can attach listeners to `dynamicprops` objects to monitor the addition of dynamic properties to the object. You can also monitor the removal of dynamic properties, which occurs when you delete the object.

The `dynamicprops` class defines two events and inherits one from `handle`:

- **ObjectBeingDestroyed** — Inherited from the `handle` class.
- **PropertyAdded** — Triggered when you add a dynamic property to an object derived from the `dynamicprops` class.
- **PropertyRemoved** — Triggered when you delete the `meta.DynamicProperty` object associated with the dynamic property.

Suppose that you define a `button` object, as described in the previous section:

```matlab
b2 = button([20 40 80 20]);
```

Create a function to attach listeners to the `button` object, `b2`, and a listener callback function:

```matlab
function listenDynoEvent(obj)
    addlistener(obj,'PropertyAdded',@eventPR);
    addlistener(obj,'PropertyRemoved',@eventPR);
    function eventPR(src,evnt)
        mc = metaclass(src);
        fprintf(1,'%s %s \n',mc.Name,'object');
        fprintf(1,'%s %s \n','Event triggered:',evnt.EventName);
    end
end
```

**Triggering the PropertyAdded Event**

Add the listeners to the `button` object, `b2`. Then, add a dynamic property, `myCoord`.

```matlab
listenDynoEvent(b2)
mp = b2.addprop('myCoord');
```

The listener callback function, `eventPR`, executes, and displays the object class and event name:

- `button object`
Event triggered: PropertyAdded

Delete the dynamic property by deleting the meta.DynamicProperty object:

delete(mp)

button object
Event triggered: PropertyRemoved

Obtain the meta.DynamicProperty object for a dynamic property using the handle findprop method. Use findprop if you do not have the object returned by addprop:

mp = findprop(b2,'myCoord');

Dynamic Properties and Ordinary Property Events

Dynamic properties support property set and get events so you can define listeners for these properties. Listeners are bound to the particular dynamic property for which you define them.

If you delete a dynamic property, and then create another one with the same name, the listeners do not respond to events generated by the new property, even though the property has the same name as the property for which the event was defined. Having a listener defined for a deleted dynamic property does not cause an error, but the listener callback is never executed.

“Property-Set and Query Events” on page 11-14 provides more information on how to define listeners for these events.

Defining Property Access Methods for Dynamic Properties

Dynamic properties enable you to add properties to class instances without modifying class definitions. You can also define property set access or get access methods without creating additional class methods. See “Property Setter and Getter Methods” on page 8-14 for more on the purpose and techniques of these methods.

Note: You can set and get the property values only from within your property access methods. You cannot call another function from the set or get method and attempt to access the property value from that function.

Here are the steps for creating a property access method:
• Define a function that implements the desired operations you want to perform before the property set or get occurs. These methods must have the following signatures:

\[ \text{mySet}(\text{obj}, \text{val}) \text{ or } \text{val} = \text{myGet}(\text{obj}) \]

• Obtain the dynamic property's corresponding `meta.DynamicProperty` object.

• Assign a function handle pointing to your set or get property function to the `meta.DynamicProperty` object's `GetMethod` or `SetMethod` property. This function does not need to be a method of the class and you cannot use a naming scheme like `set.PropertyName`. Instead, use any valid function name.

Suppose that you want to create a property set function for the `button` class dynamic property `myCoord` created previously. Write the function as follows:

```matlab
function set_myCoord(obj,val)
    if ~(length(val) == 2)
        error('myCoords require two values')
    end
    obj.myCoord = val;
end
```

Because `button` is a `handle` class, the property set function does not need to return the object as an output argument.

To get the `meta.DynamicProperty` object, use the `handle` class `findprop` method:

```matlab
mb1 = b1.findprop('myCoord');
mb1.SetMethod = @set_myCoord;
```

MATLAB calls the property set function whenever you set this property:

```matlab
b1.myCoord = [1 2 3] % length must be two
```

```
Error using button.set_myCoord
myCoords require two values
```

**Dynamic Properties and ConstructOnLoad**

Setting the class `ConstructOnLoad` attribute to `true` causes MATLAB to call the class constructor when loading the class. MATLAB saves and restores dynamic properties when loading an object.

If you create dynamic properties from the class constructor, you can cause a conflict if you also set the class `ConstructOnLoad` attribute to `true`. Here is the sequence:
• A saved object saves the names and values of properties, including dynamic properties.
• When loaded, a new object is created and all properties are restored to the values at the time the object was saved.
• Then, the `ConstructOnLoad` attribute causes a call to the class constructor, which would create another dynamic property with the same name as the loaded property. See “Save and Load Objects” on page 13-2 for more on the load sequence.
• MATLAB prevents a conflict by loading the saved dynamic property, and does not execute `addprop` when calling the constructor.

If you use `ConstructOnLoad`, add dynamic properties from the class constructor, and want the constructor to call `addprop` at load time, then set the dynamic property `Transient` attribute to `true`. This setting prevents the property from being saved. For example:

```matlab
classdef (ConstructOnLoad) MyClass < dynamicprops
    function obj = MyClass
        P = addprop(obj,'DynProp');
        P.Transient = true;
        ...
    end
end
```
Methods — Defining Class Operations

• “How to Use Methods” on page 9-2
• “Method Attributes” on page 9-5
• “Ordinary Methods” on page 9-7
• “Method Invocation” on page 9-10
• “Class Constructor Methods” on page 9-16
• “Static Methods” on page 9-24
• “Overload Functions for Your Class” on page 9-26
• “Class Support for Array-Creation Functions” on page 9-29
• “Object Precedence in Methods” on page 9-38
• “Dominant Argument in Overloaded Graphics Functions” on page 9-40
• “Class Methods for Graphics Callbacks” on page 9-43
How to Use Methods

Class Methods

Methods are functions that implement the operations performed on objects of a class. Methods, along with other class members support the concept of encapsulation—class instances contain data in properties and class methods operate on that data. This allows the internal workings of classes to be hidden from code outside of the class, and thereby enabling the class implementation to change without affecting code that is external to the class.

Methods have access to private members of their class including other methods and properties. This enables you to hide data and create special interfaces that must be used to access the data stored in objects.

See “Methods That Modify Default Behavior” on page 17-2 for a discussion of how to create classes that modify standard MATLAB behavior.

See “Class Files and Folders” on page 5-2 for information on the use of @ and path directors and packages to organize your class files.

See “Methods In Separate Files” on page 5-21 for the syntax to use when defining classes in more than one file.

Kinds of Methods

There are specialized kinds of methods that perform certain functions or behave in particular ways:

- Ordinary methods are functions that act on one or more objects and return some new object or some computed value. These methods are like ordinary MATLAB functions that cannot modify input arguments. Ordinary methods enable classes to implement arithmetic operators and computational functions. These methods require an object of the class on which to operate. See “Ordinary Methods” on page 9-7.

- Constructor methods are specialized methods that create objects of the class. A constructor method must have the same name as the class and typically initializes
property values with data obtained from input arguments. The class constructor method must return the object it creates. See “Class Constructor Methods” on page 9-16

- Destructor methods are called automatically when the object is destroyed, for example if you call delete(object) or there are no longer any references to the object. See “Handle Class Destructor” on page 7-14

- Property access methods enable a class to define code to execute whenever a property value is queried or set. See “Property Access Methods” on page 8-14

- Static methods are functions that are associated with a class, but do not necessarily operate on class objects. These methods do not require an instance of the class to be referenced during invocation of the method, but typically perform operations in a way specific to the class. See “Static Methods” on page 9-24

- Conversion methods are overloaded constructor methods from other classes that enable your class to convert its own objects to the class of the overloaded constructor. For example, if your class implements a double method, then this method is called instead of the double class constructor to convert your class object to a MATLAB double object. See “Object Converters” on page 17-11 for more information.

- Abstract methods serve to define a class that cannot be instantiated itself, but serves as a way to define a common interface used by a number of subclasses. Classes that contain abstract methods are often referred to as interfaces. See “Abstract Classes” on page 12-80 for more information and examples.

**Method Naming**

The name of a function that implements a method can contain dots (for example, set.PropertyName) only if the method is one of the following:

- Property set/get access method (see “Property Access Methods” on page 8-14)
- Conversion method that converts to a package-qualified class, which requires the use of the package name (see “Packages Create Namespaces” on page 6-21)

You cannot define property access or conversion methods as local functions, nested functions, or separately in their own files. Class constructors and package-scoped functions must use the unqualified name in the function definition; do not include the package name in the function definition statement.

See “Defining Methods” on page 9-7 for more information on how you can define methods.
See “Rules for Naming to Avoid Conflicts” on page 9-28 for related information.
Method Attributes

In this section...

“Specifying Method Attributes” on page 9-5
“Table of Method Attributes” on page 9-5

Specifying Method Attributes

Assign method attributes on the same line as the methods keyword:

methods (Attribute1 = value1, Attribute2 = value2,...)
end

For more information on attribute syntax, see “Attribute Specification” on page 5-27.

Table of Method Attributes

Attributes enable you to modify the behavior of methods. All methods support the attributes listed in the following table.

Attribute values apply to all methods defined within the methods...end code block that specifies the nondefault values.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abstract</td>
<td>logical</td>
<td>If true, the method has no implementation. The method has a syntax line that can include arguments, which subclasses use when implementing the method:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default = false</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Subclasses are not required to define the same number of input and output arguments. However, subclasses generally use the same signature when implementing their version of the method.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• The method can have comments after the function line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• The method does not contain function or end keywords, only the function syntax (e.g., [a,b] = myMethod(x,y))</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9-5
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Access        | • enumeration,  
default = public  
• meta.class object  
• cell array of meta.class objects | Determines what code can call this method:  
• public — Unrestricted access  
• protected — Access from methods in class or subclasses  
• private — Access by class methods only (not from subclasses)  
• List classes that have access to this method. Specify classes as meta.class objects in the form:  
  • A single meta.class object  
  • A cell array of meta.class objects. An empty cell array, {}, is the same as private access.  
  See “Control Access to Class Members” on page 12-25 |
| Hidden        | logical Default = false                    | When false, the method name shows in the list of methods displayed using the methods or methodsview commands. If set to true, the method name is not included in these listings and ismethod does not return true for this method name. |
| Sealed        | logical Default = false                    | If true, the method cannot be redefined in a subclass. Attempting to define a method with the same name in a subclass causes an error.                                                                       |
| Static        | logical Default = false                    | Specify as true to define a method that does not depend on an object of the class and does not require an object argument. Use the class name to call the method:  
  classname.methodname or an instance of the class: obj.methodname  
  “Static Methods” on page 9-24 provides more information. |
Ordinary Methods

In this section...

“Defining Methods” on page 9-7
“Multi-File Classes” on page 9-8

Defining Methods

You can specify methods:

• Inside of a class definition block
• In a separate file in the class folder (that is, @ClassName)

For more information on class folders, see “Class and Path Folders” on page 6-15.

Methods Inside classdef Block

This example shows the definition of a method (methodName) within the classdef and methods blocks:

```matlab
classdef ClassName
    methods (AttributeName = value, ...)
        function methodName(obj, args)
            % method code
        end
    end % end of method block
end
```

**Note:** Nonstatic methods must include an explicit object variable as a function argument. The MATLAB language does not support an implicit reference in the method function definition.

Either of the following statements is correct syntax for calling a method, where `obj` is an object of the class defining the `methodName` method:

```matlab
obj.methodName(arg)
methodName(obj, arg)
```
Method attributes apply only to that particular methods block, which is terminated by the `end` statement.

**Multi-File Classes**

You can define class methods in separate files within the class folder. In this case, create a function in a separate file having the same name as the function (i.e., `functionName.m`). If you want to specify attribute values for that method, you must declare the method signature within a methods block in the `classdef` block. For example:

```matlab
classdef MyClass
    methods (Access = protected)
        x = compute(obj,val)
    end
end
```

Do not use methods blocks in the separate files. Define the method as a function `.m` file. Using the example above, the file `compute.m`, contain the definition of the `compute` function. The signatures in the function file and the `classdef` file must match.

```matlab
function x = compute(obj,val)
    x = obj.y + val;
end
```

The following limitations apply to methods defined in separate files:

- If you specify attributes for a method defined in a separate file, you must declare this method in a methods block (specifying attribute values) within the `classdef` block.
- The syntax declared in the methods block (if used) must match the method's `function` line.
- The separate file must be in the class folder.
- The constructor method must be defined within the `classdef` block and, therefore, cannot be in a separate file.
- Set and get property access methods must be defined within the `classdef` block and, therefore, cannot be in separate files.

**More About**

- “Methods In Separate Files” on page 5-21
• “Determining Which Method Is Invoked” on page 9-10
Method Invocation

In this section...

“Determining Which Method Is Invoked” on page 9-10
“Referencing Names with Expressions—Dynamic Reference” on page 9-12
“Controlling Access to Methods” on page 9-13
“Invoking Superclass Methods in Subclass Methods” on page 9-14
“Invoking Built-In Functions” on page 9-15

Determining Which Method Is Invoked

When the MATLAB runtime invokes an ordinary method that has an argument list, it uses the following criteria to determine which method to call:

- The class of the left-most argument whose class is not specified as inferior to any other argument's class is chosen as the dominant class and its method is invoked.
- If this class does not define the named method, then a function with that name on the MATLAB path is invoked.
- If no such function exists, MATLAB issues an error indicating that the dominant class does not define the named method.

Dominant Argument

The dominant argument in a method's argument list determines which version of the method or function that the MATLAB runtime calls. Dominance is determined by the relative precedences of the classes of the arguments. In general, user-defined classes take precedence over built-in MATLAB classes. Therefore, the left most argument determines which method to call. However, user-defined classes can specify the relative dominance of specific classes.

For example, suppose classA defines classB as inferior and suppose both classes define a method called combine.

Calling the method with an object of classB and classA:

`combine(B,A)`

actually calls the `combine` method of classA because A is the dominant argument.
Dot Notation vs. Function Notation

MATLAB classes support both function and dot notation syntax for calling methods. For example, if `setColor` is a method of the class of object `X`, then calling `setColor` with function notation would be:

\[ X = \text{setColor}(X, 'red'); \]

The equivalent method call using dot notation is:

\[ X = X\cdot\text{setColor}('red') \]

However, in certain cases, the results for dot notation can differ with respect to how MATLAB dispatching works:

- If there is an overloaded `subsref`, it is invoked whenever using dot-notation. That is, the statement is first tested to see if it is subscripted assignment.
- If there is no overloaded `subsref`, then `setColor` must be a method of `X`. An ordinary function or a class constructor is never called using this notation.
- Only the argument `X` (to the left of the dot) is used for dispatching. No other arguments, even if dominant, are considered. Therefore dot notation can call only methods of `X`; methods of other argument are never called.

Case Where Result is Different

Here is an example of a case where dot and function notation can give different results. Suppose you have the following classes:

- `classA` defines a method called `methodA` that requires an object of `classB` as one of its arguments
- `classB` defines `classA` as inferior to `classB`

```matlab
classdef classB (InferiorClasses = {?classA})
    ...
end
```

The `methodA` method is defined with two input arguments, one of which is an object of `classB`:

```matlab
classdef classA
    methods
        function methodA(obj, obj_classB)
    end
end
```
...  
end  
end  

classB does not define a method with the same name as methodA. Therefore, the following syntax causes the MATLAB runtime to search the path for a function with the same name as methodA because the second argument is an object of a dominant class. If a function with that name exists on the path, then MATLAB attempts to call this function instead of the method of classA and most likely returns a syntax error.

```matlab
obj = classA(...);
methodA(obj, obj_classB)
```

Dot notation is stricter in its behavior. For example, this call to methodA:

```matlab
obj = classA(...);
obj.methodA(obj_classB)
```

can call only methodA of the class of obj.

**Referencing Names with Expressions—Dynamic Reference**

You can reference an object's properties or methods using an expression in dot-parentheses syntax:

```matlab
obj.(expression)
```

The expression must evaluate to a string that is the name of a property or a method. For example, the following statements are equivalent:

```matlab
obj.Property1
obj.('Property1')
```

In this case, obj is an object of a class that defines a property called Property1. Therefore, you can pass a string variable in the parentheses to reference to property:

```matlab
propName = 'Property1';
obj.(propName)
```

You can call a method and pass input arguments to the method using another set of parentheses:

```matlab
obj.(expression)(arg1, arg2, ...)
```
Using this notation, you can make dynamic references to properties and methods in the same way you can create dynamic references to the fields of structs.

As an example, suppose an object has methods corresponding to each day of the week. These methods have the same names as the days of the week (Monday, Tuesday, and so on). Also, the methods take as string input arguments, the current day of the month (the date). Now suppose you write a function in which you want to call the correct method for the current day.

Use an expression created with the `date` and `datestr` functions:

```plaintext
obj.(datestr(date,'dddd'))(datestr(date,'dd'))
```

The expression `datestr(date,'dddd')` returns the current day as a string. For example:

```plaintext
datestr(date,'dddd')
```

```plaintext
ans =
```

```plaintext
Tuesday
```

The expression `datestr(date,'dd')` returns the current date as a string. For example:

```plaintext
datestr(date,'dd')
```

```plaintext
ans =
```

```plaintext
11
```

Therefore, the expression using dot-parentheses (called on Tuesday the 11\textsuperscript{th}) is the equivalent of:

```plaintext
obj.Tuesday('11')
```

### Controlling Access to Methods

There might be situations where you want to create methods for internal computation within the class, but do not want to publish these methods as part of the public interface to the class. In these cases, you can use the `Access` attribute to set the access to one of the following options:

- **public** — Any code having access to an object of the class can access this method (the default).
• **private** — Restricts method access to the defining class, excluding subclasses. Subclasses do not inherit private methods.

• **protected** — Restricts method access to the defining class and subclasses derived from the defining class. Subclasses inherit this method.

Local and nested functions inside the method files have the same access as the method. Note that local functions inside a class-definition file have private access to the class defined in the same file.

**Invoking Superclass Methods in Subclass Methods**

A subclass can override the implementation of a method defined in a superclass. In some cases, the subclass method might need to execute some additional code instead of completely replacing the superclass method. To do this, MATLAB classes can use a special syntax for invocation of superclass methods from a subclass implementation for the same-named method.

The syntax to call a superclass method in a subclass class uses the @ symbol:

```
MethodName@SuperclassName
```

For example, the following disp method is defined for a Stock class that is derived from an Asset class. The method first calls the Asset class disp method, passing the Stock object so that the Asset components of the Stock object can be displayed. After the Asset disp method returns, the Stock disp method displays the two Stock properties:

```matlab
classdef Stock < Asset
definitions
  function disp(s)
    disp@Asset(s) % Call base class disp method first
    fprintf(1,'Number of shares: %g
Share price: %3.2f
',...
    s.NumShares,s.SharePrice);
  end
end
```

**Limitations of Use**

The following restrictions apply to calling superclass methods. You can use this notation only within:

• A method having the same name as the superclass method you are invoking
• A class that is a subclass of the superclass whose method you are invoking
Invoking Built-In Functions

The MATLAB `builtin` function enables you to call the built-in version of a function that has been overloaded by a method.

More About

• “Class Precedence” on page 6-19
Class Constructor Methods

**Rules for Constructors**

A constructor method is a special function that creates an instance of the class. Typically, constructor methods accept input arguments to assign the data stored in properties and always return an initialized object.

- The constructor has the same name as the class.
- The only output argument from a constructor is the object constructed.
- The constructor can return only a single argument.
- Constructors must always return a valid instance of the class. Never return an empty object from a class constructor.
- If the class being created is a subclass, MATLAB calls the constructor of each superclass class to initialize the object. Implicit calls to the superclass constructor are made with no arguments. If superclass constructors require arguments, you must call them from the subclass constructor explicitly.
- If your constructor makes an explicit call to a superclass constructor, this call must occur before any other reference to the constructed object.
- A class does not need to define a constructor method unless it is a subclass of a superclass whose constructor requires arguments. In this case, you must explicitly call the superclass constructor with the required arguments. See “Constructing Subclasses” on page 9-19
- If a class does not define a constructor, MATLAB supplies a constructor that takes no arguments and returns a scalar object whose properties are initialized to empty or the
values specified as defaults in the property definitions. The constructor supplied by MATLAB also calls all superclass constructors with no arguments.

- If you create a class constructor, you should implement class constructors so that they can be called with no input arguments, in addition to whatever arguments are normally required. See “No Input Argument Constructor Requirement” on page 9-18.

- Constructor functions must return an instance of the constructor’s class. The constructor should avoid assigning to the constructor output argument because subclasses often call a superclass constructor in the process of creating an instance of the subclass.

- Calls to superclass constructors cannot be conditional. This means superclass construction calls cannot be placed in loops, conditions, switches, try/catch, or nested functions. See “No Conditional Calls to Superclass Constructors” on page 9-20 for more information.

- Restrict access to constructors using method attributes, as with any method.

**Related Information**

See “Constructor Calling Sequence” on page 14-12 for information specific to constructing enumerations.

**Initializing Objects In Constructor**

Constructor methods must return an initialized object as the only output argument. The output argument is created when the constructor executes, before executing the first line of code.

For example, the following constructor function can assign the value of the object's property A as the first statement because the object obj has already been assigned to an instance of MyClass.

```matlab
function obj = myClass(a,b,c)
    obj.A = a;
    ...
end
```

You can call other class methods from the constructor because the object is already initialized.
The constructor also creates an object whose properties have their default values—either empty ([ ]) or the default value specified in the property definition block.

For example, the following code calls the class method `CalculateValue` to assign the value of the property `Value`.

```matlab
function obj = myClass(a,b,c)
    obj.Value = obj.CalculateValue(a,b);
    ...
end
```

**Referencing the Object in a Constructor**

When initializing the object, for example, by assigning values to properties, you must use the name of the output argument to refer to the object within the constructor. For example, in the following code the output argument is `obj` and the object is reference as `obj`:

```matlab
% obj is the object being constructed
function obj = myClass(arg)
    obj.properties1 = arg*10;
    obj.method1;
    ...
end
```

For more information on defining default property values, see “Define Default Values” on page 5-13.

**No Input Argument Constructor Requirement**

There are cases where the constructor must be able to be called with no input argument:

- When loading objects into the workspace. If the class `ConstructOnLoad` attribute is set to `true`, the `load` function calls the class constructor with no arguments.
- When creating or expanding an object array such that not all elements are given specific values, the class constructor is called with no arguments to fill in unspecified elements, (for example, `x(10,1) = myclass(a,b,c);`). In this case, the constructor is called once with no arguments to populate the empty array elements with copies of this one object.

If there are no input arguments, the constructor creates an object using only default properties values. A good practice is to always add a check for zero arguments to the class constructor to prevent an error if either of the two cases above occur:
function obj = myClass(a,b,c)
    if nargin > 0
        obj.A = a;
        obj.B = b;
        obj.C = c;
        ...
    end
end

For ways to handle superclass constructors, see “Basic Structure of Constructor Methods” on page 9-22.

**Constructing Subclasses**

Subclass constructor functions must explicitly call superclass constructors if the superclass constructors require input arguments. The subclass constructor must specify these arguments in the call to the superclass constructor using the constructor output argument. Here is the syntax:

```matlab
classdef MyClass < SuperClass
    function obj = MyClass(arg)
        obj@SuperClass(ArgumentList);
        ...
    end
end
```

The class constructor must make all calls to superclass constructors before any other references to the object. These changes include assigning property values or calling ordinary class methods. Also, a subclass constructor can call a superclass constructor only once.

**Reference Only Specified Superclasses**

If the `classdef` does not specify the class as a superclass, the constructor cannot call a superclass constructor with this syntax.

```matlab
classdef MyClass < SuperClass
```

MATLAB calls any uncalled constructors in the left-to-right order in which they are specified in the `classdef` line. MATLAB passes no arguments to these functions.
No Conditional Calls to Superclass Constructors

Calls to superclass constructors must be unconditional. There can be only one call for a given superclass. Initialize the superclass portion of the object by calling the superclass constructors before using the object (for example, to assign property values or call class methods).

If you must call superclass constructors with different arguments that depend on some condition, you can build a cell array of arguments and provide one call to the constructor.

For example, the Cube class constructor calls the superclass Shape constructor using default values when the Cube constructor is called with no arguments. If the Cube constructor is called with four input arguments, upvector and viewangle can be passed to the superclass constructor:

```matlab
classdef Cube < Shape
    properties
        SideLength = 0;
        Color = [0 0 0];
    end
    methods
        function cubeObj = Cube(length,color,upvector,viewangle)
            if nargin == 0
                super_args{1} = [0 0 1];
                super_args{2} = 10;
            elseif nargin == 4
                super_args{1} = upvector;
                super_args{2} = viewangle;
            else
                error('Wrong number of input arguments')
            end
            cubeObj@Shape(super_args{:});
            if nargin > 0 % Use value if provided
                cubeObj.SideLength = length;
                cubeObj.Color = color;
            end
        end
    end
end
```
Zero or More Superclass Arguments

If you must support the syntax that calls the superclass constructor with no arguments, provide this syntax explicitly.

Suppose in the case of the Cube class example, all property values in the Shape superclass and the Cube subclass have default values specified in the class definitions. Then you can create an instance of Cube without specifying any arguments for the superclass or subclass constructors.

Here is how you can implement this behavior in the Cube constructor:

```plaintext
methods
  function cubeObj = Cube(length,color,upvector,viewangle)
    if nargin == 0
      super_args = {};
    elseif nargin == 4
      super_args{1} = upvector;
      super_args{2} = viewangle;
    else
      error('Wrong number of input arguments')
    end
    cubeObj@Shape(super_args{:});
    if nargin > 0
      cubeObj.SideLength = length;
      cubeObj.Color = color;
    end
  ...  
end
end
```

More on Subclasses

See “Create Subclasses — Syntax and Techniques” on page 12-7 for information on creating subclasses.

Errors During Class Construction

If an error occurs during the construction of a handle class, the MATLAB class system calls the class destructor on the object along with the destructors for any objects contained in properties and any initialized base classes.

For information on how objects are destroyed, see “Handle Class Destructor” on page 7-14.
Basic Structure of Constructor Methods

It is important to consider the state of the object under construction when writing your constructor method. Constructor methods can be structured into three basic sections:

- Pre-initialization — Compute arguments for superclass constructors.
- Object initialization — Call superclass constructors.
- Post initialization — Perform any operations related to the subclass, including referencing and assigning to the object, call class methods, passing the object to functions, and so on.

This code illustrates the basic operations performed in each section:

```matlab
classdef myClass < baseClass1
    properties
        ComputedValue
    end
    methods
        function obj = myClass(a,b,c)
            %% Pre Initialization %%%
            % Any code not using output argument (obj)
            if nargin == 0
                % Provide values for superclass constructor
                % and initialize other inputs
                a = someDefaultValue;
                args{1} = someDefaultValue;
                args{2} = someDefaultValue;
            else
                % When nargin == 0, assign to cell array,
                % which is passed to supclass constructor
                args{1} = b;
                args{2} = c;
            end
            compvalue = myClass.staticMethod(a);

            %% Object Initialization %%%
            % Call superclass constructor before accessing object
            % You cannot conditionalize this statement
            obj = obj@baseClass1(args{:});

            %% Post Initialization %%%
            % Any code, including access to object
            obj.classMethod(...);
            obj.ComputedValue = compvalue;
            ...
            end
        end
    end
end
```
See “Create Object Arrays” on page 10-2 for information on creating object arrays in the constructor.

**Related Examples**

- “Simplifying the Interface with a Constructor” on page 3-27
- “Constructor Arguments and Object Initialization” on page 12-9
## Static Methods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>In this section...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>“Why Define Static Methods” on page 9-24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Calling Static Methods” on page 9-24</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Why Define Static Methods

Static methods are associated with a class, but not with specific instances of that class. These methods do not perform operations on individual objects of a class and, therefore, do not require an instance of the class as an input argument, like ordinary methods.

Static methods are useful when you do not want to first create an instance of the class before executing some code. For example, you might want to set up the MATLAB environment or use the static method to calculate data needed to create class instances.

Suppose a class needs a value for pi calculated to particular tolerances. The class could define its own version of the built-in pi function for use within the class. This approach maintains the encapsulation of the class's internal workings, but does not require an instance of the class to return a value.

### Defining a Static Method

To define a method as static, set the methods block `Static` attribute to `true`. For example:

```matlab
classdef MyClass
    ...
    methods(Static)
        function p = pi(tol)
            [n d] = rat(pi,tol);
            p = n/d;
        end
    end
end
```

### Calling Static Methods

Invoke static methods using the name of the class followed by dot (.), then the name of the method:
classname.staticMethodName(args,...)

Calling the pi method of MyClass in the previous section would require this statement:

value = MyClass.pi(.001);

You can also invoke static methods using an instance of the class, like any method:

obj = MyClass;
value = obj.pi(.001);

**Inheriting Static Methods**

Subclasses can redefine static methods unless the method’s **Sealed** attribute is also set to **true** in the superclass.

**Related Examples**

- “Implementing the AccountManager Class” on page 3-14
Overload Functions for Your Class

In this section...

“Overloading MATLAB Functions” on page 9-26
“Rules for Naming to Avoid Conflicts” on page 9-28

Overloading MATLAB Functions

Class methods can provide implementations of MATLAB functions that operate only on instances of the class. This is possible because MATLAB software can always identify to which class an object belongs.

MATLAB uses the dominant argument to determine which version of a function to call. If the dominant argument is an object, then MATLAB calls the method defined by the object's class, if one exists.

In cases where a class defines a method with the same name as a global function, the class's implementation of the function is said to overload the original global implementation.

To overload a MATLAB function:

• Define a method with the same name as the function you want to overload.
• Ensure the method argument list accepts an object of the class, which MATLAB uses to determine which version to call.
• Perform the necessary steps in the method to implement the function. For example, access the object properties to manipulate data, and so on.

Generally, the method that overloads a function produces results similar to the MATLAB function. However, there are no requirements with regard to how you implement the overloading method. The overloading method does not need to match the signature of the overloaded function.

Note: MATLAB does not support overloading functions using different signatures for the same function name.
Overload Functions for Your Class

Overload the bar Function

It is convenient to overload commonly used functions to work with objects of your class. For example, suppose a class defines a property that stores data that you often graph. The MyData class overrides the bar function and adds a title to the graph:

```matlab
classdef MyData
    properties
        Data
    end
    methods
        function obj = MyData(d)
            if nargin > 0
                obj.Data = d;
            end
        end
        function bar(obj)
            y = obj.Data;
            bar(y,'EdgeColor','r');
            title('My Data Graph')
        end
    end
end
```

The MyData bar method has the same name as the MATLAB bar function. However, the MyData bar method requires a MyData object as input. Because the method is specialized for MyData objects, it can extract the data from the Data property and create a specialized graph.

To use the bar method, create an object:

```matlab
y = rand(1,10);
md = MyData(y);
```

Call the method using the object:

```matlab
bar(md)
```

You can also use dot notation:

```matlab
md.bar
```

Implementing MATLAB Operators

Classes designed to implement new MATLAB data types typically define certain operators, such as addition, subtraction, equality, and so on.
For example, standard MATLAB addition (+) cannot add two polynomials because this operation is not defined by simple addition. However, a *polynomial* class can define its own `plus` method that the MATLAB language calls to perform addition of *polynomial* objects when you use the + symbol:

\[ p1 + p2 \]

**Rules for Naming to Avoid Conflicts**

The names of methods, properties, and events are scoped to the class. Therefore, you should adhere to the following rules to avoid naming conflicts:

- You can reuse names that you have used in unrelated classes.
- You can reuse names in subclasses if the member does not have public or protected access. These names then refer to entirely different methods, properties, and events without affecting the superclass definitions.
- Within a class, all names exist in the same name space and must be unique. A class cannot define two methods with the same name and a class cannot define a local function with the same name as a method.
- The name of a static method is considered without its class prefix. Thus, a static method name without its class prefix cannot match the name of any other method.

**Related Examples**

- “Modify Superclass Methods” on page 12-15
- “Class Operator Implementation” on page 17-40
- “Methods That Modify Default Behavior” on page 17-2
Class Support for Array-Creation Functions

In this section...

“Extend Array-Creation Functions for Your Class” on page 9-29
“Which Syntax to Use” on page 9-30
“Implement Support for Array-Creation Functions” on page 9-31

Extend Array-Creation Functions for Your Class

There are a number of MATLAB functions that create arrays of a specific size and type, such as `ones` and `zeros`. User-defined classes can add support for array-creation functions without requiring the use of overloaded method syntax.

Class support for any of the array-creation functions enables you to develop code that you can share with built-in and user-defined data types. For example, the class of the variable `x` in the following code can be a built-in type during initial development, and then be replaced by a user-defined class that transparently overloads `zeros`:

```matlab
cls = class(x);
zArray = zeros(m,n,cls);
```

Array-creation functions create arrays of a specific type in two ways:

- Class name syntax — Specify class name that determines the type of array elements.
- Prototype object syntax — Provide a prototype object that the function uses to determine the type and other characteristics of the array elements.

For example:

```matlab
zArray = zeros(2,3,'uint8');
p = uint8([1 3 5 ; 2 4 6]);
zArray = zeros(2,3,'like',p);
```

After adding support for these functions to a class named `MyClass`, you can use similar syntax with that class:

```matlab
zArray = zeros(2,3,'MyClass');
```
Or pass an object of your class:

```matlab
p = MyClass(...);
zArray = zeros(size(p),'like',p);
```

MATLAB uses these arguments to dispatch to the appropriate method in your class.

**Array-creation Functions That Support Overloading**

The following functions support this kind of overloading.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Array-creation Functions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zeros</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nan (lower case)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>randn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>randi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Which Syntax to Use**

If you want to create an array of default objects, which require no input arguments for
the constructor, then use the class name syntax.

If you need to create an array of objects with specific property values or if the constructor
needs other inputs, use the prototype object to provide this information.

Classes can support both the class name and the prototype object syntax.

You can implement a class name syntax with the `true` and `false` functions even though
these functions do not support that syntax by default.
Class Name Method Called If Prototype Method Does Not Exist

If your class implements a class name syntax, but does not implement a prototype object syntax for a particular function, you can still call both syntaxes. For example, if you implement a static \texttt{zeros} method only, you can call:

\begin{verbatim}
zeros(...,'like',MyClass(...))
\end{verbatim}

In the case in which you call the prototype object syntax, MATLAB first searches for a method named \texttt{zerosLike}. If MATLAB cannot find this method, it calls for the \texttt{zeros} static method.

This feature is useful if you only need the class name to create the array. You do not need to implement both methods to support the complete array-creation function syntax. When you implement only the class name syntax, a call to a prototype object syntax is the same as the call to the class name syntax.

Implement Support for Array-Creation Functions

Use two separate methods to fully support an array-creation function. One method implements the class name syntax and the other implements the prototype object syntax.

For example, to support the \texttt{zeros} function:

- Implement the class name syntax:

  \begin{verbatim}
  zeros(...,'ClassName')
  \end{verbatim}
  As a Static method:
  \begin{verbatim}
  methods (Static)
      function z = zeros(varargin)
      ...
  end
  end
  \end{verbatim}

- Implement the prototype object syntax:

  \begin{verbatim}
  zeros(...,'like',obj)
  \end{verbatim}
  As a Hidden method with the string \texttt{Like} appended to the name.
  \begin{verbatim}
  methods (Hidden)
      function z = zerosLike(obj,varargin)
  end
  \end{verbatim}
How MATLAB Interprets the Function Call

The special support for array-creation functions results from the interpretation of the syntax.

• A call to the `zeros` function of this form:
  ```matlab
  zeros(...,'ClassName')
  ```
  Calls the class static method like this:
  ```matlab
  ClassName.zeros(varargin{1:end-1})
  ```

• A call to the `zeros` function of this form:
  ```matlab
  zeros(...,'like',obj)
  ```
  Calls the class method like this:
  ```matlab
  zerosLike(obj,varargin{1:end-2})
  ```

Support All Function Inputs

The input arguments to an array-creation function can include the dimensions of the array the function returns and possibly other arguments. In general, there are three cases that your methods need to support:

• No dimension input arguments resulting in the return of a scalar. For example:
  ```matlab
  z = zeros('MyClass');
  ```

• One or more dimension equal to or less than zero, resulting in an empty array. For example:
  ```matlab
  z = zeros(2,0,'MyClass');
  ```

• Any number of valid array dimensions specifying the size of the array. For example:
  ```matlab
  z = zeros(2,3,5,'MyClass');
  ```

When the array-creation function calls your class method, it passes the input arguments, excluding the class name or the literal 'like' and the object variable to your method. This enables you to implement your methods with signatures like these:
Class Support for Array-Creation Functions

- `zeros(varargin)` for “class name” methods
- `zeros(obj,varargin)` for “like prototype object” methods

Sample Class

The `Color` class represents a color in a specific color space, such as RGB, HSV, and so on. The discussions in “Class Name Method Implementations” on page 9-33 and “Prototype Object Method Implementation” on page 9-35 use this class as a basis for the overloaded method implementations.

```matlab
classdef Color
    properties
        ColorValues = [0,0,0];
        ColorSpace = 'RGB';
    end
    methods
        function obj = Color(cSpace,values)
            if nargin > 0
                obj.ColorSpace = cSpace;
                obj.ColorValues = values;
            end
        end
    end
end
```

Class Name Method Implementations

The `zeros` function strips the final `ClassName` string and uses it to form the call to the static method in the `Color` class. The arguments passed to the static method are the array dimension arguments.

Here is an implementation of a `zeros` method for the `Color` class. This implementation:

- Defines the `zeros` method as `Static` (required)
- Returns a scalar `Color` object if the call to `zeros` has no dimension arguments
- Returns an empty array if the call to `zeros` has any dimensions arguments equal to 0.
- Returns an array of default `Color` objects. Use `repmat` to create an array of the dimensions specified by the call to `zeros`.

```matlab
classdef Color
    ...
The `zeros` method uses default values for the `ColorValues` property because these values are appropriate for this application. An implementation of a `ones` method can set the `ColorValues` property to `[1,1,1]`, for example.

Suppose you want to overload the `randi` function to achieve the following objectives:

- Define each `ColorValue` property as a 1-by-3 array in the range of 1 to a specified maximum value (for example, 1 to 255).
- Accommodate scalar, empty, and multidimensional array sizes.
- Return an array of `Color` objects of the specified dimensions, each with random `ColorValues`.

```matlab
classdef Color
    ...
    methods (Static)
        function r = randi(varargin)
            if (nargin == 0)
                % For randi('ClassName')
                r = Color('RGB',randi(255,[1,3]));
            elseif any([varargin{2:end}] <= 0)
                % For randi with any dimension <= 0
                r = Color.empty(varargin{2:end});
            else
                % For randi(max,m,n,...,'ClassName')
                if numel(varargin{2:end}) < 2
                    error('Not enough input arguments')
                else
                    % Use property default values
                    z = repmat(Color,varargin{:});
                end
            end
        end
    end
end
```
Prototype Object Method Implementation

The objective of a method that returns an array of objects that are “like a prototype object” depends on the requirements of the class. For the Color class, the zeroLike method creates objects that have the ColorSpace property value of the prototype object, but the ColorValues are all zero.

Here is an implementation of a zerosLike method for the Color class. This implementation:

• Defines the zerosLike method as Hidden
• Returns a scalar Color object if the call to the zeros function has no dimension arguments
• Returns an empty array if the call to the zeros function has any dimension arguments that are negative or equal to 0.
• Returns an array of Color objects of the dimensions specified by the call to the zeros function.

```matlab
classdef Color
    ...
    methods (Hidden)
        function z = zerosLike(obj,varargin)
            if nargin == 1
                % For zeros('like',obj)
                cSpace = obj.ColorSpace;
                z = Color;
                z.ColorSpace = cSpace;
            elseif any([varargin{:}] <= 0)
                % For zeros with any dimension <= 0
                z = Color.empty(varargin{:});
            else
                % For zeros(m,n,...,'like',obj)
```
if ~isscalar(obj)
    error('Prototype object must be scalar')
end
obj = Color(obj.ColorSpace,zeros(1,3,'like',obj.ColorValues));
z = repmat(obj,varargin{:});
end
end
end

Full Class Listing

Here is the Color class definition with the overloaded methods.

Note: In actual practice, the Color class requires error checking, color space conversions, and so on. This overly simplified version illustrates the implementation of the overloaded methods.

classdef Color
    properties
        ColorValues = [0,0,0];
        ColorSpace = 'RGB';
    end
    methods
        function obj = Color(cSpace,values)
            if nargin > 0
                obj.ColorSpace = cSpace;
                obj.ColorValues = values;
            end
        end
    end
    methods (Static)
        function z = zeros(varargin)
            if (nargin == 0)
                % For zeros('ClassName')
                z = Color;
            elseif any(varargin{:}) <= 0
                % For zeros with any dimension <= 0
                z = Color.empty(varargin{:});
            else
                % For zeros(m,n,...,'ClassName')
                % Use property default values
            end
        end
    end
end
z = repmat(Color,varargin{:});
end
end
function r = randi(varargin)
  if (nargin == 0)
    % For randi('ClassName')
    r = Color('RGB',randi(255,[1,3]));
  elseif any([varargin{2:end}] <= 0)
    % For randi with any dimension <= 0
    r = Color.empty(varargin{2:end});
  else
    % For randi(max,m,n,...,'ClassName')
    if numel([varargin{:}]) < 2
      error('Not enough input arguments')
    end
    dims = [varargin{2:end}];
    r = zeros(dims,'Color');
    for k = 1:prod(dims)
      r(k) = Color('RGB',randi(varargin{1},[1,3]));
    end
  end
end
end
methods (Hidden)
function z = zerosLike(obj,varargin)
  if nargin == 1
    % For zeros('like',obj)
    cSpace = obj.ColorSpace;
    z = Color;
    z.ColorSpace = cSpace;
  elseif any([varargin{:}] <= 0)
    % For zeros with any dimension <= 0
    z = Color.empty(varargin{:});
  else
    % For zeros(m,n,...,'like',obj)
    if ~isscalar(obj)
      error('Prototype object must be scalar')
    end
    obj = Color(obj.ColorSpace,zeros(1,3,'like',obj.ColorValues));
    z = repmat(obj,varargin{:});
  end
end
end
end
Object Precedence in Methods

Establishing an object precedence enables the MATLAB runtime to determine which of possibly many versions of an operator or function to call in a given situation.

For example, consider the expression

\[ \text{objectA} + \text{objectB} \]

Ordinarily, objects have equal precedence and the method associated with the left-most object is called. However, there are two exceptions:

- User-defined classes have precedence over MATLAB fundamental classes (see “Fundamental MATLAB Classes”) and certain built-in classes.
- User-defined classes can specify their relative precedence with respect to other user-defined classes using the \text{InferiorClasses} attribute.

In “Class Design for Polynomials” on page 19-2, the \text{polynom} class defines a \text{plus} method that enables the addition of \text{DocPolynom} objects. Given the object \text{p}:

\begin{verbatim}
p = DocPolynom([1 0 -2 -5])
p =
x^3-2x-5
\end{verbatim}

the expression:

\begin{verbatim}
1 + p
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
an =
x^3-2x-4
\end{verbatim}

calls the \text{DocPolynom plus} method (which converts the \text{double}, 1, to a \text{DocPolynom} object and then implements the addition of two polynomials). The user-defined \text{DocPolynom} class has precedence over the built-in \text{double} class.

Specifying Precedence of User-Defined Classes

You can specify the relative precedence of user-defined classes by listing inferior classes using a class attribute. The \text{InferiorClasses} property places a class below other classes in the precedence hierarchy. Define the \text{InferiorClasses} property in the \text{classdef} statement:

\begin{verbatim}
classdef (InferiorClasses = {?class1,?class2}) myClass
\end{verbatim}
This attribute establishes a relative priority of the class being defined with the order of the classes listed.

**Location in the Hierarchy**

If `objectA` is above `objectB` in the precedence hierarchy, then the expression

\[
objectA + objectB
\]

calls `@classA/plus.m`. Conversely, if `objectB` is above `objectA` in the precedence hierarchy, then the MATLAB runtime calls `@classB/plus.m`.

**More About**

- “Rules for Naming to Avoid Conflicts” on page 9-28
Dominant Argument in Overloaded Graphics Functions

In this section...

“Graphics Object Precedence” on page 9-40
“Dominant Argument” on page 9-40
“Defining Class Precedence” on page 9-40
“Calls to Inferior-Class Methods” on page 9-42

Graphics Object Precedence

MATLAB graphics objects have the same precedence as user-defined objects. If you want to implement a method that accepts a graphics object as its first argument (for example, an axes handle), define the MATLAB graphics class as inferior to your class.

Dominant Argument

When evaluating expression involving objects of more than one class, MATLAB uses the dominant argument to determine which method or function to call.

Here is how MATLAB dispatches in response to a function call:

• Determine the dominant argument based on the class of arguments.
• If there is a dominant argument, call the method of the dominant class.
• If arguments are of equal precedence, use the left-most argument as the dominant argument.
• If the class of the dominant argument does not define a method with the name of the called function, call the first function on the path with that name.

Defining Class Precedence

Specify the relative precedence of MATLAB classes using the InferiorClasses class attribute. Here is the basic syntax:

classdef (InferiorClasses = {?class1,?class2}) ClassName

The following definition of the TemperatureData class implements a specialized version of plot to graph temperature data. The class plot method supports a variable number of input arguments to allow an axes handle as the first argument:
plot(obj)
plot(ax,obj)

obj is an instance of the TemperatureData class and ax is an axes handle.

MATLAB calls the plot method in both cases because the TemperatureData class specifies the matlab.graphics.axis.Axes as inferior.

classdef (InferiorClasses = {?matlab.graphics.axis.Axes}) TemperatureData
    properties
        Time
        Temperature
    end
    methods
        function obj = TemperatureData(x,y)
            obj.Time = x;
            obj.Temperature = y;
        end
        function plot(varargin)
            if nargin == 1
                obj = varargin{1};
                plot(obj.Time,obj.Temperature)
            elseif nargin == 2
                ax = varargin{1};
                obj = varargin{2};
                plot(ax,obj.Time,obj.Temperature)
            elseif nargin > 2
                ax = varargin{1};
                obj = varargin{2};
                plot(ax,obj.Time,obj.Temperature,varargin{3:end})
            end
            datetick('x')
            xlabel('Time')
            ylabel('Temperature')
        end
    end
end

The following call to plot dispatches to the TemperatureData plot method, not the built-in plot function, because the TemperatureData object is dominant over the axes object.

x = 1:10;
y = rand(1,10)*100;
```
ax = axes;
td = TemperatureData(x,y);
plot(ax,td)
```

## Calls to Inferior-Class Methods

When you declare a class as inferior to your class, and both classes define a method with the same name, MATLAB dispatches to your class method regardless of argument order.

Suppose the `TemperatureData` class that is described in the previous section defines a `set` method. If you attempt to assign an object of the `TemperatureData` class to the `UserData` property of an axes object:

```matlab
td = TemperatureData(x,y);
set(gca,'UserData',td)
```

The results is a call to the `TemperatureData set` method. MATLAB does not call the built-in `set` function.

To support the use of a `set` function with inferior classes, implement a `set` method in your class that calls the built-in `set` function when the first argument is an object of the inferior class.

```matlab
function set(varargin)
    if isa(varargin{1},'matlab.graphics.axis.Axes')
        builtin('set',varargin{:})
    else
        ...
    end
end
```

## More About

- “Object Precedence in Methods” on page 9-38
Class Methods for Graphics Callbacks

In this section...

“Referencing the Method” on page 9-43
“Syntax for Method Callbacks” on page 9-43
“How to Use a Class Method for a Slider Callback” on page 9-44

Referencing the Method

To use an ordinary class method as callback for a graphics object, specify the callback property as a function handle referencing the method. For example,

```
ucicontrol('Style','slider','Callback',@obj.sliderCallback)
```

Where your class defines a method called `sliderCallback` and `obj` is an instance of your class.

To use a static methods as a callback, specify the callback property as a function handle that includes the class name that is required to refer to a static method:

```
ucicontrol('Style','slider','Callback',@MyClass.sliderCallback)
```

Syntax for Method Callbacks

For ordinary methods, use dot notation to pass an instance of the class defining the callback as the first argument:

```
@obj.methodName
```

Define the callback method with the following input arguments:

- An instance of the defining class as the first argument
- The event source handle
- The event data

The function signature would be of this form:

```
function methodName(obj,src,eventData)
    ...
end
```
For static methods, the required class name ensures MATLAB dispatches to the method of the specified class:

@MyClass.methodName

Define the static callback method with two input arguments — the event source handle and the event data

The function signature would be of this form:

function methodName(src, eventData)

Passing Additional Arguments

If you want to pass arguments to your callback in addition to the source and event data arguments passed by MATLAB, you can use an anonymous function. The basic syntax for an anonymous function that you assign to the graphic object's Callback property includes the object as the first argument:

@(src, event)callbackMethod(object, src, eventData, arg1, ... argn)

The function signature would be of this form:

function methodName(obj, src, eventData, varargin)
    ...
end

How to Use a Class Method for a Slider Callback

This example shows how to use a method of your class as a callback for a uicontrol slider.

The SeaLevelSlider class creates a slider that varies the color limits of an indexed image to give the illusion of varying the sea level.

Class Definition

Define SeaLevelSlider as a handle class with the following members:

- The class properties store figure and axes handles and the calculated color limits.
- The class constructor creates the graphics objects and assigns the slider callback.
- The callback function for the slider accepts the three required arguments — a class instance, the handle of the event source, and the event data. The event data argument is empty and not used.
• The uicontrol callback uses dot notation to reference the callback method:
  
  \[ \text{...'Callback',@obj.sliderCallback}. \]

```matlab
classdef SeaLevelSlider < handle
  properties
    Figure
    Axes
    CLimit
  end

  methods
    function obj = SeaLevelSlider(x,map)
      obj.Figure = figure('Colormap',map,...
        'Position',[100,100,560,580],...
        'Resize','off');
      obj.Axes = axes('DataAspectRatio',[1,1,1],...
        'XLimMode','manual','YLimMode','manual',...
        'Parent',obj.Figure);
      image(x,'CDataMapping','scaled',...
        'Parent',obj.Axes);
      obj.CLimit = get(obj.Axes,'CLim');
      uicontrol('Style','slider',...
        'Parent',obj.Figure,...
        'Max',obj.CLimit(2)-10,...
        'Min',obj.CLimit(1)-1,...
        'Value',obj.CLimit(1),...
        'Units','normalized',...
        'Position',[0.9286,0.1724,0.0357,0.6897],...
        'SliderStep',[0.003,0.005],...
        'Callback',@obj.sliderCallback);
    end

    function sliderCallback(obj,src,-)
      minVal = get(src,'Value');
      maxVal = obj.CLimit(2);
      obj.Axes.CLim = [minVal maxVal];
    end
  end
end
```

**Using the SeaLevelAdjuster Class**

The class is designed to be used with the `cape` image that is included with the MATLAB product. To obtain the image data, use the `load` command:
load cape X map

After loading the data, create a SeaLevelSlider object for the image:

slaObj = SeaLevelSlider(X,map);

Move the slider to change the color mapping and visualize a rise in sea level.

More About

• “Listener Callback Syntax” on page 11-26
Object Arrays

- “Create Object Arrays” on page 10-2
- “Initialize Object Arrays” on page 10-5
- “Empty Arrays” on page 10-8
- “Initialize Arrays of Handle Objects” on page 10-10
- “Object Arrays with Dynamic Properties” on page 10-13
- “Concatenating Objects of Different Classes” on page 10-15
- “Heterogeneous Arrays” on page 10-21
Create Object Arrays

In this section...

“Basic Knowledge” on page 10-2
“Build Arrays in the Constructor” on page 10-2
“Referencing Property Values in Object Arrays” on page 10-3
“Related Information” on page 10-4

Basic Knowledge

The material presented in this section builds on an understanding of the information presented in the following sections.

Class Definitions

• “Class Components” on page 5-5
• “Class Constructor Methods” on page 9-16

Working with Arrays

• “Matrix Indexing”
• “Empty Matrices, Scalars, and Vectors”
• “Multidimensional Arrays”

Build Arrays in the Constructor

A class constructor can create an array by building the array and returning it as the output argument.

For example, the ObjectArray class creates an object array that is the same size as the input array. Then it initializes the Value property of each object to the corresponding input array value.

```matlab
classdef ObjectArray
    properties
        Value
    end
    methods
```
function obj = ObjectArray(F)
    if nargin ~= 0
        m = size(F,1);
        n = size(F,2);
        obj(m,n) = ObjectArray;
        for i = 1:m
            for j = 1:n
                obj(i,j).Value = F(i,j);
            end
        end
    end
end
end
end
end

To preallocate the object array, assign the last element of the array first. MATLAB fills the first to penultimate array elements with default ObjectArray objects.

After preallocating the array, assign each object Value property to the corresponding value in the input array F. To use the class:

- Create 5-by-5 array of magic square numbers
- Create a 5-by-5 object array

F = magic(5);
A = ObjectArray(F);
whos

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Size</th>
<th>Bytes</th>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Attributes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>5x5</td>
<td>304</td>
<td>ObjectArray</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>5x5</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>double</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Referencing Property Values in Object Arrays

Reference all values of the same property in an object array using the syntax:

objcarray.PropName

For example, given the ObjProp class:

classdef ObjProp
    properties
        RegProp
end
Object Arrays

```matlab
end
methods
  function obj = ObjProp
    obj.RegProp = randi(100);
  end
end
end

Create an array of ObjProp objects and access the RegProp property of each object:

```matlab
for k = 1:5
    a(k) = ObjProp;
end
```

Assign the property values to a numeric array:

```matlab
PropArray = [a.RegProp]
```

```matlab
PropArray =
    82   91   13   92   64
```

```matlab
size(PropArray)
```

```matlab
ans =
    1     5
```

Index the array to access specific values. For example, to access the second array element, use,

```matlab
PropArray(2)
```

```matlab
ans =
    91
```

**Related Information**

For information on array initialization, see “Initialize Object Arrays” on page 10-5.

For information specific to initialization of handle array, see “Initialize Arrays of Handle Objects” on page 10-10.
Initialize Object Arrays

In this section...

“Calls to Constructor” on page 10-5
“Initial Value of Object Properties” on page 10-6

Calls to Constructor

During the creation of object arrays, MATLAB can call the class constructor with no arguments, even if the constructor does not build an object array. For example, suppose that you define the following class:

```matlab
classdef SimpleValue
    properties
        Value
    end
    methods
        function obj = SimpleValue(v)
            obj.Value = v;
        end
    end
end
```

Execute the following statement to create an array:

```matlab
a(1,7) = SimpleValue(7)
```

Error using SimpleValue (line 7)
Not enough input arguments.

This error occurs because MATLAB calls the constructor with no arguments to initialize elements 1 through 6 in the array.

Your class must support the no input argument constructor syntax. A simple solution is to test `nargin` and let the case when `nargin == 0` execute no code, but not error:

```matlab
classdef SimpleValue
    properties
        Value
    end
    methods
        function obj = SimpleValue(v)
            obj.Value = v;
        end
    end
end
```
if nargin > 0
    obj.Value = v;
end
end

Using the revised class definition, the previous array assignment statement executes without error:

\[
a(1,7) = \text{SimpleValue}(7)
\]

\[
a =
\]

\[
1x7 \text{ SimpleValue array with properties:}
\]

\[
\text{Value}
\]

The object assigned to array element \(a(1,7)\) uses the input argument passed to the constructor as the value assigned to the property:

\[
a(1,7)
\]

\[
\text{ans =}
\]

\[
\text{SimpleValue with properties:}
\]

\[
\text{Value: 7}
\]

MATLAB created the objects contained in elements \(a(1,1:6)\) with no input argument. The default value for properties empty \([\,]\). For example:

\[
a(1,1)
\]

\[
\text{ans =}
\]

\[
\text{SimpleValue with properties:}
\]

\[
\text{Value: } [\,]
\]

MATLAB calls the \texttt{SimpleValue} constructor once and copies the returned object to each element of the array.

**Initial Value of Object Properties**

When MATLAB calls a constructor with no arguments to initialize an object array, one of the following assignments occurs:
- If property definitions specify default values, MATLAB assigns these values.
- If the constructor assigns values in the absence of input arguments, MATLAB assigns these values.
- If neither of the preceding situations apply, MATLAB assigns the value of empty double (that is, [ ]) to the property.

**Related Examples**
- “Initialize Arrays of Handle Objects” on page 10-10
Empty Arrays

In this section...

“Creating Empty Arrays” on page 10-8
“Assigning Values to an Empty Array” on page 10-8

Creating Empty Arrays

Empty arrays have no elements, but are of a certain class. All nonabstract classes have a static method named empty that creates an empty array of the same class. The empty method enables you to specify the dimensions of the output array. However, at least one of the dimensions must be 0. For example:

ary = SimpleValue.empty(5,0);

creates a 5–by–0 empty array of class SimpleValue.

Calling empty with no arguments returns a 0–by–0 empty array.

Assigning Values to an Empty Array

An empty object defines the class of an array. To assign nonempty objects to an empty array, MATLAB calls the class constructor to create default instances of the class for every other array element. Once you assign a nonempty object to an array, all array elements must be nonempty objects.

Note: A class constructor must avoid returning empty objects by default.

For example, using the SimpleValue defined in the “Initialize Object Arrays” on page 10-5 section, create an empty array:

ary = SimpleValue.empty(5,0);
class(ary)

ans =

SimpleValue
ary is an array of class SimpleValue. However, it is an empty array:

```matlab
going(1)
Index exceeds matrix dimensions.
```

If you make an assignment to a property value, MATLAB calls the SimpleClass constructor to grow the array to the require size:

```matlab
ary(5).Value = 7;
ary(5).Value
ans =
 7
ary(1).Value
ans =
[]
```

MATLAB populates array elements one through five with SimpleValue objects created by calling the class constructor with no arguments. Then MATLAB assigns the property value 7 to the object at ary(5).

**Related Examples**

- “Initialize Arrays of Handle Objects” on page 10-10
Initialize Arrays of Handle Objects

When initializing an array of handle objects, MATLAB:

- Calls the class constructor once to obtain an object
- Creates unique handles for each element in the array
- Copies the property values from the constructed object without calling the constructor again.

The `InitHandleArray` class illustrates this behavior.

```matlab
classdef InitHandleArray < handle
    properties
        RandNumb
    end
    methods
        function obj = InitHandleArray
            obj.RandNumb = randi(100);
        end
    end
end
```

The property `RandNumb` contains a random number that the `InitHandleArray` constructor assigns.

Consider what happens when MATLAB initialize an array by first assigning to the last element in the array. (The last element is the one with the highest index values). For example, suppose the value of the `RandNumb` property of the `InitHandleArray` object assigned to the element `A(4,5)` is 59:

```matlab
A(4,5) = InitHandleArray;
A(4,5).RandNumb

ans =

59
```

The element in the index location `A(4,5)` is an instance of the `InitHandleArray` class. Element `A(1,1)` is also an instance of the `InitHandleArray` class, but its `RandNumb` property is set to a different random number. MATLAB called the class constructor to create a single object, which MATLAB then copied to all the remaining array elements. Calling the constructor resulted in another call to the `randi` function, which returns a new random number:
A(1,1).RandNumb
ans =
 10
MATLAB copies this second instance to all remaining array elements:
A(2,2).RandNumb
ans =
 10
A(2,3).RandNumb
ans =
 10
When initializing an object array, MATLAB assigns a copy of a single object to the empty
elements in the array. MATLAB gives each object a unique handle so that later you can
assign different property values to each object. The objects are not equivalent:
A(1,1) == A(2,2)
ans =
 0
That is, the handle A(1,1) does not refer to the same object as A(2,2). The creation of
an array with a statement such as:
A(4,5) = InitHandleArray;
results in two calls to the class constructor. The first creates the object for array element
A(4,5). The second creates a default object that MATLAB copies to all remaining empty
array elements.

**Related Information**

See “Indexing Multidimensional Arrays” and “Reshaping Multidimensional Arrays” for
information on array manipulation.
See “Initialize Properties to Unique Values” on page 5-14 for information on assigning values to properties.

See “Object Array Indexing” on page 17-14 for information on implementing `subsasgn` methods for your class.
Object Arrays with Dynamic Properties

You cannot reference all the dynamic properties in an object array using a single statement, as you can with ordinary properties. For example, suppose the ObjectArrayDynamic class subclasses the dynamicprops class, which enables you to add properties to objects of the ObjectArrayDynamic class:

```matlab
classdef ObjectArrayDynamic < dynamicprops
    properties
        RegProp
    end
    methods
        function obj = ObjectArrayDynamic
            obj.RegProp = randi(100);
        end
    end
end
```

Create an object array and add dynamic properties to each member of the array.

Define elements 1 and 2 as ObjectArrayDynamic objects:

```matlab
    a(1) = ObjectArrayDynamic;
    a(2) = ObjectArrayDynamic;
```

Add dynamic properties to each object and assign a value

```matlab
    a(1).addprop('DynoProp');
    a(1).DynoProp = 1;
    a(2).addprop('DynoProp');
    a(2).DynoProp = 2;
```

Get the values of the ordinary properties, as with any array:

```matlab
    a.RegProp
```

```matlab
    ans =
        4
```

```matlab
    ans =
        85
```
MATLAB returns an error if you try to access the dynamic properties of all array elements using this syntax.

```matlab
a.DynoProp
```

No appropriate method, property, or field 'DynoProp' for class 'ObjectArrayDynamic'.

Refer to each object individually to access dynamic property values:

```matlab
a(1).DynoProp
ans =
   1

a(2).DynoProp
ans =
   2
```

For information about classes that can define dynamic properties, see “Dynamic Properties — Adding Properties to an Instance” on page 8-30.
Concatenating Objects of Different Classes

In this section...

“Basic Knowledge” on page 10-15
“MATLAB Concatenation Rules” on page 10-15
“Concatenating Objects” on page 10-16
“Calling the Dominant-Class Constructor” on page 10-16
“Converter Methods” on page 10-18

Basic Knowledge

The material presented in this section builds on an understanding of the information presented in the following sections.

• “Create Object Arrays” on page 10-2
• “Valid Combinations of Unlike Classes”

MATLAB Concatenation Rules

MATLAB follows these rules for concatenating objects:

• MATLAB always attempts to convert all objects to the dominant class.
• User-defined classes take precedence over built-in classes like double.
• If there is no defined dominance relationship between any two objects, then the leftmost object dominates (see “Class Precedence” on page 6-19).

When converting to a dominant class during concatenation or subscripted assignment, MATLAB searches the non-dominant class for a conversion method that is the same name as the dominant class. If such a conversion method exists, MATLAB calls it. If a conversion method does not exist, MATLAB calls the dominant class constructor on the non-dominant object.

It is possible for the dominant class to define horzcat, vertcat, or cat methods that modify the default concatenation process.

10-15
**Note:** MATLAB does not convert objects to a common superclass unless those objects are part of a heterogeneous hierarchy. For more information, see “Heterogeneous Arrays” on page 10-21.

### Concatenating Objects

Concatenation combines objects into arrays:

```matlab
ary = [obj1, obj2, obj3, ..., objn];
```

The size of `ary` is 1-by-n.

```matlab
ary = [obj1; obj2; obj3; ...; objn];
```

The size of `ary` is n-by-1.

The class of the arrays is the same as the class of the objects being concatenated. Concatenating objects of different classes is possible if MATLAB can convert objects to the dominant class. MATLAB attempts to convert unlike objects by:

- Calling the inferior object converter method, if one exists.
- Passing an inferior object to the dominant class constructor to create an object of the dominant class.

If conversion of the inferior object is successful, MATLAB returns an array that is of the dominant class. If conversion is not possible, MATLAB returns an error.

### Calling the Dominant-Class Constructor

MATLAB calls the dominant class constructor to convert an object of an inferior class to the dominant class. MATLAB passes the inferior object to the constructor as an argument. If the class design enables the dominant class constructor to accept objects of inferior classes as input arguments, then concatenation is possible without implementing a separate converter method.

If the constructor simply assigns this argument to a property, the result is an object of the dominant class with an object of an inferior class stored in a property. If this assignment is not a desired result, then ensure that class constructors include adequate error checking.
For example, consider the class `ColorClass` and two subclasses, `RGBColor` and `HSVColor`:

```matlab
classdef ColorClass
    properties
        Color
    end
end
```

The class `RGBColor` inherits the `Color` property from `ColorClass`. `RGBColor` stores a color value defined as a three-element vector of red, green, and blue (RGB) values. The constructor does not restrict the value of the input argument. It assigns this value directly to the `Color` property.

```matlab
classdef RGBColor < ColorClass
    methods
        function obj = RGBColor(rgb)
            if nargin > 0
                obj.Color = rgb;
            end
        end
    end
end
```

The class `HSVColor` also inherits the `Color` property from `ColorClass`. `HSVColor` stores a color value defined as a three-element vector of hue, saturation, brightness value (HSV) values.

```matlab
classdef HSVColor < ColorClass
    methods
        function obj = HSVColor(hsv)
            if nargin > 0
                obj.Color = hsv;
            end
        end
    end
end
```

Create an instance of each class and concatenate them into an array. The `RGBColor` object is dominant because it is the leftmost object and neither class defines a dominance relationship:

```matlab
crgb = RGBColor([1 0 0]);
chsv = HSVColor([0 1 1]);
```
ary = [crgb,chsv];
class(ary)
ans =
RGBColor

You can combine these objects into an array because MATLAB can pass the inferior object of class HSVColor to the constructor of the dominant class. However, notice that the Color property of the second RGBColor object in the array actually contains an HSVColor object, not an RGB color specification:

ary(2).Color
ans =

HSVColor with properties:
    Color: [0 1 1]

Avoid this undesirable behavior by:
• Implementing converter methods
• Performing argument checking in class constructors before assigning values to properties

Converter Methods

If your class design requires object conversion, implement converter methods for this purpose.

The ColorClass class defines converter methods for RGBColor and HSVColor objects:

classdef ColorClass
    properties
        Color
    end
    methods
        function rgbObj = RGBColor(obj)
            if isa(obj,'HSVColor')
                rgbObj = RGBColor(hsv2rgb(obj.Color));
            end
        end
end
function hsvObj = HSVColor(obj)
    if isa(obj,'RGBColor')
        hsvObj = HSVColor(rgb2hsv(obj.Color));
    end
end
end

Create an array of RGBColor and HSVColor objects with the revised superclass:

crgb = RGBColor([1 0 0]);
chsv = HSVColor([0 1 1]);
ary = [crgb,chsv];
class(ary)

ans =
RGBColor

MATLAB calls the converter method for the HSVColor object, which it inherits from the superclass. The second array element is now an RGBColor object with an RGB color specification assigned to the Color property:

ary(2)

ans =

    RGBColor with properties:

    Color: [1 0 0]

ary(2).Color
ans =

1     0     0

If the leftmost object is of class HSVColor, the array ary is also of class HSVColor, and MATLAB converts the Color property data to HSV color specification.

ary = [chsv crgb]
ary =

1x2 HSVColor
Properties:
  Color

ary(2).Color

ans =

    0     1     1

Defining a converter method in the superclass and adding better argument checking in the subclass constructors produces more predictable results. Here is the RGBColor class constructor with argument checking:

```matlab
classdef RGBColor < ColorClass
  methods
    function obj = RGBColor(rgb)
      if nargin == 0
        rgb = [0 0 0];
      else
        if ~(isa(rgb, 'double') && size(rgb, 2) == 3 && max(rgb) <= 1 && min(rgb) >= 0)
          error('Specify color as RGB values')
        end
      end
      obj.Color = rgb;
    end
  end
end
```

Your applications can require additional error checking and other coding techniques. The classes in these examples are designed only to demonstrate concepts.

**More About**
- “Object Converters” on page 17-11
- “Hierarchies of Classes — Concepts” on page 12-2
Heterogeneous Arrays

MATLAB Arrays

MATLAB determines the class of an array by the class of the objects contained in the array. MATLAB is unlike some languages in which you define an array of object pointers or references. In these other languages, the type of the array is different from the type of an object in the array. You can access the elements of the array and dispatch to methods on those elements, but you cannot call an object method on the whole array, like you can in MATLAB.

Object arrays in MATLAB are usually homogeneous in class. Because of this homogeneity, you can perform operations on whole arrays, such as multiplying numeric matrices. Cell arrays provide an array type that can hold different kinds of unrelated objects.

Heterogeneous Hierarchies

You can combine objects that are subclasses of a common superclass when these classes are part of a heterogeneous hierarchy. A MATLAB heterogeneous class hierarchy:

- Derives from `matlab.mixin.Heterogeneous`
- Defines a single root superclass that derives directly from `matlab.mixin.Heterogeneous`
• Seals methods that are inherited by subclasses.

For example, in the following diagram, Shape is the root of the heterogeneous hierarchy.

![Heterogeneous Array Diagram](image)

**Heterogeneous Arrays**

A heterogeneous array is an array of objects that differ in their specific class, but all objects derive from or are instances of a common superclass. The common superclass forms the root of the hierarchy of classes that you can combine into heterogeneous arrays.

The common superclass class must derive from matlab.mixin.Heterogeneous. Methods that you can call on the array as a whole must have the same definitions for all subclasses.

Heterogeneous hierarchies are useful to:

• Create arrays of objects that are of different classes, but part of a related hierarchy.
• Call methods of the most specific common superclass on the array as a whole
• Access properties of the most specific common superclass using dot notation with the array
• Use common operators that are supported for object arrays
• Support array indexing (scalar or nonscalar) that returns arrays of the most specific class

**Heterogeneous Array Concepts**
• Heterogeneous array — An array in which two or more elements belong to different specific classes. All elements derive from the same root superclass.

• Root superclass — Class derived directly from `matlab.mixin.Heterogeneous`. The root superclass can be abstract or concrete. Only concrete subclasses of the root superclass can form heterogeneous arrays.

• Most specific common superclass — The most specific class in the inheritance hierarchy from which all of the objects in a heterogeneous array derive. The most specific common superclass can be the root superclass or a more specific superclass shared by the objects currently in the array.

• Class of a heterogeneous array — The most specific common superclass from which all objects in the heterogeneous array derive. Adding and removing objects from a heterogeneous array can change the most specific superclass shared by the instances. This change results in a change in the class of a heterogeneous array. The most specific common superclass can be abstract.

### Nature of Heterogeneous Arrays

The heterogeneous hierarchy in this diagram illustrates the characteristics of heterogeneous arrays concerning:

• Array class
• Property access
• Method invocation
Class of Heterogeneous Arrays

The class of a heterogeneous array is that of the most specific superclass shared by the objects of the array.

If the following conditions are true, the concatenation and subscripted assignment operations return a heterogeneous array:

- The objects on the right side of the assignment statement are of different classes
- All objects on the right side of the assignment statement derive from a common subclass of `matlab.mixin.Heterogeneous`

For example, form an array by concatenating objects of these classes. The class of `a1` is `ClassA`:

```matlab
a1 = [SpecificA,SpecificB];
```
class(a1)
ans =
ClassA

If the array includes an object of the class SpecificC, the class of a2 is RootSuperclass:

a2 = [SpecificA,SpecificB,SpecificC];
class(a2)
ans =
RootSuperclass

If you assigned an object of the class SpecificC to array a1 using indexing, the class of a1 becomes RootSuperclass:

a1(3) = SpecificC;
class(a1)
ans =
RootSuperclass

If the array contains objects of only one class, then the array is not heterogeneous. For example, the class of a is SpecificA.

a = [SpecificA,SpecificA];
class(a)
ans =
SpecificA

**Property Access**

Access array properties with dot notation when the class of the array defines the properties. The class of the array is the most specific common superclass, which ensures all objects inherit the same properties.

For example, suppose ClassA defines a property called Prop1.
a1 = [SpecificA, SpecificB];
a1.Prop1

Referring to Prop1 using dot notation returns the value of Prop1 for each object in the array.

**Method Invocation**

To invoke a method on a heterogeneous array, the class of the array must define or inherit the method as **Sealed**. For example, suppose RootSuperclass defines a Sealed method called superMethod.

Call the method on all objects in the array a2:

a2 = [SpecificA, SpecificB, SpecificC];
a2.superMethod

Sealing the method (so that it cannot be overridden in a subclass) ensures that the same method definition exists for all elements of the array. Calling that method on a single element of the array invokes the same method implementation as calling the method on the whole array.

**Unsupported Hierarchies**

Heterogeneous hierarchies cannot have ambiguities when obtaining default objects, determining the class of the array, and converting class objects to other types. Members of the hierarchy can derive from only one root superclass (that is, from only one direct subclass of matlab.mixin.Heterogeneous).

This diagram shows a hierarchy that is not allowed:
**ClassA** derives from two classes that are subclasses of `matlab.mixin.Heterogeneous`.

The next diagram shows two separate heterogeneous hierarchies. **ClassA** has only one root superclass (called `OtherBaseClass`). The heterogeneous hierarchy is no longer ambiguous:
Default Object

A default object is the object returned by calling the class constructor with no arguments. MATLAB uses default objects in these situations:

- Indexed assignment creates an array with gaps in array elements. For example, assign the first element of array \( h \) to index 5:

  \[
  h(5) = \text{ClassA}(\text{arg1}, \text{arg2});
  \]

  MATLAB fills the unassigned positions with default objects.

- Loading a heterogeneous array from a MAT-file when the class definition of a specific object in the array is not available. MATLAB replaces the object with the default object.
Heterogeneous hierarchies enable you to define the default object for that hierarchy. The `matlab.mixin.Heterogeneous` class provides a default implementation of a method called `getDefaultScalarElement`. This method returns an instance of the root class of the heterogeneous hierarchy, unless the root superclass is abstract.

If the root superclass is abstract or is not appropriate for a default object, override the `getDefaultScalarElement` method. Implement the `getDefaultScalarElement` override in the root superclass, which derives directly from `matlab.mixin.Heterogeneous`.

`getDefaultScalarElement` must return a scalar object that is derived from the root superclass. For specific information on how to implement this method, see `getDefaultScalarElement`.

**Conversion During Assignment and Concatenation**

If you create a heterogeneous array that contains objects that are not derived from the same root superclass, MATLAB attempts to call a method called `convertObject`. Implement `convertObject` to convert objects to the appropriate class. There is no default implementation of this method.

To support the formation of heterogeneous arrays using objects that are not part of the heterogeneous hierarchy, implement a `convertObject` method in the root superclass. The `convertObject` method must convert the nonmember object to a valid member of the heterogeneous hierarchy.

For details on implementing the `convertObject` method, see `matlab.mixin.Heterogeneous`.

**Empty Arrays of Heterogeneous Abstract Classes**

For homogeneous arrays, MATLAB does not allow you to initialize an empty array of an abstract class. However, if the class is part of a heterogeneous hierarchy, you can initialize empty arrays of an abstract class. Initializing an empty heterogeneous array is useful in cases in which you do not know the class of the concrete elements in advance.

For example, suppose `RootSuperclass` is an abstract class that is the root of a heterogeneous hierarchy. Initialize an array using the `empty` static method:

```matlab
ary = RootSuperclass.empty;
```
Related Examples

• “Handle-Compatible Classes and Heterogeneous Arrays” on page 12-42
Events — Sending and Responding to Messages

- “Learn to Use Events and Listeners” on page 11-2
- “Property Set Listener” on page 11-9
- “Events and Listeners — Concepts” on page 11-12
- “Event Attributes” on page 11-17
- “Events and Listeners — Syntax and Techniques” on page 11-19
- “Listener Lifecycle” on page 11-23
- “Listener Callback Syntax” on page 11-26
- “Callback Execution” on page 11-29
- “Listen for Changes to Property Values” on page 11-31
- “Update Graphs Using Events and Listeners” on page 11-38
Learn to Use Events and Listeners

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>In this section...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>“Why Use Events and Listeners” on page 11-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Events and Listeners Basics” on page 11-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Events and Listeners Syntax Overview” on page 11-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Class with Custom Event Data” on page 11-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Class to Observe Property Changes” on page 11-7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Why Use Events and Listeners

Events are notices that objects broadcast in response to something that happens, such as a property value changing or a user interaction with an application program. Listeners execute functions when notified that the event of interest occurs. Use events to communicate things that happen to objects, and respond to these events by executing the listener's callback function.

See “Events and Listeners — Concepts” on page 11-12 for a more thorough discussion of the MATLAB event model.

Events and Listeners Basics

When using events and listeners:

- Only handle classes can define events and listeners.
- Call the handle notify method to trigger the event. The event notification broadcasts the named event to all listeners registered for this event.
- Use the handle addlistener method to associate a listener with an object that will be the source of the event.
- When adding a listener, pass a function handle for the listener callback function using a syntax such as the following:
  - addlistener(eventObject,'EventName',@functionName) — for an ordinary function.
  - addlistener(eventObject,'EventName',@Obj.methodName) — for a method of Obj.
• `addlistener(eventObject,'EventName',@ClassName.methodName)` — for a static method of the class `ClassName`.

• Listener callback functions must define at least two input arguments — the event source object handle and the event data (See “Listener Callback Syntax” on page 11-26 for more information).

• You can modify the data passed to each listener callback by subclassing the `event.EventData` class.

### Events and Listeners Syntax Overview

Define an event name in the `events` code block:

```matlab
classdef ClassName < handle
    ...
    events
        EventName
    end
    ...
end
```

For example, `MyClass` defines an event named `StateChange`:

```matlab
classdef MyClass < handle
    events
        StateChange
    end
end
```

Trigger an event using the handle class notify method:

```matlab
classdef ClassName < handle
    ...
    events
        EventName
    end
    ...
    methods
        function anyMethod(obj)
            ...
            notify(obj,'EventName');
        end
    end
end
```
Any function or method can trigger the event for a specific instance of the class defining the event. For example, the `triggerEvent` method calls `notify` to trigger the `StateChange` event:

```matlab
classdef MyClass < handle
    events
        StateChange
    end
    methods
        function triggerEvent(obj)
            notify(obj,'StateChange')
        end
    end
end
```

Trigger the `StateChange` event with the `triggerEvent` method:

```matlab
obj = MyClass;
obj.triggerEvent
```

Define a listener using the handle class `addlistener` method:

```matlab
ListenerObject = addlistener(SourceOfEvent,'EventName',@listenerCallback);
```

`addlistener` returns the listener object. The input arguments are:

- `SourceOfEvent` — An object of the class defining the event on which the event occurred.
- `EventName` — The name of the event defined in the class `events` code block.
- `@listenerCallback` — a function handle referencing the function that executes in response to the event.

For example, create a listener object for the `StateChange` event:

```matlab
function lh = createListener(src)
    lh = addlistener(src,'StateChange',@handleStateChange)
end
```

Define the callback function for the listener. The callback function must accept as the first two arguments the event source object and an event data object:

```matlab
function handleStateChange(src,eventData)
    ...
end
```
Class with Custom Event Data

Suppose you want to create a listener callback function that has access to specific information when the event occurs. This example shows how to do this by creating custom event data.

Events provide information to listener callback functions by passing an event data argument to the specified function. By default, MATLAB passes an `event.EventData` object to the listener callback. This object has two properties:

- **EventName** — Name of the event triggered by this object.
- **Source** — Handle of the object triggering the event.

Provide additional information to the listener callback by subclassing the `event.EventData` class.

- Define properties in the subclass to contain the additional data.
- Define a constructor that accepts the additional data as arguments.
- Set the `ConstructOnLoad` class attribute.
- Use the subclass constructor as an argument to the `notify` method to trigger the event.

Define and Trigger Event

The `SimpleEventClass` defines a property set method (see “Property Set Methods” on page 8-19) from which it triggers an event if the property is set to a value exceeding a certain limit. The property set method performs these operations:

- Saves the original property value
- Sets the property to the specified value
- If the specified value is greater than 10, the set method triggers an **Overflow** event
- Passes the original property value, as well as other event data, in a `SpecialEventDataClass` object to the `notify` method.

```matlab
classdef SimpleEventClass < handle
    properties
        Prop1 = 0;
    end
    events
        Overflow
```
Events — Sending and Responding to Messages

Define Event Data

Event data is always contained in an event.EventData object. The SpecialEventDataClass adds the original property value to the event data by subclassing event.EventData:

```matlab
classdef (ConstructOnLoad) SpecialEventDataClass < event.EventData
    properties
        OrgValue = 0;
    end
    methods
        function eventData = SpecialEventDataClass(value)
            eventData.OrgValue = value;
        end
    end
end
```

Create Listener for Overflow Event

To listen for the Overflow event, attach a listener to an instance of the SimpleEventClass class. Use the addlistener method to create the listener. You also need to define a callback function for the listener to execute when the event is triggered.

The function setupSEC instantiates the SimpleEventClass class and adds a listener to the object. In this example, the listener callback function displays information that is contained in the eventData argument (which is a SpecialEventDataClass object).

```matlab
function sec = setupSEC
    sec = SimpleEventClass;
    addlistener(sec,'Overflow',@overflowHandler)
    function overflowHandler(eventSrc,eventData)
```
disp('The value of Prop1 is overflowing!')
disp(['Its value was: ' num2str(eventData.OrgValue)])
disp(['Its current value is: ' num2str(eventSrc.Prop1)])
end
end

Create the SimpleEventClass object and add the listener:

sec = setupSEC;
sec.Prop1 = 5;
sec.Prop1 = 15; % listener triggers callback

The value of Prop1 is overflowing!
Its value was: 5
Its current value is: 15

Class to Observe Property Changes

This example shows how to listen for changes to a property value. This examples uses:

- PostSet event predefined by MATLAB
- SetObservable property attribute to enable triggering the property PostSet event.
- addlistener handle class method to create the listener

```matlab
classdef PropLis < handle
    % Define a property that is SetObservable
    properties (SetObservable)
        ObservedProp = 1;
    end
    methods
        function attachListener(obj)
            %Attach a listener to a PropListener object
            addlistener(obj,'ObservedProp','PostSet',@PropLis.propChange);
        end
    end
    methods (Static)
        function propChange(metaProp,eventData)
            % Callback for PostSet event
            % Inputs: meta.property object, event.PropertyEvent
            h = eventData.AffectedObject;
            propName = metaProp.Name;
            disp(['The ',propName,' property has changed.'])
            disp(['The new value is: ',num2str(h.ObservedProp)])
        end
    end
end```

11-7
The `PropLis` class uses an ordinary method (`attachListener`) to add the listener for the `ObservedProp` property. If the `PropLis` class defines a constructor, the constructor can contain the call to `addlistener`.

The listener callback is a static method (`propChange`). MATLAB passes two arguments when calling this function:

- `metaProp` — a `meta.property` object for `ObservedProp`
- `eventData` — an `event.PropertyEvent` object contain event specific data.

These arguments provide information about the property and the event.

Use the `PropLis` class by creating an instance and calling its `attachListener` method:

```matlab
plObj = PropLis;
plObj.ObservedProp

ans =

1

plObj.attachListener
plObj.ObservedProp = 2;
```

The `ObservedProp` property has changed.
The new value is: 2
Its default value is: 1

**Related Examples**

- “Property Set Listener” on page 11-9
Property Set Listener

This example shows how to define a listener for a property set event. This means the listener callback triggers when the value of a specific property changes. The class defined for this example uses a method for a push button callback and a static method for the listener callback. When the push button callback changes the value of a property, the listener executes its callback on the PreSet event.

This example defines a class (PushButton) with these design elements:

- **ResultNumber** – Observable property
- `uicontrol pushbutton` – Push button object used to generate a new graph when its callback executes
- A listener that responds to a change in the observable property

**PushButton Class Design**

The PushButton class creates `figure, uicontrol, axes` graphics objects and a listener object in the class constructor.

The push button's callback is a class method (named `pressed`). When the push button is activated, the following sequence occurs:

1. MATLAB executes the `pressed` method, which graphs a new set of data and increments the `ResultNumber` property.
2. Attempting to set the value of the `ResultNumber` property triggers the `PreSet` event, which executes the listener callback before setting the property value.
3. The listener callback uses the event data to obtain the handle of the callback object (an instance of the PushButton class), which then provides the handle of the axes object that is stored in its `AxHandle` property.
4. The listener callback updates the axes `Title` property, after the callback completes execution, MATLAB sets the `ResultsNumber` property to its new value.

```matlab
classdef PushButton < handle
    properties (SetObservable)
        ResultNumber = 1;
    end
    properties
```
AxHandle
d end
methods
def function buttonObj = PushButton
  myFig = figure;
  buttonObj.AxHandle = axes('Parent',myFig);
  uicontrol('Parent',myFig,...
    'Style','pushbutton',...
    'String','Plot Data',...
    'Callback',@(src,evnt)pressed(buttonObj));
  addlistener(buttonObj,'ResultNumber','PreSet',...
    @PushButton.updateTitle);
end
def end
methods
def function pressed(obj)
  scatter(obj.AxHandle,randn(1,20),randn(1,20),'p')
  obj.ResultNumber = obj.ResultNumber + 1;
end
def end
methods (Static)
def function updateTitle(~,eventData)
  h = eventData.AffectedObject;
  set(get(h.AxHandle,'Title'),'String',
   ['Result Number: ',...
     num2str(h.ResultNumber)])
end
def end
end
end

The scatter graph looks similar to this after three push-button clicks.

buttonObj = PushButton;
Related Examples

- “Listen for Changes to Property Values” on page 11-31
Events and Listeners — Concepts

In this section...

“The Event Model” on page 11-12
“Default Event Data” on page 11-13
“Events Only in Handle Classes” on page 11-14
“Property-Set and Query Events” on page 11-14
“Listeners” on page 11-15

The Event Model

Events represent changes or actions that occur within objects. For example,

• Modification of class data
• Execution of a method
• Querying or setting a property value
• Destruction of an object

Basically, any activity that you can detect programmatically can generate an event and communicate information to other objects.

MATLAB classes define a process that communicates the occurrence of events to other objects that need to respond to the events. The event model works this way:

• A handle class declares a name used to represent an event. “Name Events” on page 11-19
• After creating an object of the event-declaring class, attach listener to that object. “Control Listener Lifecycle” on page 11-23
• A call to the handle class notify method broadcasts a notice of the event to listeners. The class user determines when to trigger the event. “Trigger Events” on page 11-19
• Listeners execute a callback function when notified that the event has occurred. “Specify Listener Callbacks” on page 11-26
• You can bind listeners to the lifecycle of the object that defines the event, or limit listeners to the existence and scope of the listener object. “Control Listener Lifecycle” on page 11-23
The following diagram illustrates the event model.

1. The **withdraw** method is called.

   ```
   if AccountBalance <= 0
     notify(obj,'InsufficientFunds');
   end
   ```

2. The **notify** method triggers an event, and a message is broadcast.

3. Listeners awaiting message execute their callbacks.
   (The broadcasting object does not necessarily know who is listening.)

---

**BankAccount**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Properties</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AccountNumber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AccountBalance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>deposit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>withdraw</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Events</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>InsufficientFunds</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Listener1**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Properties</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EventName = ‘InsufficientFunds’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FunctionHandle = @Callback1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Listener2**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Properties</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EventName = ‘InsufficientFunds’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FunctionHandle = @Callback2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Default Event Data**

Events provide information to listener callbacks by passing an event data argument to the callback function. By default, MATLAB passes an `event.EventData` object to the listener callback. This object has two properties:

- **EventName** — The event name as defined in the class `event` block
• **Source** — The object that is the source of the event

MATLAB passes the source object to the listener callback in the required event data argument. This enables you to access any of the object's public properties from within your listener callback function.

**Customize Event Data**

You can create a subclass of the `event.EventData` class to provide additional information to listener callback functions. The subclass would define properties to contain the additional data and provide a method to construct the derived event data object so it can be passed to the `notify` method.

“Define Event-Specific Data” on page 11-22 provides an example showing how to customize this data.

**Events Only in Handle Classes**

You can define events only in handle classes. This restriction exists because a value class is visible only in a single MATLAB workspace so no callback or listener can have access to the object that triggered the event. The callback could have access to a copy of the object. However, accessing a copy is not generally useful because the callback cannot access the current state of the object that triggered the event or effect any changes in that object.

“Comparison of Handle and Value Classes” on page 7-2 provides general information on handle classes.

“Events and Listeners — Syntax and Techniques” on page 11-19 shows the syntax for defining a handle class and events.

**Property-Set and Query Events**

There are four predefined events related to properties:

• **PreSet** — Triggered just before the property value is set, before calling its set access method
• **PostSet** — Triggered just after the property value is set
• **PreGet** — Triggered just before a property value query is serviced, before calling its get access method
• **PostGet** — Triggered just after returning the property value to the query

These events are predefined and do not need to be listed in the class `events` block.

When a property event occurs, the callback is passed an `event.PropertyEvent` object. This object has three properties:

• **EventName** — The name of the event described by this data object
• **Source** — The source object whose class defines the event described by the data object
• **AffectedObject** — The object whose property is the source for this event (that is, `AffectedObject` contains the object whose property was either accessed or modified).

You can define your own property-change event data by subclassing the `event.EventData` class. Note that the `event.PropertyEvent` class is a sealed subclass of `event.EventData`.

See “Listen for Changes to Property Values” on page 11-31 for a description of the process for creating property listeners.

See “The PostSet Event Listener” on page 11-48 for an example.

See “Property Access Methods” on page 8-14 for information on methods that control access to property values.

### Listeners

Listeners encapsulate the response to an event. Listener objects belong to the `event.listener` class, which is a handle class that defines the following properties:

• **Source** — Handle or array of handles of the object that generated the event
• **EventName** — Name of the event
• **Callback** — Function to execute when an enabled listener receives event notification
• **Enabled** — Callback function executes only when `Enabled` is `true`. See “Enable and Disable Listeners” on page 11-51 for an example.
• **Recursive** — Allow listener to cause the same event that triggered the execution of the callback
Recursive is false by default. If the callback triggers its own event, the listener cannot execute recursively. Setting the Recursive to true can create a situation where infinite recursion reaches the recursion limit and triggers an error.

“Control Listener Lifecycle” on page 11-23 provides more specific information.
Event Attributes

Specify Event Attributes

The following table lists the attributes you can set for events. To specify a value for an attribute, assign the attribute value on the same line as the event key word. For example, all the events defined in the following `events` block have protected `ListenAccess` and private `NotifyAccess`.

```
events (ListenAccess = 'protected', NotifyAccess = 'private')
    EventName1
    EventName2
end
```

To define other events in the same class definition that have different attribute settings, create another `events` block.

---

### Event Attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hidden</td>
<td>logical</td>
<td>Default = false If true, event does not appear in list of events returned by <code>events</code> function (or other event listing functions or viewers).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>enumeration,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>default = public</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>meta.class object</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cell array of meta.class objects</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ListenAccess</td>
<td>• enumeration,</td>
<td>Determines where you can create listeners for the event.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>default = public</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• meta.class object</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• cell array of meta.class objects</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See “Control Access to Class Members” on page 12-25
### Attribute Name | Class | Description
--- | --- | ---
**NotifyAccess** | enumeration, default = `public` | Determines where code can trigger the event
- `public` — Any code can trigger event
- `protected` — Can trigger event from methods in class or derived classes
- `private` — Can trigger event by class methods only (not from derived classes)
- List classes that have notify access to this event. Specify classes as `meta.class` objects in the form:
  - A single `meta.class` object
  - A cell array of `meta.class` objects. An empty cell array, `{}`, is the same as `private` access.

See “Control Access to Class Members” on page 12-25
Name Events

Define an event by declaring an event name inside an `events` block. For example, the following class creates an event called `ToggledState`.

```matlab
classdef ToggleButton < handle
    properties
        State = false
    end
    events
        ToggledState
    end
end
```

Trigger Events

The `OnStateChange` method calls `notify` to trigger the event. Pass the handle of the object that caused the event and the name of the event.

```matlab
classdef ToggleButton < handle
    properties
        State = false
    end
    events
        ToggledState
    end
    methods
        function OnStateChange(obj,newState)
            if newState ~= obj.State
                obj.State = newState;
                notify(obj,'ToggledState');
            end
        end
end
```
Listen to Events

Once the call to \texttt{notify} triggers an event, MATLAB broadcasts a message to all listeners that are listening for that event on a specific object. To create a listener for an event, use the \texttt{addlistener} handle class method.

For example, the \texttt{RespondToToggle} class defines objects that listen for the \texttt{ToggleState} event defined in the class \texttt{ToggleButton}.

\begin{verbatim}
classdef RespondToToggle < handle
  methods
    function obj = RespondToToggle(toggle_button_obj)
      addlistener(toggle_button_obj,'ToggledState',@RespondToToggle.handleEvnt);
    end
  end
  methods (Static)
    function handleEvnt(src,~)
      if src.State
        disp('ToggledState is true')
      else
        disp('ToggledState is false')
      end
    end
  end
end
\end{verbatim}

The class \texttt{RespondToToggle} adds the listener from within its constructor. The class defines the callback (\texttt{handleEvnt}) as a static method that accepts the two standard arguments:

- \texttt{src} — the handle of the object triggering the event (i.e., a \texttt{ToggleButton} object)
- \texttt{evtdata} — an \texttt{event.EventData} object

The listener executes the callback when the specific \texttt{ToggleButton} object executes the \texttt{notify} method.

For example, create instances of both classes:
Whenever you call the `ToggleButton` object's `OnStateChange` method, `notify` triggers the event:

```matlab
tb.OnStateChange(true)
ToggledState is true

tb.OnStateChange(false)
ToggledState is false
```

### Remove Listeners

You can remove a listener object by calling `delete` on its handle. For example, if the class `RespondToToggle` saved the listener handle as a property, you could delete the listener:

```matlab
classdef RespondToToggle < handle
    properties
        ListenerHandle
    end
    methods
        function obj = RespondToToggle(toggle_button_obj)
            hl = addlistener(toggle_button_obj,'ToggledState',@RespondToToggle.handleEvnt);
            obj.ListenerHandle = hl;
        end
    end
    methods (Static)
        function handleEvnt(src,-)
            if src.State
                disp('ToggledState is true')
            else
                disp('ToggledState is false')
            end
        end
    end
end
```

With this code change, you can remove the listener from an instance of the `RespondToToggle` class. For example:

```matlab
tb = ToggleButton;
rtt = RespondToToggle(tb);
```

At this point, the object `rtt` is listening for the `ToggleState` event triggered by object `tb`. To remove the listener, call `delete` on the property containing the listener handle:
delete(rtt.ListenerHandle)

You do not need to explicitly delete a listener. MATLAB automatically deletes the listener when the object's lifecycle ends (e.g., when the rtt object is deleted).

**Define Event-Specific Data**

Suppose that you want to pass the state of the toggle button as a result of the event to the listener callback. You can add more data to the default event data by subclassing the event.EventData class and adding a property to contain this information. You then can pass this object to the notify method.

**Note:** To save and load objects that are subclasses of event.EventData, such as ToggleEventData, enable the ConstructOnLoad class attribute for the subclass.

```matlab
classdef (ConstructOnLoad) ToggleEventData < event.EventData
    properties
        NewState
    end
    methods
        function data = ToggleEventData(newState)
            data.NewState = newState;
        end
    end
end
```

The call to notify uses the ToggleEventData constructor to create the necessary argument.

```
notify(obj,'ToggledState',ToggleEventData(newState));
```

**Related Examples**

- “Property Set Listener” on page 11-9
- “Update Graphs Using Events and Listeners” on page 11-38
Listener Lifecycle

In this section...

“Control Listener Lifecycle” on page 11-23
“Temporarily Deactivate Listeners” on page 11-24
“Permanently Delete Listeners” on page 11-25

Control Listener Lifecycle

There are two ways to create listeners:

• The `addlistener` method binds the listener to the lifecycle of the object(s) that generate the event. The listener object persists until MATLAB destroys the event object.
• The `event.listener` class constructor creates listeners that are not tied to the lifecycle of the object(s) generating the event. The listener is active as long as the listener object remains in scope and is not deleted.

Attach Listener to Event Source — addlistener

The following code defines a listener for the `ToggleState` event:

```matlab
lh = addlistener(obj,'ToggleState',@RespondToToggle.handleEvnt);
```

The arguments are:

• `obj` — The object that is the source of the event
• `ToggleState` — The event name passed as a string
• `@RespondToToggle.handleEvnt` — A function handle to the callback function (static method)

The listener callback function must accept at least two arguments, which are automatically passed by the MATLAB runtime to the callback. The arguments are:

• The source of the event (that is, `obj` in the call to `addlistener`)
• An `event.EventData` object, or a subclass of `event.EventData`, such as the `ToggleEventData` object described earlier “Define Event-Specific Data” on page 11-22.
The callback function must be defined to accept these two arguments:

```matlab
function callbackFunction(src, evnt)
  ...  
end
```

In cases where the event data (`evnt`) object is user defined, it must be constructed and passed as an argument to the `notify` method. For example, the following statement constructs a `ToggleEventData` object and passes it to `notify` as the third argument:

```matlab
notify(obj,'ToggledState',ToggleEventData(newState));
```

“Specify Listener Callbacks” on page 11-26 provides more information on callback syntax.

**Limiting Listener Scope — Construct `event.listener` Objects**

You can also create listeners by calling the `event.listener` class constructor directly. When you call the constructor instead of using `addlistener` to create a listener, the listener exists only while the listener object you create is in scope (e.g., within the workspace of an executing function). It is not tied to the event-generating object's existence.

The `event.listener` constructor requires the same arguments as used by `addlistener` — the event-naming object, the event name, and a function handle to the callback:

```matlab
lh = event.listener(obj,'EventName',@callbackFunction)
```

For example, using the `ToggleState` event discussed previously:

```matlab
lh = event.listener(obj,'ToggleState',@RespondToToggle.handleEvnt)
```

If you want the listener to persist beyond the normal variable scope, you should use `addlistener` to create it.

**Temporarily Deactivate Listeners**

The `addlistener` method returns the listener object so that you can set its properties. For example, you can temporarily disable a listener by setting its `Enabled` property to `false`:

```matlab
lh.Enabled = false;
```
To re-enable the listener, set Enabled to true.

**Permanently Delete Listeners**

Calling `delete` on a listener object destroys it and permanently removes the listener:

```plaintext
delte(lh)
```

**Related Examples**

- “Enable and Disable Listeners” on page 11-51
Listener Callback Syntax

In this section...

“Specify Listener Callbacks” on page 11-26
“Syntax for Callback Function” on page 11-26
“Additional Arguments for Callback Function” on page 11-27

Specify Listener Callbacks

Callbacks are functions that execute when the listener receives notification of the event. Pass a function handle referencing the callback function to `addlistener` or the `event.listener` when creating the listener.

All callback functions must accept at least two arguments:

- The handle of the object that is the source of the event
- An `event.EventData` object or an object that is derived from the `event.EventData` class.

Syntax to Specify Callback

For a function: `functionName`

```matlab
lh = addlistener(eventSourceObj,'EventName',@functionName)
```

For an ordinary method called with an object of the class: `obj.methodName`

```matlab
lh = addlistener(eventSourceObj,'EventName',@obj.methodName)
```

For a static method: `ClassName.methodName`

```matlab
lh = addlistener(eventSourceObj,'EventName',@ClassName.methodName)
```

For a function in a package: `PackageName.functionName`

```matlab
lh = addlistener(eventSourceObj,'EventName',@PackageName.functionName)
```

Syntax for Callback Function

Define the callback function to accept the required arguments:

```matlab
function callbackFunction(src,evnt)
```
If you do not use the event source and event data arguments, you can define the function to ignore these inputs:

```matlab
function callbackFunction(~,~)
    ...
end
```

For a method:

```matlab
function callbackMethod(obj,src,evnt)
    ...
end
```

### Additional Arguments for Callback Function

To pass arguments to your callback in addition to the source and event data arguments passed by MATLAB, use an anonymous function. Anonymous functions can use any variables that are available in the current workspace.

**Syntax Using Anonymous Function**

Here is the syntax for an ordinary method. The input arguments \((\text{arg}1, \ldots, \text{arg}n)\) must be defined in the context in which you call `addlistener`.

```matlab
lh = addlistener(src,'EventName',@(src,evnt)obj.callbackMethod(src,evnt,arg1,...,argn)
```

Use `varargin` to define the callback function.

```matlab
function callbackMethod(src,evnt,varargin)
    arg1 = varargin{1};
    ...
    argn = varargin{n};
    ...
end
```

For general information on anonymous function, see “Anonymous Functions”.

**Method Callback**

The `TestAnonyFcn` class shows the use of an anonymous function with an additional argument. The listener callback displays the inputs arguments to show how MATLAB calls the callback method.
% classdef TestAnonyFcn < handle
% events
%   Update
% end
% methods
function obj = TestAnonyFcn
    t = datestr(now);
    addlistener(obj,'Update',@(src,evnt)obj.evntCb(src,evnt,t));
end
function triggerEvnt(obj)
    notify(obj,'Update')
end
end
% methods (Access = private)unction evntCb(~,~,evnt,varargin)
    disp(['Number of inputs: ',num2str(nargin)])
    disp(evnt.EventName)
    disp(varargin{:})
end
end
end

Create an object and trigger the event by calling the triggerEvnt method:

obj = TestAnonyFcn;
obj.triggerEvnt;

Number of inputs: 4
Update
01-Jul-2008 17:19:36

Related Examples
• “Callback Execution” on page 11-29
• “Create Function Handle”
Callback Execution

In this section...

“When Callbacks Execute” on page 11-29
“Listener Order of Execution” on page 11-29
“Callbacks That Call `notify`” on page 11-29
“Manage Callback Errors” on page 11-30
“Invoke Functions from Function Handles” on page 11-30

When Callbacks Execute

Listeners execute their callback function when notified that the event has occurred. Listeners are passive observers in the sense that errors in the execution of a listener callback does not prevent the execution of other listeners responding to the same event, or execution of the function that triggered the event.

Callback function execution continues until the function completes. If an error occurs in a callback function, execution stops and control returns to the calling function. Then any remaining listener callback functions execute.

Listener Order of Execution

The order in which listeners callback functions execute after the firing of an event is undefined. However, all listener callbacks execute synchronously with the event firing.

The handle class `notify` method calls all listeners before returning execution to the function that called `notify`.

Callbacks That Call `notify`

Do not modify and reuse or copy and reuse the event data object that you pass to `notify`, which is then passed to the listener callback.

Listener callbacks can call `notify` to trigger events, including the same event that invoked the callback. When a function calls `notify`, MATLAB sets the property values of the event data object that is passed to callback functions. To ensure these properties have appropriate values for subsequently called callbacks, you should always create a new event data object if you call `notify` with custom event data.
Manage Callback Errors

If you want to control how your program responds to errors, use a `try/catch` statement in your listener callback function to handle errors.

Invoke Functions from Function Handles

When you create a function handle inside a class method, the context of the method determines the context in which the function executes. This context gives the function access to private and protected methods that are accessible to that class.

For example, the `UpdateEvt` class defines an event named `Update` and a listener for that event. The listener callback is the private method `evtCb`.

```matlab
classdef UpdateEvt < handle
    events
        Update
    end
    methods
        function obj = UpdateEvt
            addlistener(obj,'Update',@evtCb);
        end
    end
    methods (Access = private)
        function obj = evtCb(obj,varargin)
            disp('Updated Event Triggered')
        end
    end
end
```

Private methods are normally accessible only by class methods. However, because the function handle is created in a class method, notify can execute the callback from outside of the class:

```matlab
a = UpdateEvt;
a.notify('Update')
```

Updated Event Triggered

Related Examples

- “Listener Callback Syntax” on page 11-26
Listen for Changes to Property Values

In this section...

“Create Property Listeners” on page 11-31
“Property Event and Listener Classes” on page 11-33
“Abort Set When Value Does Not Change” on page 11-34

Create Property Listeners

You can define listens for the predeclared property events (named: PreSet, PostSet, PreGet, and PostGet). To create listener for those named events:

• Specify the SetObservable and/or GetObservable property attributes.
• Define callback functions
• Create the property listener by including the name of the property as well as the event in the call to addlistener.
• If required, subclass event.data to create a specialized event data object to pass to the callback function.
• Prevent execution of the callback if the new value is the same as the current value (see “Abort Set When Value Does Not Change” on page 11-34).

Set Property Attributes to Enable Property Events

In the properties block, enable the SetObservable attribute. You can define PreSet and PostSet listeners for the properties defined in this block:

properties (SetObservable)
  PropOne
  PropTwo
...
end

Define Callback Function for Property Event

The listener executes the callback function when MATLAB triggers the property event. You must define the callback function to have two specific arguments, which are passed to the function automatically when called by the listener:
• Event source — a `meta.property` object describing the object that is the source of the property event
• Event data — a `event.PropertyEvent` object containing information about the event

You can pass additional arguments if necessary. It is often simple to define this method as `Static` because these two arguments contain most necessary information in their properties.

For example, suppose the `handlePropEvents` function is a static method of the class creating listeners for two properties of an object of another class:

```plaintext
methods (Static)
    function handlePropEvents(src,evnt)
        switch src.Name
            case 'PropOne'
                % PropOne has triggered an event
                ...
            case 'PropTwo'
                % PropTwo has triggered an event
                ...
        end
    end
end
```

Another possibility is to use the `event.PropertyEvent` object's `EventName` property in the `switch` statement to key off the event name (`PreSet` or `PostSet` in this case).

“Class Metadata” on page 16-2 provides more information about the `meta.property` class.

**Add Listener to Property**

The `addlistener` handle class method enables you to attach a listener to a property without storing the listener object as a persistent variable. For a property events, use the four-argument version of `addlistener`.

If the call

```plaintext
addlistener(EventObject,'PropOne','PostSet',@ClassName.handlePropertyEvents);
```

The arguments are:

• `EventObject` — handle of the object generating the event
• `PropOne` — name of the property to which you want to listen
Listen for Changes to Property Values

• **PostSet** — name of the event for which you want to listen
• **@ClassName.handlePropertyEvents** — function handle referencing a static method, which requires the use of the class name

If your listener callback is an ordinary method and not a static method, the syntax is:

```bash
addlistener(EventObject,'PropOne','PostSet',@obj.handlePropertyEvents);
```

where *obj* is the handle of the object defining the callback method.

If the listener callback is a function that is not a class method, you pass a function handle to that function. Suppose the callback function is a package function:

```bash
addlistener(EventObject,'PropOne','PostSet',@package.handlePropertyEvents);
```

For more information on passing functions as arguments, see “Create Function Handle”.

**Property Event and Listener Classes**

The following two classes show how to create **PostSet** property listeners for two properties — PropOne and PropTwo.

**Class Generating the Event**

The PropEvent class enables property **PreSet** and **PostSet** event triggering by specifying the **SetObservable** property attribute. These properties also enable the **AbortSet** attribute, which prevents the triggering of the property events if the properties are set to a value that is the same as their current value (see “Abort Set When Value Does Not Change” on page 11-34)

```bash
classdef PropEvent < handle
  properties (SetObservable, AbortSet)
    PropOne
    PropTwo
  end
  methods
    function obj = PropEvent(p1,p2)
      if nargin > 0
        obj.PropOne = p1;
        obj.PropTwo = p2;
      end
    end
  end
end
```
Class Defining the Listeners

The PropListener class defines two listeners:

- Property PropOne PostSet event
- Property PropTwo PostSet event

You could define listeners for other events or other properties using a similar approach and it is not necessary to use the same callback function for each listener. See the meta.property and event.PropertyEvent reference pages for more on the information contained in the arguments passed to the listener callback function.

```matlab
classdef PropListener < handle
    % Define property listeners
    methods
        function obj = PropListener(evtobj)
            if nargin > 0
                addlistener(evtobj,'PropOne','PostSet',@PropListener.handlePropEvents);
                addlistener(evtobj,'PropTwo','PostSet',@PropListener.handlePropEvents);
            end
        end
    end
    methods (Static)
        function handlePropEvents(src,evnt)
            switch src.Name
                case 'PropOne'
                    sprintf('PropOne is %s
',num2str(evnt.AffectedObject.PropOne))
                case 'PropTwo'
                    sprintf('PropTwo is %s
',num2str(evnt.AffectedObject.PropTwo))
            end
        end
    end
end

Abort Set When Value Does Not Change

By default, MATLAB triggers the property PreSet and PostSet events, invokes the property’s set method (if defined), and sets the property value, even when the current value of the property is the same as the new value. You can prevent this behavior by setting the property’s AbortSet attribute to true. When AbortSet is true, MATLAB does not:

- Set the property value
- Trigger the PreSet and PostSet events
Listen for Changes to Property Values

• Call the property’s set method, if one exists

When `AbortSet` is true, MATLAB gets the current property value to compare it to the value you are assigning to the property. This causes the property get method (`get.Property`) to execute, if one exists. However, MATLAB does not catch errors resulting from the execution of this method and these errors are visible to the user.

**When to Use AbortSet**

Consider using `AbortSet` only when the cost of setting a property value is much greater than the cost of always comparing the current value of the property with the new value being assigned.

**How AbortSet Works**

The following example shows how the `AbortSet` attribute works. The `AbortTheSet` class defines a property, `PropOne`, that has listeners for the `PreGet` and `PreSet` events and enables the `AbortSet` attribute. The behavior of the post set/get events is equivalent so only the pre set/get events are used for simplicity:

```
classdef AbortTheSet < handle
    properties (SetObservable, GetObservable, AbortSet)
        PropOne = 7
    end
    methods
        function obj = AbortTheSet(val)
            obj.PropOne = val;
            addlistener(obj,'PropOne','PreGet',@obj.getPropEvt);
            addlistener(obj,'PropOne','PreSet',@obj.setPropEvt);
        end
        function propval = get.PropOne(obj)
            disp('get.PropOne called')
            propval = obj.PropOne;
        end
        function set.PropOne(obj,val)
            disp('set.PropOne called')
            obj.PropOne = val;
        end
```

**Note:** Save the `AbortTheSet` class in a file with the same name in a folder on your MATLAB path.
The class specifies an initial value of 7 for the PropOne property. Therefore, if you create an object with the property value of 7, there is not need to trigger the PreSet event:

```matlab
ats = AbortTheSet(7);
get.PropOne called
```

If you specify a value other than 7, then MATLAB triggers the PreSet event:

```matlab
ats = AbortTheSet(9);
get.PropOne called
set.PropOne called
get.PropOne called
```

Similarly, if you set the PropOne property to the value 9, the AbortSet attribute prevents the property assignment and the triggering of the PreSet event. Notice also, that there is no PreGet event generated. Only the property get method is called:

```matlab
ats.PropOne = 9;
get.PropOne called
```

If you query the property value, the PreGet event is triggered:

```matlab
a = ats.PropOne
Pre-get event triggered
get.PropOne called
a =
```
If you set the PropOne property to a different value, MATLAB:

- Calls the property get method to determine if the value is changing
- Triggers the PreSet event
- Calls the property set method to set the new value
- Calls the property get method again to determine if the result of calling the set method changed the value.

```matlab
ats.PropOne = 11;
```

get.PropOne called
Pre-set event triggered
set.PropOne called
get.PropOne called

Because a property set method might modify the value that is actually assigned to a property, MATLAB must query the property value that would result from an assignment after a call the property’s set method. This results in multiple calls to a property get method, if one is defined for that property.
# Update Graphs Using Events and Listeners

**In this section...**

“Example Overview” on page 11-38  
“Techniques Demonstrated in This Example” on page 11-39  
“Summary of fcneval Class” on page 11-39  
“Summary of fcnview Class” on page 11-40  
“Methods Inherited from Handle Class” on page 11-42  
“Using the fcneval and fcnview Classes” on page 11-42  
“Implement UpdateGraph Event and Listener” on page 11-44  
“The PostSet Event Listener” on page 11-48  
“Enable and Disable Listeners” on page 11-51  
“@fcneval/fcneval.m Class Code” on page 11-52  
“@fcnview/fcnview.m Class Code” on page 11-53

**Example Overview**

This example defines two classes:

- **fcneval** — The function evaluator class contains a MATLAB expression and evaluates this expression over a specified range.
- **fcnview** — The function viewer class contains a fcneval object and displays surface graphs of the evaluated expression using the data contained in fcneval.

This class defines two events:

- A class-defined event that occurs when a new value is specified for the MATLAB function.
- A property event that occurs when the property containing the limits is changed.

The following diagram shows the relationship between the two objects. The fcnview object contains a fcneval object and creates graphs from the data it contains. fcnview creates listeners to change the graphs if any of the data in the fcneval object change.
Techniques Demonstrated in This Example

- Naming an event in the class definition
- Triggering an event by calling `notify`
- Enabling a property event via the `SetObservable` attribute
- Creating listeners for class-defined events and property `PostSet` events
- Defining listener callback functions that accept additional arguments
- Enabling and disabling listeners

Summary of `fcneval` Class

The `fcneval` class evaluates a MATLAB expression over a specified range of two variables. The `fcneval` is the source of the data that objects of the `fcnview` class graph as a surfaces. `fcneval` is the source of the events used in this example. For a listing of the class definition, see “@fcneval/fcneval.m Class Code” on page 11-52
### Property Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FofXY</td>
<td>function handle</td>
<td>MATLAB expression (function of two variables).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lm</td>
<td>two-element vector</td>
<td>Limits over which function is evaluated in both variables.  SetObservable attribute set to true to enable property event listeners.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data</td>
<td>structure with x, y, and z matrices</td>
<td>Data resulting from evaluating the function. Used for surface graph. Dependent attribute set to true, which means the get.Data method is called to determine property value when queried and no data is stored.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Event Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event</th>
<th>When Triggered</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UpdateGraph</td>
<td>FofXY property set function (set.FofXY) calls the notify method when a new value is specified for the MATLAB expression on an object of this class.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Method Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fcneval</td>
<td>Class constructor. Inputs are function handle and two-element vector specifying the limits over which to evaluate the function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set.FofXY</td>
<td>FofXY property set function. Called whenever property value is set, including during object construction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set.Lm</td>
<td>Lm property set function. Used to test for valid limits.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get.Data</td>
<td>Data property get function. This method calculates the values for the Data property whenever that data is queried (by class members or externally).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grid</td>
<td>A static method (Static attribute set to true) used in the calculation of the data.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Summary of fcnview Class

Objects of the fcnview class contain fcneval objects as the source of data for the four surface graphs created in a function view. fcnview creates the listeners and callback functions that respond to changes in the data contained in fcneval objects. For a listing of the class definition, see “@fcnview/fcnview.m Class Code” on page 11-53.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Property</strong></th>
<th><strong>Value</strong></th>
<th><strong>Purpose</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FcnObject</td>
<td>fcneval object</td>
<td>This object contains the data that is used to create the function graphs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HAxes</td>
<td>axes handle</td>
<td>Each instance of a fcnview object stores the handle of the axes containing its subplot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HLUpdateGraph</td>
<td>event.listener</td>
<td>Setting the event.listener object's Enabled property to true enables the listener; false disables listener.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HLLm</td>
<td>event.listener</td>
<td>Setting the event.listener object's Enabled property to true enables the listener, false disables listener.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HEnableCm</td>
<td>uimenu handle</td>
<td>Item on context menu used to enable listeners (used to handle checked behavior)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDisableCm</td>
<td>uimenu handle</td>
<td>Item on context menu used to disable listeners (used to manage checked behavior)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HSurface</td>
<td>surface handle</td>
<td>Used by event callbacks to update surface data.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Method</strong></th>
<th><strong>Purpose</strong></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fcnview</td>
<td>Class constructor. Input is fcneval object.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>createLisn</td>
<td>Calls addlistener to create listeners for UpdateGraph and Lm property PostSet listeners.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lims</td>
<td>Sets axes limits to current value of fcneval object's Lm property. Used by event handlers.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>updateSurfaceData</td>
<td>Updates the surface data without creating a new object. Used by event handlers.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>listenUpdateGraph</td>
<td>Callback for UpdateGraph event.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>listenLm</td>
<td>Callback for Lm property PostSet event</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delete</td>
<td>Delete method for fcnview class.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>createViews</td>
<td>Static method that creates an instance of the fcnview class for each subplot, defines the context menus that enable/disable listeners, and creates the subplots</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Methods Inherited from Handle Class

Both the \texttt{fcneval} and \texttt{fcnview} classes inherit methods from the \texttt{handle} class. The following table lists only those inherited methods used in this example.

“Handle Class Methods” on page 7-11 provides a complete list of methods that are inherited when you subclass the \texttt{handle} class.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods Inherited from Handle Class</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>addlistener</td>
<td>Register a listener for a specific event and attach listener to event-defining object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>notify</td>
<td>Trigger an event and notify all registered listeners.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Using the \texttt{fcneval} and \texttt{fcnview} Classes

This sections explains how to use the classes.

- Create an instance of the \texttt{fcneval} class to contain the MATLAB expression of a function of two variables and the range over which you want to evaluate this function
- Use the \texttt{fcnview} class static function \texttt{createView} to visualize the function
- Change the MATLAB expression or the limits contained by the \texttt{fcneval} object and all the \texttt{fcnview} objects respond to the events generated.

You create a \texttt{fcneval} object by calling its constructor with two arguments—an anonymous function and a two-element, monotonically increasing vector. For example:

\begin{verbatim}
feobject = fcneval(@(x,y) x.*exp(-x.^2-y.^2),[-2 2]);
\end{verbatim}

Use the \texttt{createView} static method to create the graphs of the function. Note that you must use the class name to call a static function:

\begin{verbatim}
fcnview.createViews(feobject);
\end{verbatim}

The \texttt{createView} method generates four views of the function contained in the \texttt{fcneval} object.
Each subplot defines a context menu that can enable and disable the listeners associated with that graph. For example, if you disable the listeners on subplot 221 (upper left) and change the MATLAB expression contained by the `fcneval` object, only the remaining three subplots update when the `UpdateGraph` event is triggered:

```matlab
feobject.FofXY = @(x,y) x.*exp(-x.^0.5-y.^0.5);
```
Similarly, if you change the limits by assigning a value to the `feobject.Lm` property, the `feobject` triggers a `PostSet` property event and the listener callbacks update the graph.

\[ feobject.Lm = [-8 3]; \]

In this figure the listeners are re-enabled via the context menu for subplot 221. Because the listener callback for the property `PostSet` event also updates the surface data, all views are now synchronized.

**Implement UpdateGraph Event and Listener**

The `UpdateGraph` event occurs when the MATLAB representation of the mathematical function contained in the `fcneval` object is changed. The `fcnview` objects that contain the surface graphs are listening for this event, so they can update the graphs to represent the new function.

**Define and Trigger UpdateGraph Event**

The `UpdateGraph` event is a class-defined event. The `fcneval` class names the event and calls `notify` when the event occurs.
1. A property is assigned a new value.
   \[ \text{obj.FofXY} = @(x,y)x^2+y^2 \]

2. Setting the property runs a set access method, which, in turn, executes `notify`.

```matlab
function set.FofXY(obj,func)
    obj.FofXY = func;
    notify(obj,'UpdateGraph');
end
```

3. The `notify` method triggers an event, and a message is broadcast.

4. A listener awaiting the message executes its callback.

5. The callback function is executed.

The `fcnview` class defines a listener for this event. When `fcneval` triggers the event, the `fcnview` listener executes a callback function that performs the following actions:

- Determines if the handle of the surface object stored by the `fcnview` object is still valid (that is, does the object still exist)
- Updates the surface `XData`, `YData`, and `ZData` by querying the `fcneval` object's `Data` property.

The `fcneval` class defines an event name in an `event` block:
Determine When to Trigger Event

The fcneval class defines a property set method for the FofXY property. FofXY is the property that stores the MATLAB expression for the mathematical function. This expression must be a valid MATLAB expression for a function of two variables.

The set.FofXY method:

- Determines the suitability of the expression
- If the expression is suitable:
  - Assigns the expression to the FofXY property
  - Triggers the UpdateGraph event

If fcneval.isSuitable does not return an MException object, the set.FofXY method assigns the value to the property and triggers the UpdateGraph event.

```matlab
function set.FofXY(obj,func)
    % Determine if function is suitable to create a surface
    me = fcneval.isSuitable(func);
    if ~isempty(me)
        throw(me)
    end
    % Assign property value
    obj.FofXY = func;
    % Trigger UpdateGraph event
    notify(obj,'UpdateGraph');
end
```

Determine Suitability of Expression

The set.FofXY method calls a static method (fcneval.isSuitable) to determine the suitability of the specified expression. fcneval.isSuitable returns an MException object if it determines that the expression is unsuitable. fcneval.isSuitable calls the MException constructor directly to create more useful error messages for the user.

set.FofXY issues the exception using the MException.throw method. Issuing the exception terminates execution of set.FofXY and prevents the method from making an assignment to the property or triggering the UpdateGraph event.
Here is the `fcneval.isSuitable` method:

```matlab
function isOk = isSuitable(funcH)
    v = [1 1 ; 1 1 ];
    % Can the expression except 2 numeric inputs
    try
        funcH(v,v);
    catch %#ok<CTCH>
        me = MException('DocExample:fcneval',...%
            ['The function ',func2str(funcH),' Is not a suitable F(x,y)']);
        isOk = me;
        return
    end
    % Does the expression return non-scalar data
    if isscalar(funcH(v,v));
        me = MException('DocExample:fcneval',...%
            ['The function ',func2str(funcH),' Returns a scalar when evaluated']);
        isOk = me;
        return
    end
    isOk = [];
end
```

The `fcneval.isSuitable` method could provide additional test to ensure that the expression assigned to the `FofXY` property meets the criteria required by the class design.

**Other Approaches**

The class could have implemented a property set event for the `FofXY` property and would, therefore, not need to call `notify` (see “Listen for Changes to Property Values” on page 11-31). Defining a class event provides more flexibility in this case because you can better control event triggering.

For example, suppose you wanted to update the graph only if the new data is significantly different. If the new expression produced the same data within some tolerance, the `set.FofXY` method could not trigger the event and avoid updating the graph. However, the method could still set the property to the new value.

**Listener and Callback for UpdateGraph Event**

The `fcnview` class creates a listener for the `UpdateGraph` event using the `addlistener` method:

```matlab
obj.HLUpdateGraph = addlistener(obj.FcnObject,'UpdateGraph',...%
    @(src,evnt)listenUpdateGraph(obj,src,evnt)); % Add obj to argument list
```
The fcnview object stores a handle to the event.listener object in its HLUpdateGraph property, which is used to enable/disable the listener by a context menu (see “Enable and Disable Listeners” on page 11-51).

The fcnview object (obj) is added to the two default arguments (src, evnt) passed to the listener callback. Keep in mind, the source of the event (src) is the fcneval object, but the fcnview object contains the handle of the surface object that is updated by the callback.

The listenUpdateGraph function is defined as follows:

function listenUpdateGraph(obj,src,evnt)
    if ishandle(obj.HSurface) % If surface exists
        obj.updateSurfaceData % Update surface data
    end
end

The updateSurfaceData function is a class method that updates the surface data when a different mathematical function is assigned to the fcneval object. Updating a graphics object data is generally more efficient than creating a new object using the new data:

function updateSurfaceData(obj)
    % Get data from fcneval object and set surface data
    set(obj.HSurface,...
        'XData',obj.FcnObject.Data.X,...
        'YData',obj.FcnObject.Data.Y,...
        'ZData',obj.FcnObject.Data.Matrix);
end

**The PostSet Event Listener**

All properties support the predefined PostSet event (See “Property-Set and Query Events” on page 11-14 for more information on property events). This example uses the PostSet event for the fcneval Lm property. This property contains a two-element vector specifying the range over which the mathematical function is evaluated. Just after this property is changed (by a statement like obj.Lm = [-3 5];), the fcnview objects listening for this event update the graph to reflect the new data.
1. New limits are assigned.
   \[
   \text{obj.Lm} = [-3 \ 5];
   \]

2. The `SetObservable` attribute of `Properties` is set to `True`, so setting the property automatically triggers a `PostSet` event. Note that methods and events did not have to be declared in `myfunceval`.

3. A message is broadcast.

4. A listener awaiting the message executes its callback.

5. The callback function is executed.

Sequence During the Lm Property Assignment

The `fcneval` class defines a set function for the `Lm` property. When a value is assigned to this property during object construction or property reassignment, the following sequence occurs:

1. An attempt is made to assign argument value to `Lm` property.
2. The `set.Lm` method executes to check whether the value is in appropriate range — if yes, it makes assignment, if no, it generates an error.
3. If the value of `Lm` is set successfully, the MATLAB runtime triggers a `PostSet` event.
4. All listeners execute their callbacks, but the order is nondeterministic.
The `PostSet` event does not occur until an actual assignment of the property occurs. The property set function provides an opportunity to deal with potential assignment errors before the `PostSet` event occurs.

**Enable PostSet Property Event**

To create a listener for the `PostSet` event, you must set the property’s `SetObservable` attribute to `true`:

```matlab
properties (SetObservable = true)
    Lm = [-2*pi 2*pi]; % specifies default value
end
```

The MATLAB runtime automatically triggers the event so it is not necessary to call `notify`.

“Specify Property Attributes” on page 8-5 provides a list of all property attributes.

**Listener and Callback for PostSet Event**

The `fcnview` class creates a listener for the `PostSet` event using the `addlistener` method:

```matlab
obj.HLLm = addlistener(obj.FcnObject,'Lm','PostSet',...
    @(src,evnt)listenLm(obj,src,evnt)); % Add obj to argument list
```

The `fcnview` object stores a handle to the `event.listener` object in its `HLLm` property, which is used to enable/disable the listener by a context menu (see “Enable and Disable Listeners” on page 11-51).

The `fcnview` object (obj) is added to the two default arguments (`src`, `evnt`) passed to the listener callback. Keep in mind, the source of the event (`src`) is the `fcneval` object, but the `fcnview` object contains the handle of the surface object that is updated by the callback.

The callback sets the axes limits and updates the surface data because changing the limits causes the mathematical function to be evaluated over a different range:

```matlab
function listenLm(obj,src,evnt)
    if ishandle(obj.HAxes) % If there is an axes
        lims(obj); % Update its limits
        if ishandle(obj.HSurface) % If there is a surface
            obj.updateSurfaceData % Update its data
        end
    end
end
```
Enable and Disable Listeners

Each `fcnview` object stores the handle of the listener objects it creates so that the listeners can be enabled or disabled via a context menu after the graphs are created. All listeners are instances of the `event.listener` class, which defines a property called `Enabled`. By default, this property has a value of `true`, which enables the listener. If you set this property to `false`, the listener still exists, but is disabled. This example creates a context menu active on the axes of each graph that provides a way to change the value of the `Enabled` property.

Context Menu Callback

There are two callbacks used by the context menu corresponding to the two items on the menu:

- **Listen** — Sets the `Enabled` property for both the `UpdateGraph` and `PostSet` listeners to `true` and adds a check mark next to the `Listen` menu item.
- **Don't Listen** — Sets the `Enabled` property for both the `UpdateGraph` and `PostSet` listeners to `false` and adds a check mark next to the `Don't Listen` menu item.

Both callbacks include the `fcnview` object as an argument (in addition to the required source and event data arguments) to provide access to the handle of the listener objects.

The `enableLisn` function is called when the user selects **Listen** from the context menu.

```matlab
function enableLisn(obj,src,evnt)
    obj.HLUpdateGraph.Enabled = true; % Enable listener
    obj.HLLm.Enabled = true; % Enable listener
    set(obj.HEnableCm,'Checked','on') % Check Listen
    set(obj.HDisableCm,'Checked','off') % Uncheck Don't Listen
end
```

The `disableLisn` function is called when the user selects **Don't Listen** from the context menu.

```matlab
function disableLisn(obj,src,evnt)
    obj.HLUpdateGraph.Enabled = false; % Disable listener
    obj.HLLm.Enabled = false; % Disable listener
    set(obj.HEnableCm,'Checked','off') % Uncheck Listen
    set(obj.HDisableCm,'Checked','on') % Check Don't Listen
end
```
@fcneval/fcneval.m Class Code

classdef fcneval < handle
    properties
    FofXY
    end

    properties (SetObservable = true)
    Lm = [-2*pi 2*pi];
    end % properties SetObservable = true

    properties (Dependent = true)
    Data
    end

    events
    UpdateGraph
    end

end

methods
    function obj = fcneval(fcn_handle,limits)  % Constructor returns object
        if nargin > 0
            obj.FofXY = fcn_handle;                 % Assign property values
            obj.Lm = limits;

        end
    end

    function set.FofXY(obj,func)
        me = fcneval.isSuitable(func);
        if ~isempty(me)
            throw(me)
        end
        obj.FofXY = func;
        notify(obj,'UpdateGraph');
    end

    function set.Lm(obj,lim)
        if ~(lim(1) < lim(2))
            error('Limits must be monotonically increasing')
        else
            obj.Lm = lim;
        end
    end
function data = get.Data(obj)
    [x,y] = fcneval.grid(obj.Lm);
    matrix = obj.FofXY(x,y);
    data.X = x;
    data.Y = y;
    data.Matrix = real(matrix);
end
end % methods

methods (Static = true)
    function [x,y] = grid(lim)
        inc = (lim(2)-lim(1))/20;
        [x,y] = meshgrid(lim(1):inc:lim(2));
    end % grid

    function isOk = isSuitable(funcH)
        v = [1 1;1 1];
        try
            funcH(v,v);
        catch  %#ok<CTCH>
            me = MException('DocExample:fcneval',...'
                ['The function ',func2str(funcH),' Is not a suitable F(x,y)']);
            isOk = me;
            return
        end
        if isscalar(funcH(v,v));
            me = MException('DocExample:fcneval',...'
                ['The function ',func2str(funcH),' Returns a scalar when evaluated']);
            isOk = me;
            return
        end
        isOk = [];
    end
end
end

@fcnview/fcnview.m Class Code

classdef fcnview < handle
properties
    FcnObject     % `fcneval` object
    HAxes         % subplot axes handle
    HLUpdateGraph % UpdateGraph listener handle
    HLLm          % `Lm` property PostSet listener handle
    HEnableCm     % "Listen" context menu handle
    HDisableCm    % "Don't Listen" context menu handle
    HSurface      % Surface object handle
end

methods
    function obj = fcnview(fcnobj)
        if nargin > 0
            obj.FcnObject = fcnobj;
            obj.createLisn;
        end
    end

    function createLisn(obj)
        obj.HLUpdateGraph = addlistener(obj.FcnObject,'UpdateGraph',...
            @(src,evnt)listenUpdateGraph(obj,src,evnt));
        obj.HLLm = addlistener(obj.FcnObject,'Lm','PostSet',...
            @(src,evnt)listenLm(obj,src,evnt));
    end

    function lims(obj)
        lmts = obj.FcnObject.Lm;
        set(obj.HAxes,'XLim',lmts);
        set(obj.HAxes,'Ylim',lmts);
    end

    function updateSurfaceData(obj)
        data = obj.FcnObject.Data;
        set(obj.HSurface,...
            'XData',data.X,...
            'YData',data.Y,...
            'ZData',data.Matrix);
    end

    function listenUpdateGraph(obj,-,−)
        if ishandle(obj.HSurface)
            obj.updateSurfaceData
        end
    end
function listenLm(obj, -, -)
    if ishandle(obj.HAxes)
        lims(obj);
        if ishandle(obj.HSurface)
            obj.updateSurfaceData
        end
    end
end

function delete(obj)
    if ishandle(obj.HAxes)
        delete(obj.HAxes);
    else
        return
    end
end
end
methods (Static)
createViews(a)
end
end

@fcnview/createViews

function createViews(fcnevalobj)
    p = pi; deg = 180/p;
    hfig = figure('Visible','off',
        'Toolbar','none');

    for k=4:-1:1
        fcnviewobj(k) = fcnview(fcnevalobj);
        axh = subplot(2,2,k);
        fcnviewobj(k).HAxes = axh;
        hcm(k) = uicontextmenu;
        set(axh,'Parent',hfig,...
            'FontSize',8,...
            'UIContextMenu',hcm(k))
        fcnviewobj(k).HEnableCm = uimenu(hcm(k),...
            'Label','Listen',...
            'Checked','on',...
            'Callback',@(src,evnt)enableLisn(fcnviewobj(k),src,evnt));
        fcnviewobj(k).HDisableCm = uimenu(hcm(k),...
            'Label','Don''t Listen',...
Events — Sending and Responding to Messages

```matlab
'Checked','off',
'Callback',@(src,evnt)disableLisn(fcnviewobj(k),src,evnt));
az = p/k*deg;
view(axh,az,30)
title(axh,[ 'View: ',num2str(az),' 30'])
fcnviewobj(k).lims;
surfLight(fcnviewobj(k),axh)
end
set(hfig,'Visible','on')
end
function surfLight(obj,axh)
    obj.HSurface = surf(obj.FcnObject.Data.X,...
    obj.FcnObject.Data.Y,...
    obj.FcnObject.Data.Matrix,...
    'FaceColor',[.8 .8 0],'EdgeColor',[.3 .3 .2],...
    'Face Lighting','phong',...
    'Face Alpha',.3,...
    'Hit Test','off',...
    'Parent',axh);
lims(obj)
camlight left; material shiny; grid off
colormap copper
end
function enableLisn(obj,~,-)
    obj.HLUpdateGraph.Enabled = true;
    obj.HLLm.Enabled = true;
    set(obj.HEnableCm,'Checked','on')
    set(obj.HDisableCm,'Checked','off')
end
function disableLisn(obj,~,-)
    obj.HLUpdateGraph.Enabled = false;
    obj.HLLm.Enabled = false;
    set(obj.HEnableCm,'Checked','off')
    set(obj.HDisableCm,'Checked','on')
end
```
How to Build on Other Classes

- “Hierarchies of Classes — Concepts” on page 12-2
- “Create Subclasses — Syntax and Techniques” on page 12-7
- “Sequence of Constructor Calls in Class Hierarchy” on page 12-13
- “Modify Superclass Methods” on page 12-15
- “Modify Superclass Properties” on page 12-18
- “Subclass Multiple Classes” on page 12-20
- “Specify Allowed Subclasses” on page 12-22
- “Control Access to Class Members” on page 12-25
- “Property Access List” on page 12-33
- “Method Access List” on page 12-34
- “Event Access List” on page 12-35
- “Support Both Handle and Value Subclasses” on page 12-36
- “Subclasses of MATLAB Built-In Types” on page 12-44
- “Behavior of Inherited Built-In Methods” on page 12-48
- “Built-In Subclass Without Properties” on page 12-53
- “Built-In Subclass with Properties” on page 12-61
- “Use of size and numel with Classes” on page 12-67
- “Class to Represent Hardware” on page 12-73
- “Determine Array Class” on page 12-76
- “Abstract Classes” on page 12-80
- “Interfaces” on page 12-85
Hierarchies of Classes — Concepts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>In this section...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>“Classification” on page 12-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Develop the Abstraction” on page 12-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Design of Class Hierarchies” on page 12-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Super and Subclass Behavior” on page 12-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Implementation and Interface Inheritance” on page 12-5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Classification

Organizing classes into hierarchies facilitates the reuse of code and the reuse of solutions to design problems that have already been solved. You can think of class hierarchies as sets — supersets (referred to as superclasses or base classes), and subsets (referred to as subclasses or derived classes). For example, the following picture shows how you could represent an employee database with classes.
At the root of the hierarchy is the Employees class. It contains data and operations that apply to the set of all employees. Contained in the set of employees are subsets whose members, while still employees, are also members of sets that more specifically define the type of employee. Subclasses like TestEngineer are examples of these subsets.

**Develop the Abstraction**

Classes are representations of real world concepts or things. When designing a class, form an abstraction of what the class represents. Consider an abstraction of an employee and what are the essential aspects of employees for the intended use of the class. Name, address, and department can be what all employees have in common.
When designing classes, your abstraction should contain only those elements that are necessary. For example, the employee hair color and shoe size certainly characterize the employee, but are probably not relevant to the design of this employee class. Their sales region is relevant only to some employee so this characteristic belongs in a subclass.

**Design of Class Hierarchies**

As you design a system of classes, put common data and functionality in a superclass, which you then use to derive subclasses. The subclasses inherit the data and functionality of the superclass and define only aspects that are unique to their particular purposes. This approach provides advantages:

• Avoid duplicating code that is common to all classes.
• Add or change subclasses at any time without modifying the superclass or affecting other subclasses.
• If the superclass changes (for example, all employees are assigned a number), then subclass automatically get these changes.

**Super and Subclass Behavior**

Subclass objects behave like objects of the superclass because they are specializations of the superclass. This fact facilitates the development of related classes that behave similarly, but are implemented differently.

**A Subclass Object “Is A” Superclass Object**

You can usually describe the relationship between an object of a subclass and an object of its superclass with a statement like:

The subclass is a superclass. For example: An Engineer is an Employee.

This relationship implies that objects belonging to a subclass have the same properties, methods, and events as the superclass. Subclass objects also have any new features defined by the subclass. Test this relationship with the isa function.

**Treat Subclass Objects like Superclass Objects**

You can pass a subclass object to a superclass method, but you can access only those properties that the superclass defines. This behavior enables you to modify the subclasses without affecting the superclass.
Two points about super and subclass behavior to keep in mind are:

- Methods defined in the superclass can operate on subclass objects.
- Methods defined in the subclass cannot operate on superclass objects.

Therefore, you can treat an `Engineer` object like any other `Employees` object, but an `Employee` object cannot pass for an `Engineer` object.

**Limitations to Object Substitution**

MATLAB determines the class of an object based on its most specific class. Therefore, an `Engineer` object is of class `Engineer`, while it is also an `Employees` object, as using the `isa` function reveals.

Generally, MATLAB does not allow you to create arrays containing a mix of superclass and subclass objects because an array can be of only one class. If you attempt to concatenate objects of different classes, MATLAB looks for a converter method defined by the less dominant class.

See “Concatenating Objects of Different Classes” on page 10-15 for more information.

See `matlab.mixin.Heterogeneous` for information on defining heterogeneous class hierarchies.

See “Object Converters” on page 17-11 for information on defining converter methods.

**Implementation and Interface Inheritance**

MATLAB classes support both the inheritance of implemented methods from a superclass and the inheritance of interfaces defined by abstract methods in the superclass.

Implementation inheritance enables code reuse by subclasses. For example, an `employee` class can have a `submitStatus` method that all `employee` subclasses can use. Subclasses can extend an inherited method to provide specialized functionality, while reusing the common aspects. See “Modify Superclass Methods” on page 12-15 for more information on this process.

Interface inheritance is useful in these cases:

- You want a group of classes to provide a common interface.
• Subclasses create specialized implementations of methods and properties.

Create an interface using an abstract class as the superclass. This class defines the methods and properties that you must implement in the subclasses, but does not provide an implementation.

The subclasses must provide their own implementation of the abstract members of the superclass. To create an interface, define methods and properties as abstract using their Abstract attribute.

See “Abstract Classes” on page 12-80 for more information and an example.
Create Subclasses — Syntax and Techniques

In this section...

“Subclass Definition” on page 12-7
“Initialize Superclasses from Subclasses” on page 12-7
“Call Superclass Constructor Explicitly” on page 12-9
“Constructor Arguments and Object Initialization” on page 12-9
“Call Only Direct Superclass from Constructor” on page 12-10
“Subclass Alias for Existing Class” on page 12-11

Subclass Definition

To define a class that is a subclass of another class, add the superclass to the `classdef` line after a `<` character:

```
classdef ClassName < SuperClass
```

When inheriting from multiple classes, use the `&` character to indicate the combination of the superclasses:

```
classdef ClassName < SuperClass1 & SuperClass2
```

See “Class Member Compatibility” on page 12-20 for more information on deriving from multiple superclasses.

Class Attributes

Subclasses do not inherit superclass attributes.

Initialize Superclasses from Subclasses

To initialize the object for each superclass within the subclass constructor, use the following syntax:

```
obj@SuperClass1(args,...);
...
obj@SuperclassN(args,...);
```
Where \( obj \) is the output of the constructor, \( SuperClass \ldots \) is the name of a superclass, and \( args \) are any arguments required by the respective superclass constructor.

For example, the following segment of a class definition shows that a class called \( stock \) that is a subclass of a class called \( asset \).

```plaintext
classdef stock < asset
    methods
        function s = stock(asset_args,...)
            if nargin == 0
                ...
                % Assign values to asset_args
            end
            % Call asset constructor
            s@asset(asset_args);
            ...
        end
    end
end
```

“Constructing Subclasses” on page 9-19 provides more information on creating subclass constructor methods.

**Reference Superclasses Contained in Packages**

If a superclass is contained in a package, include the package name. For example:

```plaintext
classdef stock < financial.asset
    methods
        function s = stock(asset_args,...)
            if nargin == 0
                ...
            end
            % Call asset constructor
            s@financial.asset(asset_args);
            ...
        end
    end
end
```

**Initialize Objects Using Multiple Superclasses**

To derive a class from multiple superclasses, initialize the subclass object with calls to each superclass constructor:

```plaintext
classdef stock < financial.asset & trust.member
```
Create Subclasses — Syntax and Techniques

Call Superclass Constructor Explicitly

Explicitly calling each superclass constructor enables you to:

- Pass arguments to superclass constructors
- Control the order in which the superclass constructors are called

If you do not explicitly call the superclass constructors from the subclass constructor, MATLAB implicitly calls these constructors with no arguments. In this case, the superclass constructors must support no argument syntax.

In the case of multiple superclasses, MATLAB does not guarantee any specific calling sequence. If the order in which MATLAB calls the superclass constructors is important, call the superclass constructors explicitly from the subclass constructor.

Constructor Arguments and Object Initialization

You cannot conditionalize the object initialization calls to the superclass. Locate calls to superclass constructors outside any conditional code blocks.

Ensure that your class constructor supports the zero arguments syntax. To satisfy the need for a zero-argument syntax, assign appropriate values to input argument variables before constructing the object.

For example, the `stock` class constructor supports the no argument case with the `if` statement, but initializes the object for the superclass outside of the `if` code block.

```matlab
classdef stock < financial.asset
    properties
```
SharePrice
end
methods
function s = stock(name,pps)
    % Support no input argument case
    if nargin == 0
        name = '';
        pps = 0;
    end
    % Call superclass constructor
    s@financial.asset(name)
    % Assign property value
    s.SharePrice = pps;
end
end

Call Only Direct Superclass from Constructor

You can call only a direct superclass constructor from a subclass constructor. For example, suppose class B derives from class A and class C derives from class B. The constructor for class C cannot call the constructor for class A to initialize properties. Class B must initialize class A properties.

The following implementations of classes A, B, and C show how to design this relationship in each class.

Class A defines properties x and y, but assigns a value only to x:

classdef A
    properties
        x
        y
    end
    methods
        function obj = A(x)
            ...
            obj.x = x;
        end
    end
end

Class B inherits properties x and y from class A. The class B constructor calls the class A constructor to initialize x and then assigns a value to y.
classdef B < A
    methods
        function obj = B(x,y)
            ...
            obj@A(x);
            obj.y = y;
        end
    end
end

class C accepts values for the properties x and y, and passes these values to the class B constructor, which in turn calls the class A constructor:

classdef C < B
    methods
        function obj = C(x,y)
            ...
            obj@B(x,y);
        end
    end
end

Subclass Alias for Existing Class

You can refer to a class using a different name by creating an alias for that class. This technique is like the C++ typedef concept. To create an alias, create an empty subclass:

classdef NewClassName < OldClassName
end

The old class constructor must be callable with zero input arguments.

This technique is useful when reloading objects that you saved using the old class name. However, the class of the object reflects the new name. That is, this code returns the new class name.

class(obj)

Old Class Constructor Requires Arguments

If the old class constructor requires arguments, add a constructor to the new class:

classdef NewClass < OldClass
    methods
end
function obj = NewClass(x,y)
    obj@OldClass(x,y);  
end
end

Related Examples

• “No Input Argument Constructor Requirement” on page 9-18
Sequence of Constructor Calls in Class Hierarchy

MATLAB does not guarantee the sequence in which superclass constructors are called when constructing a subclass object. However, you can control the order in which class constructors are called by calling superclass constructors explicitly from the subclass constructor.

If you explicitly call a superclass constructor from the most specific subclass constructor, then MATLAB calls the most specific subclass constructor first. If you do not make an explicit call to a superclass constructor from the subclass constructor, MATLAB makes the implicit call before accessing the object.

Suppose that you have a hierarchy of classes in which `ClassC` derives from `ClassB`, which derives from `ClassA`. The constructor for a subclass can call only direct superclasses. Therefore, each class constructor can call the direct superclass constructor:

```matlab
classdef ClassB < ClassA
... function obj = ClassB
  obj@ClassA

classdef ClassC < ClassB
... function obj = ClassC
  obj@ClassB
```

In cases of multiple inheritance, the subclass constructor can call each superclass constructor. To ensure that a specific superclass constructor calling sequence is followed, your most specific subclass constructor must explicitly call ALL superclass constructors:
If you do not explicitly call all direct superclass constructors, MATLAB does not guarantee the order in which the superclass constructors are called.

**Related Examples**
- “Class Constructor Methods” on page 9-16
Modify Superclass Methods

In this section...

“When to Modify Superclass Methods” on page 12-15
“Extend Superclass Methods” on page 12-15
“Complete Superclass Methods in Subclass” on page 12-16
“How to Redefine Superclass Methods” on page 12-17

When to Modify Superclass Methods

An important concept in class design is that a subclass object is also an object of its superclass. Therefore, you can pass a subclass object to a superclass method and have the method execute properly. At the same time, you can apply special processing to the unique aspects of the subclass. Some useful techniques include:

- Calling a superclass method from within a subclass method
- Redefining in the subclass protected methods called from within a public superclass method
- Defining the same named methods in both super and subclass, but using different implementations

Extend Superclass Methods

Subclass methods can call superclass methods of the same name. This fact enables you to extend a superclass method in a subclass without completely redefining the superclass method. For example, suppose that both superclass and subclass defines a method called foo. The method names are the same so the subclass method can call the superclass method. However, the subclass method can also perform other steps before and after the call to the superclass method. It can operate on the specialized parts to the subclass that are not part of the superclass.

For example, this subclass defines a foo method, which calls the superclass foo method

```matlab
classdef sub < super
    methods
        function foo(obj)
            % preprocessing steps
            foo@super(obj);
    end
end
```
% postprocessing steps
end
end
end

**Complete Superclass Methods in Subclass**

A superclass method can define a process that executes in a series of steps using a protected method for each step (**Access** attribute set to **protected**). Then, subclasses can create their own versions of the protected methods that implement the individual steps in the process.

Implement this technique as shown here:

```matlab
classdef super
    methods
        function foo(obj)
            step1(obj)
            step2(obj)
            step3(obj)
        end
    end
    methods (Access = protected)
        function step1(obj)
            % superclass version
        end
        ...
    end
end
```

The subclass does not reimplement the `foo` method, it reimplements only the methods that carry out the series of steps (`step1(obj), step2(obj), step3(obj)`). That is, the subclass can specialize the actions taken by each step, but does not control the order of the steps in the process. When you pass a subclass object to the superclass `foo` method, MATLAB calls the subclass step methods because of the dispatching rules.

```matlab
classdef sub < super
    ...
    methods (Access = protected)
        function step1(obj)
            % subclass version
        end
        ...
end
```
How to Redefine Superclass Methods

You can completely redefine a superclass method. In this case, both the superclass and the subclass would define the same named method.

Related Examples

•  “Invoking Superclass Methods in Subclass Methods” on page 9-14
Modify Superclass Properties

In this section...

“Allowed Superclass Property Modification” on page 12-18
“Private Local Property Takes Precedence in Method” on page 12-18

Allowed Superclass Property Modification

There are two separate conditions under which you can redefine superclass properties:

• The value of the superclass property Abstract attribute is true
• The values of the superclass property SetAccess and GetAccess attributes are private

In the first case, the superclass is just requesting that you define a concrete version of this property to ensure a consistent interface. In the second case, only the superclass can access the private property, so the subclass is free to reimplement it in any way.

Private Local Property Takes Precedence in Method

When superclass and subclass define a property with the same name, methods that refer to this property name access the property of the class defining the method.

For example, a subclass property has the same name as a superclass private property, and a method of the superclass references the property name. MATLAB accesses the property defined by the superclass. Given the following classes, Super and Sub:

```matlab
classdef Super
    properties (Access = private)
        Prop = 2;
    end
    methods
        function p = superMethod(obj)
            p = obj.Prop;
        end
    end
end

classdef Sub < Super
    properties
```
Prop = 1;
end
end

If you create an instance of the subclass and use it to call the superclass method, MATLAB access the private property of the superclass:

subObj = Sub
subObj =
    Sub with properties:
        Prop: 1
subObj.superMethod
ans =
    2

More About
- “Property Attributes” on page 8-7
Subclass Multiple Classes

In this section...

“Class Member Compatibility” on page 12-20
“Multiple Inheritance” on page 12-21

Class Member Compatibility

When you create a subclass derived from multiple classes, the subclass inherits the properties, methods, and events defined by all specified superclasses. If more than one superclass defines a property, method, or event having the same name, there must be an unambiguous resolution to the multiple definitions. You cannot derive a subclass from any two or more classes that define incompatible class members.

There are various situations where you can resolve name and definition conflicts, as described in the following sections.

Property Conflicts

If two or more superclasses define a property with the same name, then at least one of the following must be true:

- All, or all but one of the properties must have their SetAccess and GetAccess attributes set to private
- The properties have the same definition in all superclasses (for example, when all superclasses inherited the property from a common base class)

Method Conflicts

If two or more superclasses define methods with the same name, then at least one of the following must be true:

- The method Access attribute is private so only the defining superclass can access the method.
- The method has the same definition in all subclasses. This situation can occur when all superclasses inherit the method from a common base class and none of the superclasses override the inherited definition.
- The subclass redefines the method to disambiguate the multiple definitions across all superclasses. Therefore, the superclass methods must not have their Sealed attribute set to true.
• Only one superclass defines the method as **Sealed**, in which case, the subclass adopts the sealed method definition.

• The superclasses define the methods as **Abstract** and rely on the subclass to define the method.

**Event Conflicts**

If two or more superclasses define events with the same name, then at least one of the following must be true:

• The event **ListenAccess** and **NotifyAccess** attributes must be **private**.

• The event has the same definition in all superclasses (for example, when all superclasses inherited the event from a common base class)

**Multiple Inheritance**

Resolving the potential conflicts involved when defining a subclass from multiple classes often reduces the value of this approach. For example, problems can arise when you enhance superclasses in future versions and introduce new conflicts.

Reduce potential problems by implementing only one unrestricted superclass. In all other superclasses, all methods are

• **Abstract**

• Defined by a subclass or inherited from the unrestricted superclass

In general, when using multiple inheritance, ensure that all superclasses remain free of conflicts in definition.

**Related Examples**

• “Create Subclasses — Syntax and Techniques” on page 12-7

• “Support Both Handle and Value Subclasses” on page 12-36
Specify Allowed Subclasses

In this section...

“Basic Knowledge” on page 12-22
“Why Control Allowed Subclasses” on page 12-22
“Specify Allowed Subclasses” on page 12-22
“Define Sealed Hierarchy of Classes” on page 12-24

Basic Knowledge

The material presented in this section builds on an understanding of the following information:

• “Class Metadata” on page 16-2
• “Attribute Specification” on page 5-27

Why Control Allowed Subclasses

A class definition can specify a list of classes that it allows to subclass the class. Classes not in the list cannot subclass the class. To specify the allowed subclasses, use the AllowedSubclasses class attribute.

The AllowedSubclasses attribute provides a design point between Sealed classes, which do not allow subclassing, and the default behavior, which does not restrict subclassing.

By controlling the allowed subclasses, you can create a sealed hierarchy of classes. That is, a system of classes that enables a specific set of classes to derive from specific base classes, but that does not allow unrestricted subclassing.

See “Define Sealed Hierarchy of Classes” on page 12-24 for more about this technique.

Specify Allowed Subclasses

Note: Specify attribute values explicitly, not as values returned from functions or other MATLAB expressions.
Specify a list of one or more allowed subclasses in the `classdef` statement by assigning `meta.class` objects to the `AllowedSubclasses` attribute. Create the `meta.class` object referencing a specific class using the `?` operator and the class name:

```matlab
classdef (AllowedSubclasses = ?ClassName) MySuperClass
    ...
end
```

Use a cell array of `meta.class` objects to define more than one allowed subclass:

```matlab
classdef (AllowedSubclasses = {?ClassName1,?ClassName2,...?ClassNameN}) MySuperClass
    ...
end
```

Always use the fully qualified class name when referencing the class name:

```matlab
classdef (AllowedSubclasses = ?Package.SubPackage.ClassName1) MySuperClass
    ...
end
```

Assigning an empty cell array to the `AllowedSubclasses` attribute is effectively the same as defining a `Sealed` class.

```matlab
classdef (AllowedSubclasses = {}) MySuperClass
    ...
end
```

**Note:** Use only the `?` operator and the class name to generate `meta.class` objects. Values assigned to the `AllowedSubclasses` attribute cannot contain any other MATLAB expressions, including functions that return either `meta.class` objects or cell arrays of `meta.class` objects.

**Result of Declaring Allowed Subclasses**

Including a class in the list of `AllowedSubclasses` does not define that class as a subclass or require you to define the class as a subclass. It just allows the referenced class to be defined as a subclass.

Declaring a class as an allowed subclass does not affect whether this class can itself be subclassed.

A class definition can contain assignments to the `AllowedSubclasses` attribute that reference classes that are not currently defined or available on the MATLAB path.
However, any referenced subclass that MATLAB cannot find when loading the class is effectively removed from the list without causing an error or warning.

**Note:** If MATLAB does not find any of the classes in the allowed classes list, the class is effectively **Sealed**. A sealed class is equivalent to `AllowedSubclasses = {}`.

### Define Sealed Hierarchy of Classes

The `AllowedSubclasses` attribute enables you to define a sealed class hierarchy by sealing the allowed subclasses:

```matlab
classdef (AllowedSubclasses = {?SubClass1,?SubClass2}) SuperClass
    ...
end
```

Define the allowed subclasses as **Sealed**:

```matlab
classdef (Sealed) SubClass1
    ...
end
classdef (Sealed) SubClass2
    ...
end
```

Sealed class hierarchies enable you to use the level of abstraction that your design requires while maintaining a closed system of classes.

### Related Examples

- "Support Both Handle and Value Subclasses" on page 12-36
Control Access to Class Members

In this section...

“Basic Knowledge” on page 12-25
“Applications for Access Control Lists” on page 12-26
“Specify Access to Class Members” on page 12-26
“Properties with Access Lists” on page 12-27
“Methods with Access Lists” on page 12-28
“Abstract Methods with Access Lists” on page 12-32

Basic Knowledge

The material presented in this section builds on an understanding of the following information:

Related Topics

• “Class Metadata” on page 16-2
• “Attribute Specification” on page 5-27

Terminology and Concepts

• Class members — Properties, methods, and events defined by a class
• Defining class — The class defining the class member for which access is being specified
• Get access — Permission to read the value of a property; controlled by the property GetAccess attribute
• Set access — Permission to assign a value to a property; controlled by the property SetAccess attribute
• Method access – Determines what other methods and functions can call the class method; controlled by the method Access attribute
• Listen access — Permission to define listeners; controlled by the event ListenAccess attribute
• Notify access — Permission to trigger events; controlled by the event NotifyAccess attribute
Possible Values for Access to Class Members

The following class member attributes can contain a list of classes:

- Properties — Access, GetAccess, and SetAccess. For a list of all property attributes, see “Property Attributes” on page 8-7.
- Methods — Access. For a list of all method attributes, see “Method Attributes” on page 9-5.
- Events — ListenAccess and NotifyAccess. For a list of all event attributes, see “Event Attributes” on page 11-17.

These attributes accept the following possible values:

- public — Unrestricted access
- protected — Access by defining class and its subclasses
- private — Access by defining class only
- Access list — A list of one or more classes. Only the defining class and the classes in the list have access to the class members to which the attribute applies. If you specify a list of classes, MATLAB does not allow access by any other class (that is, access is private, except for the listed classes).

Applications for Access Control Lists

Access control lists enable you to control access to specific class properties, methods, and events. Access control lists specify a list of classes to which you grant access to these class members.

This technique provides greater flexibility and control in the design of a system of classes. For example, use access control lists to define separate classes, but not allow access to class members from outside the class system.

Specify Access to Class Members

Specify the classes that are allowed to access a particular class member in the member access attribute statement. For example:

```matlab
methods (Access = {?ClassName1,?ClassName2,...})
```

Use the class `meta.class` object to refer to classes in the access list. To specify more than one class, use a cell array of `meta.class` objects. Use the package name when referring to classes that are in packages.
Control Access to Class Members

**Note:** Specify the `meta.class` objects explicitly (created with the `?` operator), not as values returned by functions or other MATLAB expressions.

**How MATLAB Interprets Attribute Values**

- Granting access to a list of classes restricts access to only:
  - The defining class
  - The classes in the list
  - Subclasses of the classes in the list
- Including the defining class in the access list gives all subclasses of the defining class access.
- MATLAB resolves references to classes in the access list only when the class is loaded. If MATLAB cannot find a class that is included in the access list, that class is effectively removed from access.
- MATLAB replaces unresolved `meta.class` entries in the list with empty `meta.class` objects.
- An empty access list (that is, an empty cell array) is equivalent to `private` access.

**Specify Metaclass Objects**

Generate the `meta.class` objects using only the `?` operator and the class name. Values assigned to the attributes cannot contain any other MATLAB expressions, including functions that return allowed attribute values:

- `meta.class` objects
- Cell arrays of `meta.class` objects
- The values `public`, `protected`, or `private`

Specify these values explicitly, as shown in the example code in this section.

**Properties with Access Lists**

These sample classes show the behavior of a property that grants read access (`GetAccess`) to a class. The `GrantAccess` class gives `GetAccess` to the `NeedAccess` class for the `Prop1` property:

```matlab
classdef GrantAccess
```
properties (GetAccess = ?NeedAccess)
    Prop1 = 7;
end
end

The NeedAccess class defines a method that uses the value of the GrantAccess Prop1 value. The dispObj is defined as a Static method, however, it could be an ordinary method.

classdef NeedAccess
    methods (Static)
        function dispObj(GrantAccessObj)
            disp(['Prop1 is: ',num2str(GrantAccessObj.Prop1)])
        end
    end
end

Get access to Prop1 is private so MATLAB returns an error:

a = GrantAccess;
a.Prop1

Getting the 'Prop1' property of the 'GrantAccess' class is not allowed.

However, MATLAB allows access to Prop1 by the NeedAccess class:

NeedAccess.dispObj(a)

Prop1 is: 7

Methods with Access Lists

Classes granted access to a method can:

• Call the method using an instance of the defining class.
• Define their own method with the same name (if not a subclass).
• Override the method in a subclass only if the superclass defining the method includes itself or the subclass in the access list.

These sample classes show the behavior of methods called from methods of other classes that are in the access list. The class AcListSuper gives the AcListNonSub class access to its m1 method:

classdef AcListSuper
methods (Access = {?AcListNonSub})
    function obj = m1(obj)
        disp ('Method m1 called')
    end
end
end

Because AcListNonSub is in the access list of m1, its methods can call m1 using an instance of AcListSuper:

classdef AcListNonSub
    methods
        function obj = nonSub1(obj,AcListSuper_Obj)
            % Call m1 on AcListSuper class
            AcListSuper_Obj.m1;
        end
        function obj = m1(obj)
            % Define a method named m1
            disp(['Method m1 defined by ',class(obj)])
        end
    end
end

Create objects of both classes:

    a = AcListSuper;
    b = AcListNonSub;

Call the AcListSuper m1 method using an AcListNonSub method:

    b.nonSub1(a);

Method m1 called

Call the AcListNonSub m1 method:

    b.m1;

Method m1 defined by AcListNonSub

**Subclasses Without Access**

Including the defining class in the access list for a method grants access to all subclasses derived from that class. When you derive from a class that has a method with an access list and that list does *not* include the defining class:
• Subclass methods cannot call the superclass method because it is effectively private.
• Subclasses cannot override the superclass method.
• Subclass methods can call the superclass method indirectly using an instance of a class that is in the access list.
• Methods of classes that are in the superclass method access list, but that are not subclasses, can call the superclass method. To call the superclass method, use an object of a subclass that is not in the superclass method access list.

For example, AcListSub is a subclass of AcListSuper. The AcListSuper class defines an access list for method m1. However, this list does not include AcListSuper, which would implicitly include all subclasses of AcListSuper in the access list:

```matlab
classdef AcListSub < AcListSuper
    methods
        function obj = sub1(obj,AcListSuper_Obj)
            % Access m1 via superclass object (NOT ALLOWED)
            AcListSuper_Obj.m1;
        end
        function obj = sub2(obj,AcListNonSub_Obj,AcListSuper_obj)
            % Access m1 via object that is in access list (is allowed)
            AcListNonSub_Obj.nonSub1(AcListSuper_Obj);
        end
    end
end
```

Attempting to call the superclass m1 method results in an error because subclasses are not in the access list for the method:

```matlab
a = AcListSuper;
b = AcListNonSub;
c = AcListSub;
c.sub1(a);
```

Error using AcListSuper/m1
Cannot access method 'm1' in class 'AcListSuper'.

Error in AcListSub/sub1 (line 4)
    AcListSuper_Obj.m1;
```

The AcListSub sub2 method can call a method of a class that is on the access list for m1, and that method (nonSub1) does have access to the superclass m1 method:

```matlab
c.sub2(b,a);
```

Method m1 called
When subclasses are not included in the access list for a method, those subclasses cannot define a method with the same name. This behavior is not the same as cases in which the method `Access` is explicitly declared as `private`.

For example, adding the following method to the `AcListSub` class definition produces an error when you attempt to instantiate the class.

```matlab
methods (Access = {?AcListNonSub})
    function obj = m1(obj)
        disp('AcListSub m1 method')
    end
end
```

If you attempt to instantiate the class, MATLAB returns an error:

```matlab
c = AcListSub;
```

Error using `AcListSub`
Class 'AcListSub' is not allowed to override the method 'm1' because neither it nor its superclasses have been granted access to the method by class 'AcListSuper'.

The `AcListNonSub` class, which is in the `m1` method access list, can define a method that calls the `m1` method using an instance of the `AcListSub` class. While `AcListSub` is not in the access list for method `m1`, it is a subclass of `AcListSuper`.

For example, add the following method to the `AcListNonSub` class:

```matlab
methods
    function obj = nonSub2(obj,AcListSub_Obj)
        disp('Call m1 via subclass object:')
        AcListSub_Obj.m1;
    end
end
```

Calling the `nonSub2` method results in execution of the superclass `m1` method:

```matlab
b = AcListNonSub;
c = AcListSub;
b.nonSub2(c);
```

Call `m1` via subclass object:
Method `m1` called

This behavior is consistent with the behavior of any subclass object, which can substitute for an object of its superclass.
Abstract Methods with Access Lists

A class containing a method declared as `Abstract` is an abstract class. It is the responsibility of subclasses to implement the abstract method using the function signature declared in the class definition.

When an abstract method has an access list, only the classes in the access list can implement the method. A subclass that is not in the access list cannot implement the abstract method so that subclass is itself abstract.
Property Access List

This class declares access lists for the property `GetAccess` and `Access` attributes:

```matlab
classdef PropertyAccess
    properties (GetAccess = {?ClassA, ?ClassB}, SetAccess = private)
        Prop1
    end
    properties (Access = ?ClassC)
        Prop2
    end
end
```

The class `PropertyAccess` specifies the following property access:

- Gives the classes `ClassA` and `ClassB` get access to the `Prop1` property.
- Gives all subclasses of `ClassA` and `ClassB` get access to the `Prop1` property.
- Does not give get access to `Prop1` from subclasses of `PropertyAccess`.
- Defines private set access for the `Prop1` property.
- Gives set and get access to `Prop2` for `ClassC` and its subclasses.

Related Examples

- “Properties with Access Lists” on page 12-27
Method Access List

This class declares an access list for the method Access attribute:

```matlab
classdef MethodAccess
        function listMethod(obj)
            ...
            end
        end
    end
end
```

The `MethodAccess` class specifies the following method access:

- Access to `listMethod` from an instance of `MethodAccess` by methods of the classes `ClassA` and `ClassB`.
- Access to `listMethod` from an instance of `MethodAccess` by methods of subclasses of `MethodAccess`, because of the inclusion of `MethodAccess` in the access list.
- Subclasses of `ClassA` and `ClassB` are allowed to define a method named `listMethod`, and `MethodAccess` is allowed to redefine `listMethod`. However, if `MethodAccess` was not in the access list, its subclasses could not redefine `listMethod`.

Related Examples

- “Methods with Access Lists” on page 12-28
Event Access List

This class declares an access list for the event `ListenAccess` attribute:

```matlab
classdef EventAccess
    events (NotifyAccess = private, ListenAccess = {?ClassA, ?ClassB})
    Event1
    Event2
end
end
```

The class `EventAccess` specifies the following event access:

- Limits notify access for `Event1` and `Event2` to `EventAccess`; only methods of the `EventAccess` can trigger these events.
- Gives listen access for `Event1` and `Event2` to methods of `ClassA` and `ClassB`. Methods of `EventAccess`, `ClassA`, and `ClassB` can define listeners for these events. Subclasses of `MyClass` cannot define listeners for these events.

**Related Examples**

- “Events and Listeners — Syntax and Techniques” on page 11-19
Support Both Handle and Value Subclasses

In this section...

“Basic Knowledge” on page 12-36
“Handle Compatibility Rules” on page 12-36
“Define Handle-Compatible Classes” on page 12-37
“Subclass Handle-Compatible Classes” on page 12-39
“Methods for Handle Compatible Classes” on page 12-41
“Handle-Compatible Classes and Heterogeneous Arrays” on page 12-42

Basic Knowledge

The material presented in this section builds on knowledge of the following information.

• “Create Subclasses — Syntax and Techniques” on page 12-7
• “Subclass Multiple Classes” on page 12-20
• “Comparison of Handle and Value Classes” on page 7-2

Key Concepts

Handle-compatible class is a class that you can combine with handle classes when defining a set of superclasses.

• All handle classes are handle-compatible.
• All superclasses of handle-compatible classes must also be handle compatible.

HandleCompatible — the class attribute that defines nonhandle classes as handle compatible.

Handle Compatibility Rules

Handle-compatible classes (that is, classes whose HandleCompatible attribute is set to true) follow these rules:

• All superclasses of a handle-compatible class must also be handle compatible
• If a class explicitly sets its `HandleCompatibility` attribute to `false`, then none of the class superclasses can be handle classes.

• If a class does not explicitly set its `HandleCompatible` attribute and, if any superclass is a handle, then all superclasses must be handle compatible.

• The `HandleCompatible` attribute is not inherited.

A class that does not explicitly set its `HandleCompatible` attribute to `true` is:

• A handle class if any of its superclasses are handle classes

• A value class if none of the superclasses are handle classes

**Define Handle-Compatible Classes**

A class is handle compatible if:

• It is a handle class

• Its `HandleCompatible` attribute is set to `true`

The `HandleCompatible` class attribute identifies classes that you can combine with handle classes when specifying a set of superclasses.

Handle compatibility provides greater flexibility when defining abstract superclasses. For example, mixin and interface classes in which the superclass supports both handle and value subclasses. Handle compatibility removes the need to define both a handle version and a nonhandle version of a class.

**A Handle Compatible Class**

The `Utility` class is useful to both handle and value subclasses. In this example, the `Utility` class defines a method to reset property values to the default values defined in the respective class definition:

```matlab
classdef (HandleCompatible) Utility
    methods
        function obj = resetDefaults(obj)
            mc = metaclass(obj);
            mp = mc.PropertyList;
            for k=1:length(mp)
                if mp(k).HasDefault && ~strcmp(mp(k).SetAccess,'private')
                    obj.(mp(k).Name) = mp(k).DefaultValue;
```
The Utility class is handle compatible. Therefore, you can use it in the derivation of classes that are either handle classes or value classes. See “Class Metadata” for information on using meta-data classes.

**Return Modified Objects**

The `resetDefaults` method defined by the Utility class returns the object it modifies. When you call `resetDefaults` with a value object, the method must return the modified object. It is important to implement methods that work with both handle and value objects in a handle compatible superclass. See “Object Modification” on page 5-62 for more information on modifying handle and value objects.

Consider the behavior of a value class that subclasses the Utility class. The PropertyDefaults class defines three properties, all of which have default values:

```matlab
classdef PropertyDefaults < Utility
    properties
        p1 = datestr(rem(now,1)); % Current time
        p2 = 'red';               % Character string
        p3 = pi/2;                % Result of division operation
    end
end
```

Create a PropertyDefaults object. MATLAB evaluates the expressions assigned as default property values when the class is first loaded. MATLAB uses these same default values whenever you create an instance of this class in the current MATLAB session.

```matlab
pd = PropertyDefaults
```

```matlab
pd =

PropertyDefaults with properties:

    p1: ' 4:42 PM'
    p2: 'red'
    p3: 1.5708
```

Assign new values that are different from the default values:
Support Both Handle and Value Subclasses

pd.p1 = datestr(rem(now,1));
pd.p2 = 'green';
pd.p3 = pi/4;

All pd object property values now contain values that are different from the default values originally defined by the class:

pd

pd =

    PropertyDefaults with properties:
       p1: ' 4:45 PM'
       p2: 'green'
       p3: 0.7854

Call the resetDefaults method, which is inherited from the Utility class. Because the PropertyDefaults class is not a handle class, return the modified object.

pd = pd.resetDefaults

pd =

    PropertyDefaults with properties:
       p1: ' 4:54 PM'
       p2: 'red'
       p3: 1.5708

If the PropertyDefaults class was a handle class, then you would not need to save the object returned by the resetDefaults method. To design a handle compatible class like Utility, ensure that all methods work with both kinds of classes.

Subclass Handle-Compatible Classes

According to the rules described in “Handle Compatibility Rules” on page 12-36, when you combine a handle superclass with a handle-compatible superclass, the result is a handle subclass, which is handle compatible.

However, subclassing a handle-compatible class does not necessarily result in the subclass being handle compatible. Consider the following two cases, which demonstrate two possible results.
Combine Nonhandle Utility Class with Handle Classes

Suppose that you define a class that subclasses a handle class, and the handle compatible Utility class discussed in “A Handle Compatible Class” on page 12-37. The HPropertyDefaults class has these characteristics:

- It is a handle class (it derives from handle).
- All its superclasses are handle compatible (handle classes are handle compatible by definition).

```matlab
classdef HPropertyDefaults < handle & Utility
    properties
        GraphPrim = line;
        Width = 1.5;
        Color = 'black';
    end
end
```

The HPropertyDefaults class is handle compatible:

```matlab
hpd = HPropertyDefaults;
mc = metaclass(hpd);
mc.HandleCompatible
```

ans =

1

Nonhandle Subclasses of a Handle-Compatible Class

If you subclass both a value class that is not handle compatible and a handle compatible class, the subclass is a nonhandle compatible value class. The ValueSub class:

- Is a value class (It does not derive from handle.)
- One of its superclasses is handle compatible (the Utility class).

```matlab
classdef ValueSub < MException & Utility
    methods
        function obj = ValueSub(str1,str2)
            obj = obj@MException(str1,str2);
        end
    end
end
```
The `ValueSub` class is a nonhandle-compatible value class because the `MException` class does not define the `HandleCompatible` attribute as `true`:

```matlab
hv = ValueSub('MATLAB:narginchk:notEnoughInputs',...
               'Not enough input arguments.');
mc = metaclass(hv);
mc.HandleCompatible
ans = 0
```

**Methods for Handle Compatible Classes**

Objects passed to methods of handle compatible classes can be either handle or value objects. There are two different behaviors to consider when implementing methods for a class that operate on both handles and values:

- If an input object is a handle object and the method alters the handle object, these changes are visible to all workspaces that contain the same handle.
- If an input object is a value object, then changes to the object made inside the method affect only the value inside the method workspace.

Handle compatible methods generally do not alter input objects because the effects of such changes are not the same for handle and nonhandle objects.

See “Object Modification” on page 5-62 for information about modifying handle and value objects.

**Identify Handle Objects**

To determine if an object is a handle object, use the `isa` function:

```matlab
isa(obj,'handle')
```

**Modify Value Objects in Methods**

If a method operates on both handle and value objects, the method must return the modified object. For example, the `setTime` method returns the object it modifies:

```matlab
classdef (HandleCompatible) Util
    % Utility class that adds a time stamp
    properties
```
Handle-Compatible Classes and Heterogeneous Arrays

A heterogeneous array contains objects of different classes. Members of a heterogeneous array have a common superclass, but can belong to different subclasses. See the matlab.mixin.Heterogeneous class for more information on heterogeneous arrays. The matlab.mixin.Heterogeneous class is a handle-compatible class.

Methods Must Be Sealed

You can invoke only those methods that are sealed by the common superclass on heterogeneous arrays (Sealed attribute set to true). Sealed methods prevent subclasses from overriding those methods and guarantee that methods called on heterogeneous arrays have the same definition for the entire array.

Subclasses cannot override sealed methods. In situations requiring subclasses to specialize methods defined by a utility class, you can employ the design pattern referred to as the template method.

Template Technique

Suppose that you implement a handle compatible class that works with heterogeneous arrays. This approach enables you to seal public methods, while providing a way for each subclass to specialize how the method works on each subclass instance. In the handle compatible class:

• Define a sealed method that accepts a heterogeneous array as input.
• Define a protected, abstract method that each subclass must implement.
• Within the sealed method, call the overridden method for each array element.

Each subclass in the heterogeneous hierarchy implements a concrete version of the abstract method. The concrete method provides specialized behavior required by the particular subclass.
The **Printable** class shows how to implement a template method approach:

```matlab
classdef (HandleCompatible) Printable
    methods(Sealed)
        function print(aryIn)
            n = numel(aryIn);
            for k=1:n
                printElement(aryIn(k));
            end
        end
    end
    methods(Access=protected, Abstract)
        printElement(objIn)
    end
end
```

**More About**

- “Heterogeneous Arrays” on page 10-21
Subclasses of MATLAB Built-In Types

In this section...

“MATLAB Built-In Types” on page 12-44
“Built-In Types You Cannot Subclass” on page 12-44
“Why Subclass Built-In Types” on page 12-45
“Which Functions Work with Subclasses of Built-In Types” on page 12-45
“Behavior of Built-In Functions with Subclass Objects” on page 12-45
“Built-In Subclasses That Define Properties” on page 12-46

MATLAB Built-In Types

Built-in types represent fundamental kinds of data such as numeric arrays, logical arrays, and character arrays. Other built-in types contain data belonging to these fundamental types and other classes. For example, cell and struct arrays can contain instances of any class.

Built-in types define methods that perform operations on objects of these classes. For example, you can perform operations on numeric arrays, such as, sorting, rounding values, and element-wise and matrix multiplication. You can create an object of class double using an assignment statement, indexing expressions, or using converter functions.

See “Fundamental MATLAB Classes” for more information on MATLAB built-in classes.

Note: It is an error to define a class that has the same name as a built-in class.

Built-In Types You Cannot Subclass

You cannot subclass the following built-in MATLAB classes:

- char
- cell
- struct
- table
• function_handle

You cannot subclass any class that has its Sealed attribute set to true. To determine if the class is Sealed, query the class metadata:

```matlab
mc = ClassName;
mc.Sealed
```

A value of 0 indicates that the class is not Sealed and can be subclasses.

**Why Subclass Built-In Types**

Subclass a built-in type to extend the operations that you can perform on a particular class of data. For example, when you want to:

• Define unique operations to perform on class data.
• Be able to use methods of the built-in class and other built-in functions directly with objects of the subclass. For example, you do not need to reimplement all the mathematical operators if you derived from a class such as double that defines these operators.

**Which Functions Work with Subclasses of Built-In Types**

Consider a class that defines enumerations. It can derive from an integer class and inherit methods that enable you to compare and sort values. For example, integer classes like int32 support all the relational methods (eq, ge, gt, le, lt, ne).

To see a list of functions that the subclass has inherited as methods, use the methods function:

```matlab
methods('SubclassName')
```

Generally, you can use an object of the subclass with any:

• Inherited methods
• Functions that normally accept input arguments of the same class as the superclass.

**Behavior of Built-In Functions with Subclass Objects**

When you define a subclass of a built-in class, the subclass inherits all the methods defined by that built-in class. MATLAB also provides additional methods to subclasses of built-in classes that override several built-in functions.
Built-in functions and methods that work on built-in classes can behave differently when called with subclasses of built-in classes. Their behavior depends on which function you are using and whether your subclass defines properties.

**Behavior Categories**

When you call an inherited method on a subclass of a built-in class, the result depends on the nature of the operation performed by the method. The behaviors of these methods fit into several categories.

• Operations on data values return objects of the superclass. For example, if you subclass `double` and perform addition on two subclass objects, MATLAB adds the numeric values and returns a value of class `double`.

• Operations on the orientation or structure of the data return objects of the subclass. Methods that perform these kinds of operations include, `reshape`, `permute`, `transpose`, and so on.

• Converting a subclass object to a built-in class returns an object of the specified class. Functions such as `uint32`, `double`, `char` work with subclass objects the same as they work with built-in objects.

• Comparing objects or testing for inclusion in a specific set returns logical or built-in objects, depending on the function. Functions such as `isequal`, `ischar`, `isobject` work with subclass objects the same as they work with superclass objects.

• Indexing expressions return objects of the subclass. If the subclass defines properties, then default indexing no longer works. The subclass must define its own indexing methods.

• Concatenation returns an object of the subclass. If the subclass defines properties, then default concatenation no longer works and the subclass must define its own concatenation methods.

To list the built-in functions that work with a subclass of a built-in class, use the `methods` function.

**Built-In Subclasses That Define Properties**

When a subclass of a built-in class defines properties, MATLAB no longer supports indexing and concatenation operations. MATLAB cannot use the built-in functions normally called for these operations because subclass properties can contain any data.
The subclass must define what indexing and concatenation mean for a class with properties. If your subclass needs indexing and concatenation functionality, then the subclass must implement the appropriate methods.

**Methods for Indexing**

To support indexing operations, the subclass must implement these methods:

- `subsasgn` — Implement dot notation and indexed assignments
- `subsref` — Implement dot notation and indexed references
- `subsindex` — Implement object as index value

**Methods for Concatenation**

To support concatenation, the subclass must implement the following methods:

- `horzcat` — Implement horizontal concatenation of objects
- `vertcat` — Implement vertical concatenation of objects
- `cat` — Implement concatenation of object arrays along specified dimension
Behavior of Inherited Built-In Methods

**In this section...**

“Subclass double” on page 12-48
“Built-In Data Value Methods” on page 12-49
“Built-In Data Organization Methods” on page 12-50
“Built-In Indexing Methods” on page 12-51
“Built-In Concatenation Methods” on page 12-51

**Subclass double**

Most built-in functions used with built-in classes are actually methods of the built-in class. For example, the `double` and `single` classes define several methods to perform arithmetic operations, indexing, matrix operation, and so on. All these built-in class methods work with subclasses of the built-in class.

Subclassing `double` enables your class to use features without implementing the methods that a MATLAB built-in class defines.

The `DocSimpleDouble` class subclasses the built-in `double` class.

```matlab
classdef DocSimpleDouble < double
    methods
        function obj = DocSimpleDouble(data)
            if nargin == 0
                data = 0;
            end
            obj = obj@double(data);
        end
    end
end
```

Create an instance of the class `DocSimpleDouble`.

```matlab
sc = DocSimpleDouble(1:10)
```

```
sc =
    1x10 DocSimpleDouble:
    double data:
           1     2     3     4     5     6     7     8     9    10
```
Call a method inherited from class `double` that operates on the data, such as `sum`. `sum` returns a `double` and, therefore, uses the `display` method of class `double`:

```matlab
sum(sc)
```

\[
\text{ans} = \\
55
\]

Index `sc` like an array of doubles. The returned value is the class of the subclass:

```matlab
a = sc(2:4)
```

\[
\text{a} = \\
\begin{array}{c}
1x3 \text{ DocSimpleDouble:} \\
\text{double data:} \\
2 \\
3 \\
4
\end{array}
\]

Indexed assignment works the same as the built-in class. The returned value is the class of the subclass:

```matlab
sc(1:5) = 5:-1:1
```

\[
\text{sc} = \\
\begin{array}{c}
1x10 \text{ DocSimpleDouble:} \\
\text{double data:} \\
5 \\
4 \\
3 \\
2 \\
1 \\
6 \\
7 \\
8 \\
9 \\
10
\end{array}
\]

Calling a method that modifies the order of the data elements operates on the data, but returns an object of the subclass:

```matlab
sc = DocSimpleDouble(1:10); 
sc(1:5) = 5:-1:1; 
a = sort(sc)
```

\[
\text{a} = \\
\begin{array}{c}
1x10 \text{ DocSimpleDouble:} \\
\text{double data:} \\
1 \\
2 \\
3 \\
4 \\
5 \\
6 \\
7 \\
8 \\
9 \\
10
\end{array}
\]

**Built-In Data Value Methods**

When you call a built-in data value method on a subclass object, MATLAB uses the superclass part of the subclass object as inputs to the method. The value returned is same class as the built-in class. For example:
sc = DocSimpleDouble(1:10);
a = sin(sc);
class(a)

ans =
double

**Built-In Data Organization Methods**

This group of built-in methods reorders or reshapes the input argument array. These methods operate on the superclass part of the subclass object, but return an object of the same type as the subclass.

sc = DocSimpleDouble(randi(9,1,10))
sc = DocSimpleDouble(randi(9,1,10))
sc = DocSimpleDouble(randi(9,1,10))

sc =

1x10 DocSimpleDouble:

    double data:
      6     1     8     9     7     7     7     4     6     2

b = sort(sc)

b =

1x10 DocSimpleDouble:

    double data:
      1     2     4     6     6     7     7     7     8     9

Methods in this group include:

- reshape
- permute
- sort
- transpose
- ctranspose


**Built-In Indexing Methods**

Built-in classes use specially implemented versions of the `subsref`, `subsasgn`, and `subsindex` methods to implement indexing. When you index a subclass object, only the built-in data is referenced (not the properties defined by your subclass).

For example, indexing element 2 in the `DocSimpleDouble` subclass object returns the second element in the vector:

```matlab
sc = DocSimpleDouble(1:10);
a = sc(2)
```

```
a =
   DocSimpleDouble
   double data:
       2
```

The value returned from an indexing operation is an object of the subclass. You cannot make indexed references if your subclass defines properties, unless your subclass overrides the default `subsref` method.

Assigning a new value to the second element in the `DocSimpleDouble` object operates only on the superclass data:

```matlab
sc(2) = 12
```

```
sc =
   1x10 DocSimpleDouble:
   double data:
   1   12   3   4   5   6   7   8   9  10
```

The `subsref` method also implements dot notation for methods.

**Built-In Concatenation Methods**

Built-in classes use the functions `horzcat`, `vertcat`, and `cat` to implement concatenation. When you use these functions with subclass objects of the same type, MATLAB concatenates the superclass data to form a new object. For example, you can concatenate objects of the `DocSimpleDouble` class:

```matlab
sc1 = DocSimpleDouble(1:10);
sc2 = DocSimpleDouble(11:20);
[sc1,sc2]
```
ans = 1x20 DocSimpleDouble: double data: Columns 1 through 13 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 Columns 14 through 20 14 15 16 17 18 19 20
[sc1;sc2]
ans = 2x10 DocSimpleDouble: double data:
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10
11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20

Concatenate two objects along a third dimension:
c = cat(3,sc1,sc2)
c =
1x10x2 DocSimpleDouble:
double data:
(:,:,1) = 
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10

(:,:,2) = 
11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20

If the subclass of a built-in class defines properties, you cannot concatenate objects of the subclass. There is no way to determine how to combine properties of different objects. However, your subclass can define custom horzcat and vertcat methods to support concatenation in whatever way makes sense for your subclass.

Related Examples
• “Built-In Subclass Without Properties” on page 12-53
• “Built-In Subclass with Properties” on page 12-61
Built-In Subclass Without Properties

In this section...

“A Class to Manage uint8 Data” on page 12-53
“Using the DocUint8 Class” on page 12-54

A Class to Manage uint8 Data

This example shows a class derived from the built-in uint8 class. This class simplifies the process of maintaining a collection of intensity image data defined by uint8 values. The basic operations of the class include:

• Capability to convert various classes of image data to uint8 to reduce object data storage.
• A method to display the intensity images contained in the subclass objects.
• Ability to use all the methods supported by uint8 data (for example, size, indexing, reshape, bitshift, cat, fft, arithmetic operators, and so on).

The class data are matrices of intensity image data stored in the superclass part of the subclass object. This approach requires no properties.

The DocUint8 class stores the image data, which converts the data, if necessary:

```matlab
classdef DocUint8 < uint8
    methods
        function obj = DocUint8(data)
            if nargin == 0
                data = uint8(0);
            end
            obj = obj@uint8(data);
        end
        function h = showImage(obj)
            data = uint8(obj);
            figure; colormap(gray(256))
            h = imagesc(data,[0 255]);
            axis image
            brighten(.2)
        end
    end
end
```
Using the DocUint8 Class

Create DocUint8 Objects

The DocUint8 class provides a method to display all images stored as DocUint8 objects in a consistent way. For example:

```matlab
cir = imread('circuit.tif');
img1 = DocUint8(cir);
img1.showImage;
```
Because `DocUint8` subclasses `uint8`, you can use any `uint8` methods. For example,

```matlab
size(img1)
```

```
ans =
   280   272
```

returns the size of the image data.

**Indexing Operations**

Inherited methods perform indexing operations, but return objects of the same class as the subclass.

Therefore, you can index into the image data and call a subclass method:

```matlab
showImage(img1(100:200,1:160));
```

Subscripted reference operations (controlled by the inherited `subsref` method) return a `DocUint8` object.
You can assign values to indexed elements:

```latex
img1(100:120,140:160) = 255;
img1.showImage;
```

Subscripted assignment operations (controlled by the inherited `subsasgn` method) return a `DocUint8` object.
Concatenation Operations

Concatenation operations work on DocUint8 objects because this class inherits the uint8 horzcat and vertcat methods, which return a DocUint8 object:

    showImage([img1 img1]);
Data Operations

Methods that operate on data values, such as arithmetic operators, always return an object of the built-in type (not of the subclass type). For example, multiplying DocUint8 objects returns a uint8 object:

a = img1.*1.8;
showImage(a);

Undefined function 'showImage' for input arguments of type 'uint8'.

To perform operations of this type, implement a subclass method to override the inherited method. The times method implements array (element-by-element) multiplication.
Add this method to the `DocUint8` class:

```matlab
function o = times(obj,val)
    u8 = uint8(obj).*val;
    o = DocUint8(u8);
end
```

When you override a `uint8` method, MATLAB calls the subclass method, not the base class method. The subclass method must:

- Call the `uint8 times` method on the `DocUint8` object data.
- Construct a new `DocUint8` object using the `uint8` data.

After adding the `times` method to the `DocUint8` class, the output of multiplication expressions is an object of the `DocUint8` class:

```matlab
showImage(img1.*1.8);
```
Related Examples

- “Class Operator Implementation” on page 17-40
- “Built-In Subclass with Properties” on page 12-61
Built-In Subclass with Properties

In this section...
“Subclasses with Properties” on page 12-61
“Property Added” on page 12-61
“Methods Implemented” on page 12-61
“Class Definition Code” on page 12-62
“Using ExtendDouble” on page 12-63
“Indexed Reference for ExtendDouble” on page 12-64
“Concatenation of ExtendDouble Objects” on page 12-65

Subclasses with Properties

When your subclass of a built-in class defines properties, default indexing and concatenation do not work. The default `subsref`, `horzcat`, and `vertcat` methods cannot work with unknown property types and values. Therefore, define these behaviors for the subclass.

This example subclasses the `double` class and defines a single property.

Property Added

The `ExtendDouble` class defines the `DataString` property to contain text that describes the data. The superclass part (`double`) of the class contains the data.

Methods Implemented

The following methods modify the behavior of the `ExtendDouble` class:

- `ExtendDouble` — The constructor supports a no argument syntax that initializes properties to empty values.
- `subsref` — Enables subscripted reference to the superclass part of the subclass, dot notation reference to the `DataString` property, and dot notation reference the built-in data via the string `Data`. The `double data` property is hidden.
- `horzcat` — Defines horizontal concatenation of `ExtendDouble` objects. concatenates the superclass part using the `double class` `horzcat` method and forms a cell array of the `DataString` properties.
• **vertcat** — The vertical concatenation equivalent of **horzcat** (both are required).
• **char** — A **ExtendDouble** to **char** converter used by **horzcat** and **vertcat**.
• **disp** — **ExtendDouble** implements a **disp** method to provide a custom display for the object.

### Class Definition Code

The **ExtendDouble** class extends **double** and implements methods to support subscripted reference and concatenation.

```matlab
classdef ExtendDouble < double

    properties
        DataString
    end

    methods
        function obj = ExtendDouble(data,str)
            if nargin == 0
                data = 0;
                str = '';
            elseif nargin == 1
                str = '';
            end
            obj = obj@double(data);
            obj.DataString = str;
        end

        function sref = subsref(obj,s)
            switch s(1).type
                case '.
                    switch s(1).subs
                        case 'DataString'
                            sref = obj.DataString;
                        case 'Data'
                            sref = double(obj);
                            if length(s)>1 && strcmp(s(2).type, '()')
                                sref = subsref(sref,s(2:end));
                            end
                        end
                case '()'
                    sf = double(obj);
                    if ~isempty(s(1).subs)
```
sf = subsref(sf,s(1:end));
else
    error('Not a supported subscripted reference')
end
sref = ExtendDouble(sf,obj.DataString);
end

function newobj = horzcat(varargin)
    d1 = cellfun(@double,varargin,'UniformOutput',false);
data = horzcat(d1{:});
str = horzcat(cellfun(@char,varargin,'UniformOutput',false));
newobj = ExtendDouble(data,str);
end

function newobj = vertcat(varargin)
    d1 = cellfun(@double,varargin,'UniformOutput',false);
data = vertcat(d1{:});
str = vertcat(cellfun(@char,varargin,'UniformOutput',false));
newobj = ExtendDouble(data,str);
end

function str = char(obj)
    str = obj.DataString;
end

function disp(obj)
disp(obj.DataString)
disp(double(obj))
end

Using ExtendDouble

Create an instance of ExtendDouble and notice that the display is different from the default:

ed = ExtendDouble(1:10,'One to ten')
ed =

One to ten
    1   2   3   4   5   6   7   8   9   10
The `sum` function continues to operate on the superclass part of the object:

```
sum(ed)
ans =
   55
```

Subscripted reference works because the class implements a `subsref` method:

```
ed(10:-1:1)
ans =
One to ten
    10    9    8    7    6    5    4    3    2    1
```

However, subscripted assignment does not work because the class does not define a `subsasgn` method:

```
ed(1:5) = 5:-1:1
Error using ExtendDouble/subsasgn
Cannot use '(' or '{' to index into an object of class 'ExtendDouble' because 'ExtendDouble' defines properties and subclasses 'double'.
Click here for more information.
```

The `sort` function works on the superclass part of the object:

```
sort(ed(10:-1:1))
ans =

    1    2    3    4    5    6    7    8    9   10
```

### Indexed Reference for `ExtendDouble`

Subscripted reference (performed by `subsref`) requires the subclass to implement its own `subsref` method.

```
ed = ExtendDouble(15:20,'fifteen to twenty');
a = ed(2)
a =
      fifteen to twenty
```
whos

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Size</th>
<th>Bytes</th>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Attributes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>1x1</td>
<td>146</td>
<td>ExtendDouble</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ed</td>
<td>1x6</td>
<td>186</td>
<td>ExtendDouble</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Access the property data:

c = ed.DataString

c =

fifteen to twenty

whos

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Size</th>
<th>Bytes</th>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Attributes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>1x1</td>
<td>146</td>
<td>ExtendDouble</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td>1x17</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>char</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ed</td>
<td>1x6</td>
<td>186</td>
<td>ExtendDouble</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Concatenation of ExtendDouble Objects

Create these two objects:

ed1 = ExtendDouble([1:10],'One to ten');
ed2 = ExtendDouble([10:-1:1],'Ten to one');

Concatenate these objects along the horizontal dimension:

hcat = [ed1,ed2]

hcat =

'One to ten'    'Ten to one'

Columns 1 through 13

| 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 10 | 9 | 8 |

Columns 14 through 20

| 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 |
whos

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Size</th>
<th>Bytes</th>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Attributes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ed1</td>
<td>1x10</td>
<td>204</td>
<td>ExtendDouble</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ed2</td>
<td>1x10</td>
<td>204</td>
<td>ExtendDouble</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hcat</td>
<td>1x20</td>
<td>528</td>
<td>ExtendDouble</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Vertical concatenation works in a similar way:

```matlab
vcat = [ed1; ed2]
```

`vcat =

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>'One to ten'</th>
<th>'Ten to one'</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10</td>
<td>10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

Both `horzcat` and `vertcat` return a new object of the same class as the subclass.

**Related Examples**
- “Built-In Subclass Without Properties” on page 12-53
Use of size and numel with Classes

In this section...

“size and numel” on page 12-67
“Built-In Class Behavior” on page 12-67
“Subclasses Inherited Behavior” on page 12-68
“Classes Not Derived from Built-In Classes” on page 12-69
“Change the Behavior of size or numel” on page 12-71
“Overload numArgumentsFromSubscript Instead of numel” on page 12-72

size and numel

The size function returns the dimensions of an array. The numel function returns the number of elements in an array, which is equivalent to prod(size(objArray)). That is, the product of the array dimensions.

The size and numel functions work consistently with arrays of user-defined objects. There is generally no need to overload size or numel in user-defined classes.

Several MATLAB functions use size and numel to perform their operations. Therefore, if you do overload either of these functions in your class, be sure that objects of your class work as designed with other MATLAB functions.

If your class modifies array indexing, see “Overload numArgumentsFromSubscript Instead of numel” on page 12-72

Built-In Class Behavior

When you use the size and numel functions in classes derived from built-in classes, these functions behave the same as they behave in the superclass.

Consider the built-in class double:

d = 1:10;
size(d)

ans =

The `double` class defines these behaviors, including parentheses indexing.

**Subclasses Inherited Behavior**

Unless the subclass explicitly overrides superclass behavior, subclasses behave like their superclasses. For example, `SimpleDouble` subclasses `double` and defines no properties:

```matlab
classdef SimpleDouble < double
    methods
        function obj = SimpleDouble(data)
            if nargin == 0
                data = 0;
            end
            obj = obj@double(data);
        end
    end
end
```

Create an object and assign the values `1:10`:

```matlab
sd = SimpleDouble(1:10);
```

The `size` function returns the size of the superclass part:

```matlab
size(sd)
ans =
1    10
```
The `numel` function returns the number of elements in the superclass part:

```matlab
numel(sd)
ans =
    10
```

Object arrays return the size of the superclass arrays:

```matlab
size([sd;sd])
ans =
     2    10
numel([sd;sd])
ans =
    20
```

The `SimpleDouble` class inherits the indexing behavior of the `double` class:

```matlab
sdsb = sd(7:end);
sizesdsb
ans =
     1     4
```

### Classes Not Derived from Built-In Classes

Consider a simple value class. This class does not inherit the array-like behaviors of the `double` class. For example:

```matlab
classdef VerySimpleClass
    properties
        Value
    end
end
```

Create an object and assign a 10-element array to the `Value` property:

```matlab
vs = VerySimpleClass;
vs.Value = 1:10;
```
size(vs)
ans =
    1     1

numel(vs)
ans =
    1

size([vs;vs])
ans =
    2     1

numel([vs;vs])
ans =
    2

vs is a scalar object. The Value property is an array of doubles:
size(vs.Value)
ans =
    1    10

Apply indexing expressions to the object property:
vssub = vs.Value(7:end);
size(vssub)
ans =
    1     4

The vs.Value property is an array of class double:
class(vs.Value)
ans =
    class double
Create an array of VerySimpleClass objects:
vsArray(1:10) = VerySimpleClass;

The Value property for array elements 2 through 10 is empty:
isempty([vsArray(2:10).Value])

ans =
    1

MATLAB does not apply scalar expansion to object array property value assignment. Use the deal function for this purpose:
[vsArray.Value] = deal(1:10);
isempty([vsArray.Value])

ans =
    0

The deal function assigns values to each Value property in the vsArray object array.

Indexing rules for object arrays are equivalent to the rules for arrays of struct:
vsArray(1).Value
ans =
    1    2    3    4    5    6    7    8    9    10

vsArray(1).Value(6)
ans =
    6

**Change the Behavior of size or numel**

Subclasses of built-in numeric classes inherit a size method, which operates on the superclass part of the subclass object (these methods are hidden). If you want size or
numel to behave differently, override them by defining a size or numel method in your subclass.

Other MATLAB functions use the values returned by these functions. If you change the way that size and numel behave, ensure that the values returned make sense for the intended use of your class.

**Overload numArgumentsFromSubscript Instead of numel**

If classes implement a numArgumentsFromSubscript method, MATLAB calls it instead of numel to determine the number of elements returned by indexed expressions that return comma-separated lists. For example, expressions such as:

A(1:2).Prop

Both subsref and subsasgn use numArgumentsFromSubscript:

- subsref — numArgumentsFromSubscript computes the number of expected outputs (nargout) returned subsref.
- subsasgn — numArgumentsFromSubscript computes the number of expected inputs (nargin) that MATLAB assigns as a result of a call to subsasgn.

Subclasses of built-in classes always return scalar objects as a result of subscripted reference and always use scalar objects for subscripted assignment.

If you define a class in which nargin for subsref or nargout for subsasgn must be a specific value, then overload numArgumentsFromSubscript to return that value.

**See Also**
numArgumentsFromSubscript

**Related Examples**
- “Modify nargout and nargin for Indexing Methods” on page 17-8
Class to Represent Hardware

In this section...

“Objective” on page 12-73
“Why Derive from int32” on page 12-73
“Implementation” on page 12-73
“Construct MuxCard Object” on page 12-74
“Call Methods of int32” on page 12-75

Objective

This example implements a class to represent an optical multiplex card. These cards typically have several input ports and an output port. The MuxCard class represents the ports by the port names and port data rates. The output rate of a multiplex card is the sum of the input port data rates.

Why Derive from int32

The MuxCard class derives from the int32 class because 32–bit integers represent the input port data rates. The MuxCard class inherits the methods of the int32 class, which simplifies the implementation of this subclass. For example, numeric array indexing and arithmetic operations work on MuxCard objects because the class inherits these operations from the int32 class.

Implementation

Here is the definition of the MuxCard class. Notice that the input port rates initialize the int32 portion of class.

```matlab
classdef MuxCard < int32
    properties
        InPutNames
        OutPutName
    end

    properties (Dependent = true)
        OutPutRate
```
Construct MuxCard Object

The constructor takes three arguments:

- *inptnames* — Cell array of input port names
- *inptrates* — Vector of input port rates
- *outpname* — Name for the output port

```matlab
omx = MuxCard({'inp1','inp2','inp3','inp4'},{3 12 12 48},'outp')
```

```matlab
omx =

1x4 MuxCard array with properties:

    InPutNames: {'inp1' 'inp2' 'inp3' 'inp4'}
```
Call Methods of int32

Use a MuxCard object like an array of int32 values. For example, this indexing statement accesses the data in the object to determine the names of the input ports that have a rate of 12:

```matlab
omx.InPutNames(omx==12)
```

```matlab
ans =
    inp2    inp3
```

The indexing statement generates a logical array index:

```matlab
omx == 12
```

```matlab
ans =
    0     1     1     0
```

Indexing the MuxCard object accesses the int32 vector of input port rates:

```matlab
omx(1:2)
```

```matlab
ans =
    3    12
```

The OutPutRate property get access method uses sum to sum the output port rates:

```matlab
omx.OutPutRate
```

```matlab
ans =
    75
```

Related Examples

- “Built-In Subclass with Properties” on page 12-61
Determine Array Class

In this section...

“Query the Class Name” on page 12-76
“Test for Array Class” on page 12-76
“Test for Specific Types” on page 12-77
“Test for Most Derived Class” on page 12-78

Query the Class Name

To determine the class of an array, use the class function:

```matlab
a = [2,5,7,11];
class(a)

ans =
double

str = 'Character array';
class(str)

ans =
char
```

Test for Array Class

The isa function enables you to test for a specific class or a category of numeric class (numeric, float, integer):

```matlab
a = [2,5,7,11];
is(a, 'double')

ans =
1

Floating-point values (single and double precision values):

```matlab
isa(a, 'float')

ans =
Determine Array Class

1

Numeric values (floating-point and integer values):

isa(a, 'numeric')
ans = 1

**isa Returns True for Subclasses**

*isa* returns true for classes derived from the specified class. For example, the SubInt class derives from the built-in type int16:

```matlab
classdef SubInt < int16
    methods
        function obj = SubInt(data)
            if nargin == 0
                data = 0;
            end
            obj = obj@int16(data);
        end
    end
end
```

By definition, an instance of the SubInt class is also an instance of the int16 class:

```matlab
aInt = SubInt;
isa(aInt, 'int16')
an = 1
```

Using the integer category also returns true:

```matlab
isa(aInt, 'integer')
an = 1
```

**Test for Specific Types**

The *class* function returns the name of the *most derived* class of an object:

```matlab
class(aInt)
```
Use the `strcmp` function with the `class` function to check for a specific class of an object:

```matlab
a = int16(7);
strcmp(class(a),'int16')
```

```matlab
ans =
    1
```

Because the `class` function returns the class name as a character string, the inheritance of objects does not affect the result of the string comparison performed by `strcmp`:

```matlab
aInt = SubInt;
strcmp(class(aInt),'int16')
```

```matlab
ans =
    0
```

**Test for Most Derived Class**

If you define functions that require inputs that are:

- MATLAB built-in types
- Not subclasses of MATLAB built-in types

Use the following techniques to exclude subclasses of built-in types from the input arguments.

- Define a cell array that contains the names of built-in types accepted by your function.
- Call `class` and `strcmp` to test for specific types in a MATLAB control statement.

Test an input argument:

```matlab
if strcmp(class(inputArg),'single')
    % Call function
else
    inputArg = single(inputArg);
end
```
**Test for Category of Types**

Suppose that you create a MEX-function, `myMexFcn`, that requires two numeric inputs that must be of type `double` or `single`:

```matlab
doutArray = myMexFcn(a,b)
```

Define a cell array that contains the character arrays `double` and `single`:

```matlab
floatTypes = {'double','single'};
```

```matlab
% Test for proper types
if any(strcmp(class(a),floatTypes)) && ...
    any(strcmp(class(b),floatTypes))
    outArray = myMexFcn(a,b);
else
    % Try to convert inputs to avoid error
    ...
end
```

**Another Test for Built-In Types**

Use `isobject` to separate built-in types from subclasses of built-in types. The `isobject` function returns `false` for instances of built-in types:

```matlab
% Create a int16 array
a = int16([2,5,7,11]);
isobject(a)
```

```matlab
ans =
    0
```

Determine if an array is one of the built-in integer types:

```matlab
if isa(a,'integer') && ~isobject(a)
    % a is a built-in integer type
    ...
end
```
Abstract Classes

Abstract classes are useful for describing functionality that is common to a group of classes, but requires unique implementations within each class.

Abstract Class Terminology

abstract class — A class that cannot be instantiated, but that defines class components used by subclasses.

abstract members — Properties or methods declared in an abstract class, but implemented in subclasses.

concrete members — Properties or methods that are fully implemented by a class.

concrete class — A class that can be instantiated. Concrete classes contain no abstract members.

interface — An abstract class describing functionality that is common to a group of classes, but that requires unique implementations within each class. The abstract class defines the interface of each subclass without specifying the actual implementation.

An abstract class serves as a basis (that is, a superclass) for a group of related subclasses. An abstract class can define abstract properties and methods that subclasses must implement. Each subclass can implement the concrete properties and methods in a way that supports their specific requirements.

Abstract classes can define properties and methods that are not abstract, and do not need to define any abstract members. Abstract classes pass on their concrete members through inheritance.
Implementing a Concrete Subclass

A subclass must implement all inherited abstract properties and methods to become a concrete class. Otherwise, the subclass is itself an abstract class.

Declare Classes as Abstract

A class is abstract when it declares:

• The Abstract class attribute
• An abstract method
• An abstract property

If a subclass of an abstract class does not define concrete implementations for all inherited abstract methods or properties, it is also abstract.

Abstract Class

Declare a class as abstract in the classdef statement:

```matlab
classdef (Abstract) AbsClass
    ...
end
```

For classes that declare the Abstract class attribute:

• Concrete subclasses must redefine any properties or methods that are declared as abstract.
• The abstract class does not need to define any abstract methods or properties.

When you define any abstract methods or properties, MATLAB automatically sets the class Abstract attribute to true.

Abstract Methods

Define an abstract method:

```matlab
methods (Abstract)
    abstMethod(obj)
end
```

For methods that declare the Abstract method attribute:
• Do not use a `function...end` block to define an abstract method, use only the method signature.
• Abstract methods have no implementation in the abstract class.
• Concrete subclasses are not required to support the same number of input and output arguments and do not need to use the same argument names. However, subclasses generally use the same signature when implementing their version of the method.

**Abstract Properties**

Define an abstract property:

```plaintext
properties (Abstract)
    AbsProp
end
```

For properties that declare the `Abstract` property attribute:

• Concrete subclasses must redefine abstract properties without the `Abstract` attribute.
• Concrete subclasses must use the same values for the `SetAccess` and `GetAccess` attributes as those attributes used in the abstract superclass.
• Abstract properties cannot define access methods and cannot specify initial values. The subclass that defines the concrete property can create access methods and specify initial values.

For more information on access methods, see “Property Access Methods” on page 8-14.

**Determine If a Class Is Abstract**

Determine if a class is abstract by querying the `Abstract` property of its `meta.class` object. For example, the `AbsClass` defines two abstract methods:

```plaintext
classdef AbsClass
    methods (Abstract, Static)
        result = absMethodOne
        output = absMethodTwo
    end
end
```

Use the logical value of the `meta.class Abstract` property to determine if the class is abstract:
mc = ?AbsClass;
if ~mc.Abstract
  % not an abstract class
end

Display Abstract Member Names

Use the meta.abstractDetails function to display the names of abstract properties or methods and the names of the defining classes:

meta.abstractDetails('AbsClass');

Abstract methods for class AbsClass:
  absMethodTwo % defined in AbsClass
  absMethodOne % defined in AbsClass

Find Inherited Abstract Properties and Methods

The meta.abstractDetails function returns the names and defining class of any inherited abstract properties or methods that you have not implemented in your subclass. Use this function if you want the subclass to be concrete and must determine what abstract members the subclass inherits.

For example, suppose that your subclass AbsClass, which is described in the “Determine If a Class Is Abstract” on page 12-82 section:

classdef SubAbsClass < AbsClass
% Does not implement absMethodOne
% defined as abstract in AbsClass
  methods (Static)
    function out = absMethodTwo(a,b)
      out = a + b;
    end
  end
end

Determine if you implemented all inherited class members using
meta.abstractDetails:

meta.abstractDetails(?SubAbsClass)

Abstract methods for class SubAbsClass:
  absMethodOne % defined in AbsClass
The **SubAbsClass** class itself is abstract because it has not implemented the **absMethodOne** defined in **AbsClass**.

**Related Examples**

- “Interfaces” on page 12-85
Interfaces

In this section...

“Interfaces and Abstract Classes” on page 12-85
“Interface Class Implementing Graphs” on page 12-85

Interfaces and Abstract Classes

The properties and methods defined by a class form the interface that determines how class users interact with objects of the class. When creating a group of related classes, interfaces define a common interface to all these classes. The actual implementations of the interface can differ from one class to another.

Consider a set of classes designed to represent various types of graphs. All classes must implement a Data property to contain the data used to generate the graph. However, the form of the data can differ considerably from one type of graph to another. Each class can implement the Data property differently.

The same differences apply to methods. All classes can have a draw method that creates the graph, but the implementation of this method changes with the type of graph.

The basic idea of an interface class is to specify the properties and methods that each subclass must implement without defining the actual implementation. This approach enables you to enforce a consistent interface to a group of related objects. As you add more classes in the future, the interface remains the same.

Interface Class Implementing Graphs

This example creates an interface for classes used to represent specialized graphs. The interface is an abstract class that defines properties and methods that the subclasses must implement, but does not specify how to implement these components.

This approach enforces the use of a consistent interface while providing the necessary flexibility to implement the internal workings of each specialized subclass differently.

In this example, a package folder contains the interface, derived subclasses, and a utility function:

+graphics/GraphInterface.m % abstract interface class
Interface Properties and Methods

The graph class specifies the following properties, which the subclasses must define:

- **Primitive** — Handle of the graphics object used to implement the specialized graph. The class user has no need to access these objects directly so this property has protected SetAccess and GetAccess.
- **AxesHandle** — Handle of the axes used for the graph. The specialized graph objects can set axes object properties. This property has protected SetAccess and GetAccess.
- **Data** — All subclasses of the GraphInterface class must store data. The type of data varies and each subclass defines the storage mechanism. Subclass users can change the data values so this property has public access rights.

The GraphInterface class names three abstract methods that subclasses must implement. The GraphInterface class also suggests in comments that each subclass constructor must accept the plot data and property name/property value pairs for all class properties.

- **Subclass constructor** — Accept data and P/V pairs and return an object.
- **draw** — Used to create a drawing primitive and render a graph of the data according to the type of graph implemented by the subclass.
- **zoom** — Implementation of a zoom method by changing the axes CameraViewAngle property. The interface suggests the use of the camzoom function for consistency among subclasses. The zoom buttons created by the addButton static method use this method as a callback.
- **updateGraph** — Method called by the set.Data method to update the plotted data whenever the Data property changes.

Interface Guides Class Design

The package of classes that derive from the GraphInterface abstract class implement the following behaviors:

- Creating an instance of a specialized GraphInterface object (subclass object) without rendering the plot
-Specifying any or none of the object properties when you create a specialized GraphInterface object
• Changing any object property automatically updates the currently displayed plot
• Allowing each specialized GraphInterface object to implement whatever additional properties it requires to give class users control over those characteristics.

Define the Interface

The GraphInterface class is an abstract class that defines the methods and properties used by the subclasses. Comments in the abstract class describe the intended implementation:

classdef GraphInterface < handle
    % Abstract class for creating data graphs
    % Subclass constructor should accept
    % the data that is to be plotted and
    % property name/property value pairs
    properties (SetAccess = protected, GetAccess = protected)
        Primitive
        AxesHandle
    end
    properties
        Data
    end
    methods (Abstract)
        draw(obj)
        % Use a line, surface,
        % or patch graphics primitive
        zoom(obj,factor)
        % Change the CameraViewAngle
        % for 2D and 3D views
        % use camzoom for consistency
        updateGraph(obj)
        % Update the Data property and
        % update the drawing primitive
    end
    methods
        function set.Data(obj,newdata)
            obj.Data = newdata;
            updateGraph(obj)
        end
        function addButtons(gobj)
            hfig = get(gobj.AxesHandle,'Parent');
            uicontrol(hfig,'Style','pushbutton','String','Zoom Out',... '
            'Callback',@(src,evnt)zoom(gobj,.5));
    end
end
The `GraphInterface` class implements the property set method (`set.Data`) to monitor changes to the `Data` property. An alternative is to define the `Data` property as `Abstract` and enable the subclasses to determine whether to implement a set access method for this property. The `GraphInterface` class defines a set access method that calls an abstract method (`updateGraph`, which each subclass must implement). The `GraphInterface` interface imposes a specific design on the whole package of classes, without limiting flexibility.

**Method to Work with All Subclasses**

The `addButtons` method adds push buttons for the `zoom` methods, which each subclass must implement. Using a method instead of an ordinary function enables `addButtons` to access the protected class data (the axes handle). Use the object `zoom` method as the push-button callback.

```matlab
function addButtons(gobj)
    hfig = get(gobj.AxesHandle,'Parent');
    uicontrol(hfig,'Style','pushbutton',
    'String','Zoom Out',...
    'Callback',@(src,evnt)zoom(gobj,.5));
    uicontrol(hfig,'Style','pushbutton',
    'String','Zoom In',...
    'Callback',@(src,evnt)zoom(gobj,2),...
    'Position':[100 20 60 20]);
end
```

**Derive a Concrete Class — LineGraph**

This example defines only a single subclass used to represent a simple line graph. It derives from `GraphInterface`, but provides implementations for the abstract methods `draw`, `zoom`, `updateGraph`, and its own constructor. The base class `GraphInterface` and subclass are all contained in a package (`graphics`), which you must use to reference the class name:

```matlab
classdef LineGraph < graphics.GraphInterface
```

```matlab
uicontrol(hfig,'Style','pushbutton','String','Zoom In',...
    'Callback',@(src,evnt)zoom(gobj,2),...
    'Position',[100 20 60 20]);
```
Add Properties

The LineGraph class implements the interface defined in the GraphInterface class and adds two additional properties—LineColor and LineType. This class defines initial values for each property, so specifying property values in the constructor is optional. You can create a LineGraph object with no data, but you cannot produce a graph from that object.

properties
    LineColor = [0 0 0];
    LineType = '-';
end

The LineGraph Constructor

The constructor accepts a struct with x and y coordinate data, and property name/property value pairs:

function gobj = LineGraph(data,varargin)
    if nargin > 0
        gobj.Data = data;
        if nargin > 2
            for k=1:2:length(varargin)
                gobj.(varargin{k}) = varargin{k+1};
            end
        end
    end
end

Implement the draw Method

The LineGraph draw method uses property values to create a line object. The LineGraph class stores the line handle as protected class data. To support the use of no input arguments for the class constructor, draw checks the Data property to determine if it is empty before proceeding:

function gobj = draw(gobj)
    if isempty(gobj.Data)
        error('The LineGraph object contains no data')
    end
    h = line(gobj.Data.x,gobj.Data.y,...
             'Color',gobj.LineColor,...
             'LineStyle',gobj.LineType);
    gobj.Primitive = h;
gobj.AxesHandle = get(h,'Parent');
end

Implement the zoom Method

The LineGraph zoom method follows the comments in the GraphInterface class which suggest using the camzoom function. camzoom provides a convenient interface to zooming and operates correctly with the push buttons created by the addButton method.

Define the Property Set Methods

Property set methods provide a convenient way to execute code automatically when the value of a property changes for the first time in a constructor. (See “Property Set Methods” on page 8-19.) The linegraph class uses set methods to update the line primitive data (which causes a redraw of the plot) whenever a property value changes. The use of property set methods provides a way to update the data plot quickly without requiring a call to the draw method. The draw method updates the plot by resetting all values to match the current property values.

Three properties use set methods: LineColor, LineType, and Data. LineColor and LineType are properties added by the LineGraph class and are specific to the line primitive used by this class. Other subclasses can define different properties unique to their specialization (for example, FaceColor).

The GraphInterface class implements the Data property set method. However, the GraphInterface class requires each subclass to define a method called updateGraph, which handles the update of plot data for the specific drawing primitive used.

The LineGraph Class

Here is the LineGraph class definition.

classdef LineGraph < graphics.GraphInterface
    properties
        LineColor = [0 0 0];
        LineType = ' - ';
    end

    methods
        function gobj = LineGraph(data,varargin)
            if nargin > 0
                gobj.Data = data;
                if nargin > 1
                    for k=1:2:length(varargin)
gobj.(varargin{k}) = varargin{k+1};
end
end
end

function gobj = draw(gobj)
    if isempty(gobj.Data)
        error('The LineGraph object contains no data')
    end
    h = line(gobj.Data.x,gobj.Data.y,...
        'Color',gobj.LineColor,...
        'LineStyle',gobj.LineType);
    gobj.Primitive = h;
    gobj.AxesHandle = h.Parent;
end

function zoom(gobj,factor)
    camzoom(gobj.AxesHandle,factor)
end

function updateGraph(gobj)
    set(gobj.Primitive,...
        'XData',gobj.Data.x,...
        'YData',gobj.Data.y)
end

function set.LineColor(gobj,color)
    gobj.LineColor = color;
    set(gobj.Primitive,'Color',color)
end

function set.LineType(gobj,ls)
    gobj.LineType = ls;
    set(gobj.Primitive,'LineStyle',ls)
end
end

**Use the LineGraph Class**

The LineGraph class defines the simple API specified by the graph base class and implements its specialized type of graph:

d.x = 1:10;
d.y = rand(10,1);
lg = graphics.LineGraph(d,'LineColor','b','LineType',':');
lg.draw;
lg.addButton;

Clicking the **Zoom In** button shows the `zoom` method providing the callback for the button.

Changing properties updates the graph:
d.y = rand(10,1);
lg.Data = d;
lg.LineColor = [0.9,0.1,0.6];

Now click Zoom Out and see the new results:

**Related Examples**

- “Abstract Classes” on page 12-80
Saving and Loading Objects

- “Save and Load Process” on page 13-2
- “Reduce MAT-File Size for Saved Objects” on page 13-4
- “Save Object Data to Recreate Graphics Objects” on page 13-5
- “Improve Version Compatibility with Default Values” on page 13-7
- “Avoid Property Initialization Order Dependency” on page 13-9
- “Modify the Save and Load Process” on page 13-13
- “Basic saveobj and loadobj Pattern” on page 13-16
- “Maintain Class Compatibility” on page 13-20
- “Initialize Objects When Loading” on page 13-27
- “Save and Load Objects from Class Hierarchies” on page 13-29
- “Restore Listeners” on page 13-32
- “Save and Load Dynamic Properties” on page 13-35
Save and Load Process

In this section...

“Save and Load Objects” on page 13-2
“What Information Is Saved?” on page 13-2
“How Is the Property Data Loaded?” on page 13-2
“Errors During Load” on page 13-3

Save and Load Objects

Use `save` and `load` to store and reload objects:

```
save filename object
load filename object
```

What Information Is Saved?

Saving objects in MAT-files saves:

- The full name of the object class, including any package qualifiers
- Values of dynamic properties
- The names and values of all properties, except properties that have their `Transient`, `Constant`, or `Dependent` attributes set to `true`

For a description of property attributes, see “Specify Property Attributes” on page 8-5

To save graphics objects, see `savefig`.

How Is the Property Data Loaded?

When loading objects from MAT-files, `load` restores the object. The `load` function:

- Creates a new object.
- Calls the class constructor with no arguments only if the class `ConstructOnLoad` attribute is set to `true`. Otherwise, `load` does not call the class constructor.
- Assigns the saved property values to the object properties. These assignments result in calls to property set methods defined by the class (except in the case of `Dependent` or `Transient` properties, which are not saved or loaded).
You can use property set methods to ensure that property values are still valid in cases where the class definition has changed.

For information on property set methods, see “Property Set Methods” on page 8-19.

**Errors During Load**

If a new version of a class removes or renames a property, `load` can generate an error when attempting to set the altered or deleted property.

When an error occurs while an object is being loaded from a file, MATLAB does one of the following:

- If the class defines a `loadobj` method, MATLAB returns the saved values to the `loadobj` method in a `struct`.
- If the class does not define a `loadobj` method, MATLAB silently ignores the errors. The `load` function reconstitutes the object with property values that do not produce an error.

In the `struct` passed to the `loadobj` method, the field names correspond to the property names. The field values are the saved values for the corresponding properties.

If the saved object derives from multiple superclasses that have private properties with same name, the `struct` contains only the property value of the most direct superclass.

For information on how to implement `saveobj` and `loadobj` methods, see “Modify the Save and Load Process” on page 13-13.
Reduce MAT-File Size for Saved Objects

In this section...

“Default Values” on page 13-4
“Dependent Properties” on page 13-4
“Transient Properties” on page 13-4
“Avoid Saving Unwanted Variables” on page 13-4

Default Values

If a property often has the same value, define a default value for that property. When the user saves the object to a MAT-file, MATLAB does not save the default value, which reduces the size of the MAT-file.

For more information on how MATLAB evaluates default value expressions, see “Define Default Values” on page 5-13.

Dependent Properties

Use a dependent property when the property value must be calculated at run time. A dependent property is not saved in the MAT-file when you save an object. Instances of the class do not allocate memory to hold a value for a dependent property.

Dependent is a property attribute (see “Property Attributes” on page 8-7 for a complete list.)

Transient Properties

MATLAB does not store the values of transient properties. Transient properties can store data in the object temporarily as an intermediate computation step or for faster retrieval. Use transient properties when you easily can reproduce the data at run time or when the data represents intermediate state that can be discarded.

Avoid Saving Unwanted Variables

Do not save variables that you do not want to load. Be sure that an object is still valid before you save it. For example, if you save a deleted handle object, MATLAB loads it as a deleted handle.
Save Object Data to Recreate Graphics Objects

In this section...

“What to Save” on page 13-5
“Regenerate When Loading” on page 13-5
“Change to a Stairstep Chart” on page 13-6

What to Save

Use transient properties to avoid saving what you can recreate when loading the object. For example, an object can contain component parts that you can regenerate from data that is saved. Regenerating these components also enables newer versions of the class to create the components in a different way.

Regenerate When Loading

The YearlyRainfall class illustrates how to regenerate a graph when loading objects of that class. YearlyRainfall objects contain a bar chart of the monthly rainfall for a given location and year. The Location and Year properties are ordinary properties whose values are saved when you save the object.

The Chart property contains the handle to the bar chart. When you save a bar chart, MATLAB also saves the figure, axes, and Bar object as well as the data required to create these graphics objects. The YearlyRainfall class design eliminates the need to save objects that it can regenerate:

• The Chart property is Transient so the graphics objects are not saved.
• ChartData is a private property that provides storage for the Bar object data (YData).
• The load function calls the set.ChartData method, passing it the saved bar chart data.
• The setup method regenerates the bar chart and assigns the handle to the Chart property. Both the class constructor and the set.ChartData method call setup.

classdef YearlyRainfall < handle
    properties
        Location

13-5
change to a stairstep chart

An advantage of the YearlyRainfall class design is the flexibility to modify the type of graph used without making previously saved objects incompatible. Loading the object recreates the graph based only on the data that is saved to the MAT-file.

For example, change the type of graph from a bar chart to a stair-step graph by modifying the setup method:

```matlab
methods(Access = private)
    function setup(rf, data)
        rf.Chart = stairs(data);
    end
end
```
Improve Version Compatibility with Default Values

Version Compatibility

Default property values can help you implement version compatibility for saved objects. For example, suppose that you add a property to version 2 of your class. Having a default value enables MATLAB to assign a value to the new property when loading a version 1 object.

Similarly, suppose version 2 of your class removes a property. If a version 2 object is saved and loaded into version 1, your loadobj method can use the default value from version 1.

Using a Default Property Value

The EmployeeInfo class shows how to use property default values as a way to enhance compatibility among versions. Version 1 of the EmployeeInfo class defines three properties — Name, JobTitle, and Department.

```matlab
classdef EmployeeInfo
    properties
        Name
        JobTitle
        Department
    end
end
```

Version 2 of the EmployeeInfo class adds a property, Country, for the country name of the employee location. The Country property has a default value of the string 'USA'.

```matlab
classdef EmployeeInfo
    properties
        Name
        JobTitle
        Department
        Country = 'USA';
end
```
end
end

The character array, 'USA', is a good default value because:

- MATLAB assigns and empty double [] to properties that do not have default values defined by the class. Empty double is not a valid value for the Country property.
- In version 1, all employees were in the USA. Therefore, any version 1 object loaded into version 2 receives a valid value for the Country property.
Avoid Property Initialization Order Dependency

In this section...

“Control Property Loading” on page 13-9
“Dependent Property with Private Storage” on page 13-9
“Property Value Computed from Other Properties” on page 13-11

Control Property Loading

Problems loading properties can occur when property values depend on the order in which the properties are set.

Suppose your class design is such that both of the following are true:

• A property set method changes another property value.
• A property value is computed solely from other property values.

Then the final state of an object after changing a series of property values can depend on the order in which you set the properties. This order dependency can affect the result of loading an object.

The load function sets property values in a particular order. This order can be different from the order in which you set the properties in the saved object. As a result, the loaded object can have different property values than the object had when it was saved.

Restore Nondependent Properties

If a property set function changes the values of other properties, then define the Dependent attribute of that property as true. MATLAB does not save or restore dependent property values.

Use nondependent properties for storing the values set by the dependent property. Then the load function restores the nondependent properties with the same values that were saved. The load function does not call the dependent property set method because there is no value in the saved file for that property.

Dependent Property with Private Storage

The Odometer class avoids order dependences when loading objects by controlling which properties are restored when loading:
• The **Units** property is dependent. Its property set method sets the **TotalDistance** property. Therefore **load** does not call the **Units** property set method.

• The load function restores **TotalDistance** to whatever value it had when you saved the object.

classdef Odometer
  properties (Constant)
    ConversionFactor = 1.6
  end
  properties
    TotalDistance = 0
  end
  properties (Dependent)
    Units
  end
  properties (Access = private)
    PrivateUnits = 'mi'
  end
  methods
    function unit = get.Units(obj)
      unit = obj.PrivateUnits;
    end
    function obj = set.Units(obj,newUnits)
      % validate newUnits to be a string
      switch (newUnits)
        case 'mi'
          if strcmp(obj.PrivateUnits,'km')
            obj.TotalDistance = obj.TotalDistance / ...
            obj.ConversionFactor;
            obj.PrivateUnits = newUnits;
          end
        case 'km'
          if strcmp(obj.PrivateUnits,'mi')
            obj.TotalDistance = obj.TotalDistance * ...
            obj.ConversionFactor;
            obj.PrivateUnits = newUnits;
          end
        otherwise
          error('Odometer:InvalidUnits', ...
               'Units ''%s'' is not supported.', newUnits);
        end
      end
    end
  end
end
Suppose that you create an instance of `Odometer` and set the following property values:

```matlab
odObj = Odometer;
odObj.Units = 'km';
odObj.TotalDistance = 16;
```

When you save the object:

- `ConversionFactor` is not saved because it is a `Constant` property.
- `TotalDistance` is saved.
- `Units` is not saved because it is a `Dependent` property.
- `PrivateUnits` is saved and provides the storage for the current value of `Units`.

When you load the object:

- `ConversionFactor` is obtained from the class definition.
- `TotalDistance` is loaded.
- `Units` is not loaded, so its set method is not called.
- `PrivateUnits` is loaded from the saved object.

If the `Units` property was not `Dependent`, loading it calls its set method and causes the `TotalDistance` property to be set again.

### Property Value Computed from Other Properties

The `Odometer2` class `TripDistance` property depends only on the values of two other properties, `TotalDistance` and `TripMarker`.

The class avoids order dependence when initializing property values during the load process by making the `TripDistance` property dependent. MATLAB does not save or load a value for the `TripDistance` property, but does save and load values for the two properties used to calculate `TripDistance` in its property get method.

```matlab
classdef Odometer2
    properties
        TotalDistance = 0
        TripMarker = 0
    end
    properties(Dependent)
        TripDistance
    end
```
end
methods

function distance = get.TripDistance(obj)
    distance = obj.TotalDistance - obj.TripMarker;
end
end
end
Modify the Save and Load Process

In this section...

“When to Modify the Save and Load Process” on page 13-13
“How to Modify the Save and Load Process” on page 13-13
“Implementing saveobj and loadobj Methods” on page 13-14
“Additional Considerations” on page 13-14
“Related Examples” on page 13-15

When to Modify the Save and Load Process

The primary reason for modifying the save and load process is to support backward and forward compatibility of classes. Consider modifying the save and load process when you:

• Rename a class
• Remove properties
• Define a circular reference of handle objects where initialization order is important
• Must call the constructor with arguments and, therefore, cannot use ConstructOnLoad

How to Modify the Save and Load Process

The most versatile technique for modifying the save and load process is to implement loadobj, and if necessary, saveobj methods for your class. MATLAB executes these methods when you call save or load on an object of the class.

The save function calls your class saveobj method before performing the save operation. The save function then saves the value returned by the saveobj method. You can use saveobj to return a modified object or a struct that contains property values.

load calls your class loadobj method after loading the object. The load function loads the value returned by the loadobj method into the workspace. A loadobj method can modify the object being loaded or can reconstruct an object from the data saved by the class saveobj method.
Implementing `saveobj` and `loadobj` Methods

Implement a `saveobj` method that modifies the object being saved, then implement a `loadobj` method to return the object to the correct state when loading it.

Implement the `loadobj` method as a Static method because MATLAB can call the `loadobj` method with a `struct` instead of an object of the class.

Implement the `saveobj` method as an ordinary method (that is, calling it requires an instance of the class).

MATLAB saves the object class name so that `load` can determine which `loadobj` method to call in cases where your `saveobj` method saves only the object data in a structure. Therefore, the class must be accessible to MATLAB when you load the object.

Use a `loadobj` method when:

- The class definition has changed since the object was saved, requiring you to modify the object before loading.
- A `saveobj` method modified the object during the save operation, perhaps saving data in a `struct`. Implement the `loadobj` method to reconstruct the object from the output of `saveobj`.

Additional Considerations

When you decide to modify the default save and load process, keep the following points in mind:

- If loading any property value from the MAT-file produces an error, `load` passes a `struct` to `loadobj`. The `struct` field names correspond to the property names extracted from the file.

- `loadobj` must always be able to accept a `struct` as input and return an object, even if there is no `saveobj` or `saveobj` does not return a `struct`.

- If `saveobj` returns a `struct`, then `load` always passes that `struct` to `loadobj`.

- Subclass objects inherit superclass `loadobj` and `saveobj` methods. Therefore, if you do not implement a `loadobj` or `saveobj` method in the subclass, MATLAB calls only the inherited methods.
If a superclass implements a `loadobj` or `saveobj` method, then a subclass can also implement a `loadobj` or `saveobj` method that calls the superclass methods. For more information, see “Save and Load Objects from Class Hierarchies” on page 13-29.

- The `load` function does not call the constructor by default. For more information, see “Initialize Objects When Loading” on page 13-27.

**Related Examples**

For examples that modify the save and load process, see:

- “Maintain Class Compatibility” on page 13-20
- “Restore Listeners” on page 13-32
- “Initialize Objects When Loading” on page 13-27
Basic `saveobj` and `loadobj` Pattern

Using `saveobj` and `loadobj`

Depending on the requirements of your class, there are various ways you can use `saveobj` and `loadobj` methods. This pattern is a flexible way to solve problems that you cannot address by simpler means.

The basic process is:

- Use `saveobj` to save all essential data in a `struct` and do not save the object.
- Use `loadobj` to reconstruct the object from the saved data.

This approach is not useful in cases where you cannot save property values in a `struct` field. Data that you cannot save, such as a file identifier, you can possibly regenerate in the `loadobj` method.

**saveobj**

For this pattern, define `saveobj` as an ordinary method that accepts an object of the class and returns a `struct`.

- Copy each property value to a structure field of the same name.
- You can save only the data that is necessary to rebuild the object. Avoid saving whole objects hierarchies, such as those created by graphs.

```matlab
function s = saveobj(obj)
    s.Prop1 = obj.Prop1;
    s.Prop2 = obj.Prop2
    s.Data = obj.GraphHandle.YData;
end
```

methods

```matlab
end
```
loadobj

Define loadobj as a static method. Create an object by calling the class constructor. Then assign values to properties from the struct passed to loadobj. Use the data to regenerate properties that were not saved.

methods(Static)
    function obj = loadobj(s)
        if isstruct(s)
            newObj = ClassConstructor;
            newObj.Prop1 = s.Prop1;
            newObj.Prop2 = s.Prop2
            newObj.GraphHandle = plot(s.Data);
            obj = newObj;
        else
            obj = s;
        end
    end
end

If the load function encounters an error, load passes loadobj a struct instead of an object. Your loadobj method must always be able to handle a struct as the input argument. The input to loadobj is always a scalar.

Handle Load Problems

loadobj can handle a struct input even if you are not using a saveobj method.

The GraphExpression class creates a graph of a MATLAB expression over a specified range of data. GraphExpression uses its loadobj method to regenerate the graph, which is not save with the object.

classdef GraphExpression
    properties
        FuncHandle
        Range
    end
    methods
        function obj = GraphExpression(fh,rg)
            obj.FuncHandle = fh;
            obj.Range = rg;
            makeGraph(obj)
        end
end
function makeGraph(obj)
    rg = obj.Range;
    x = min(rg):max(rg);
    data = obj.FuncHandle(x);
    plot(data)
end

methods (Static)
    function obj = loadobj(s)
        if isstruct(s)
            fh = s.FuncHandle;
            rg = s.Range;
            obj = GraphExpression(fh,rg);
        else
            makeGraph(s);
            obj = s;
        end
    end
end

Save and Load Object

Create an object with an anonymous function and a range of data as inputs:

h = GraphExpression(@(x)x.^4,[1:25])

h =
    GraphExpression with properties:
        FuncHandle: @(x)x.^4
        Range: [1x25 double]

Save the GraphExpression object and close the graph:

save myFile h
close

Load the object. MATLAB recreates the graph:

load myFile h

If the load function cannot create the object and passes a struct to loadobj, loadobj attempts to create an object with the data supplied.
Related Examples

- “Modify the Save and Load Process” on page 13-13
Maintain Class Compatibility

In this section...

“Rename Property” on page 13-20
“Update Property When Loading” on page 13-22
“Maintaining Compatible Versions of a Class” on page 13-23
“Version 2 of the PhoneBookEntry Class” on page 13-24

Rename Property

Suppose you want to rename a property, but do not want to cause errors in existing code that refer to the original property. For example, rename a public property called OfficeNumber to Location. Here is the original class definition:

```matlab
classdef EmployeeList
    properties
        Name
        Email
        OfficeNumber  % Rename as Location
    end
end
```

Use of a hidden dependent property can achieve the desired results.

- In the class definition, set the `OfficeNumber` property attributes to `Dependent` and `Hidden`.
- Create a property set method for `OfficeNumber` that sets the value of the `Location` property.
- Create a property get method for `OfficeNumber` that returns the value of the `Location` location property.

While the `OfficeNumber` property is hidden, existing code can continue to access this property. The `Hidden` attribute does not affect access.

Because `OfficeNumber` is dependent, there is no redundancy in storage required by adding the new property. MATLAB does not store or save dependent properties.

Here is the updated class definition.
classdef EmployeeList
    properties
        Name
        Email
        Location
    end
    properties (Dependent, Hidden)
        OfficeNumber
    end
    methods
        function obj = set.OfficeNumber(obj,val)
            obj.Location = val;
        end
        function val = get.OfficeNumber(obj)
            val = obj.Location;
        end
    end
end

Saving and Loading EmployeeList Objects

You can load old instances of the EmployeeList class in the presence of the new class version. Code that refers to the OfficeNumber property continues to work.

Forward and Backward Compatibility

Suppose you want to be able to load new EmployeeList objects into systems that still have the old version of the EmployeeList class. To achieve compatibility with old and new versions:

• Define the OfficeNumber property as Hidden, but not Dependent.
• Define the Location property as Dependent.

In this version of the EmployeeList class, the OfficeNumber property saves the value used by the Location property. Loading an object assigns values of the three original properties (Name, Email, and OfficeNumber), but does not assign a value to the new Location property. The lack of the Location property in the old class definition is not a problem.
Update Property When Loading

Suppose that you modify a class so that a property value changes in its form or type. Previously saved objects of the class must be updated when loaded to have a conforming property value.

Consider a class that has an `AccountID` property. Suppose that all account numbers must migrate from eight-digit numeric values to 12-element character arrays.

You can accommodate this change by implementing a `loadobj` method.

The `loadobj` method:

- Tests to determine if the `load` function passed a `struct` or object. All `loadobj` methods must handle both `struct` and object when there is an error in `load`.
- Tests to determine if the `AccountID` number contains eight digits. If so, change it to a 12-element character array by calling the `paddAccID` method.

After updating the `AccountID` property, `loadobj` returns a `MyAccount` object that MATLAB loads into the workspace.

```matlab
classdef MyAccount
    properties
        AccountID
    end
end
```
Maintain Class Compatibility

```matlab
methods
    function obj = padAccID(obj)
        ac = obj.AccountID;
        acstr = num2str(ac);
        if length(acstr) < 12
            obj.AccountID = [acstr,repmat('0',1,12-length(acstr))];
        end
    end
end
methods (Static)
    function obj = loadobj(a)
        if isstruct(a)
            obj = MyAccount;
            obj.AccountID = a.AccountID;
            obj = padAccID(obj);
        elseif isa(a,'MyAccount')
            obj = padAccID(a);
        end
    end
end
end
```

You do not need to implement a saveobj method. You are using loadobj only to ensure that older saved objects are brought up to date while loading.

Maintaining Compatible Versions of a Class

The PhoneBookEntry class uses a combination of techniques to maintain compatibility with new versions of the class.

Suppose that you define a class to represent an entry in a phone book. The PhoneBookEntry class defines three properties: Name, Address, and PhoneNumber.

```matlab
classdef PhoneBookEntry
    properties
        Name
        Address
        PhoneNumber
    end
end
```

However, in future releases, the class will add more properties. To provide flexibility, PhoneBookEntry saves property data in a struct using its saveobj method.
methods
  function s = saveobj(obj)
    s.Name = obj.Name;
    s.Address = obj.Address;
    s.PhoneNumber = obj.PhoneNumber;
  end
end

The loadobj method creates the 
PhoneBookEntry
object, which is then loaded into the workspace.

methods (Static)
  function obj = loadobj(s)
    if isstruct(s)
      newObj = PhoneBookEntry;
      newObj.Name = s.Name;
      newObj.Address = s.Address;
      newObj.PhoneNumber = s.PhoneNumber;
      obj = newObj;
    else
      obj = s;
    end
  end
end

Version 2 of the PhoneBookEntry Class

In version 2 of the PhoneBookEntry class, you split the Address property into StreetAddress, City, State, and ZipCode properties.

With these changes, you could not load a version 2 object in a previous release. However, version 2 employs a number of techniques to enable compatibility:

• Preserve the Address property (which is used in version 1) as a Dependent property with private SetAccess.
• Define an Address property get method (get.Address) to build a string that is compatible with the version 2 Address property.
• The saveobj method invokes the get.Address method to assign the object data to a struct that is compatible with previous versions. The struct continues to have only an Address field built from the data in the new StreetAddress, City, State, and ZipCode properties.
• When the `loadobj` method sets the `Address` property, it invokes the property set method (`set.Address`), which extracts the substrings required by the `StreetAddress`, `City`, `State`, and `ZipCode` properties.

• The Transient (not saved) property `SaveInOldFormat` enables you to specify whether to save the version 2 object as a `struct` or an object.

```matlab
classdef PhoneBookEntry
    properties
        Name
        StreetAddress
        City
        State
        ZipCode
        PhoneNumber
    end
    properties (Constant)
        Sep = ', ';
    end
    properties (Dependent, SetAccess=private)
        Address
    end
    properties (Transient)
        SaveInOldFormat = false;
    end
end
methods (Static)
    function obj = loadobj(s)
        if isstruct(s)
            obj = PhoneBookEntry;
            obj.Name = s.Name;
            obj.Address = s.Address;
            obj.PhoneNumber = s.PhoneNumber;
        else
            obj = s;
        end
    end
end
methods
    function address = get.Address(obj)
        address = [obj.StreetAddress, obj.Sep, obj.City, obj.Sep, ...
                   obj.State, obj.Sep, obj.ZipCode];
    end
    function obj = set.Address(obj,address)
        addressItems = regexp(address, obj.Sep, 'split');
        if length(addressItems) == 4
```
obj.StreetAddress = addressItems{1};
obj.City = addressItems{2};
obj.State = addressItems{3};
obj.ZipCode = addressItems{4};
else
    error('PhoneBookEntry:InvalidAddressFormat', ... 'Invalid address format.');
end
function s = saveobj(obj)
    if obj.SaveInOldFormat
        s.Name = obj.Name;
        s.Address = obj.Address;
        s.PhoneNumber = obj.PhoneNumber;
    end
end
end
Initialize Objects When Loading

In this section...

“Calling Constructor When Loading Objects” on page 13-27
“Initializing Objects in the loadobj Method” on page 13-27

Calling Constructor When Loading Objects

MATLAB does not call the class constructor when loading an object from a MAT-file. However, if you set the ConstructOnLoad class attribute to true, load does call the constructor with no arguments.

Enable ConstructOnLoad when you do not want to implement a loadobj method, but must perform some actions at construction time. For example, enable ConstructOnLoad when you are registering listeners for another object. Ensure that MATLAB can call the class constructor with no arguments without generating an error.

If the constructor requires input arguments, use a loadobj method.

Initializing Objects in the loadobj Method

Use a loadobj method when the class constructor requires input arguments to perform object initialization.

The LabResults class shares the constructor object initialization steps with the loadobj method by performing these steps in the assignStatus method.

Objects of the LabResults class:

- Hold values for the results of tests.
- Assign a status for each value based on a set of criteria.

```matlab
classdef LabResult
    properties
        CurrentValue
    end
    properties (Transient)
        Status
    end
end```
function obj = LabResult(cv)
    obj.CurrentValue = cv;
    obj = assignStatus(obj);
end

function obj = assignStatus(obj)
    v = obj.CurrentValue;
    if v < 10
        obj.Status = 'Too low';
    elseif v >= 10 && v < 100
        obj.Status = 'In range';
    else
        obj.Status = 'Too high';
    end
end

function obj = loadobj(s)
    if isstruct(s)
        cv = s.CurrentValue;
        obj = LabResults(cv);
    else
        obj = assignStatus(s);
    end
end

The **LabResults** class uses **loadobj** to determine the status of a given test value. This approach provides a way to:

- Modify the criteria for determining status
- Ensure that objects always use the current criteria

You do not need to implement a **saveobj** method.
Save and Load Objects from Class Hierarchies

In this section...

“Saving and Loading Subclass Objects” on page 13-29
“Reconstruct the Subclass Object from a Saved struct” on page 13-29

Saving and Loading Subclass Objects

If the most specific class of an object does not define a `loadobj` or `saveobj` method, this class can inherit `loadobj` or `saveobj` methods from a superclass.

If any class in the hierarchy defines `saveobj` or `loadobj` methods:

- Define `saveobj` for all classes in the hierarchy.
- Call superclass `saveobj` methods from the subclass `saveobj` method because the `save` function calls only the most specific `saveobj` method.
- The subclass `loadobj` method can call the superclass `loadobj`, or other methods as required, to assign values to their properties.

Reconstruct the Subclass Object from a Saved struct

Suppose you want to save a subclass object by first converting its property data to a `struct` in the class `saveobj` method. Then you reconstruct the object when loaded using its `loadobj` method. This action requires that:

- Superclasses implement `saveobj` methods to save their property data in the `struct`.
- The subclass `saveobj` method calls each superclass `saveobj` method and returns the completed `struct` to the `save` function. Then the `save` function writes the `struct` to the MAT-file.
- The subclass `loadobj` method creates a subclass object and calls superclass methods to assign their property values in the subclass object.
- The subclass `loadobj` method returns the reconstructed object to the `load` function, which loads the object into the workspace.

The following superclass (`MySuper`) and subclass (`MySub`) definitions show how to code these methods.
• The MySuper class defines a loadobj method to enable an object of this class to be loaded directly.
• The subclass loadobj method calls a method named reload after it constructs the subclass object.
• reload first calls the superclass reload method to assign superclass property values and then assigns the subclass property value.

```matlab
classdef MySuper
    properties
        X
        Y
    end
    methods
        function S = saveobj(obj)
            S.PointX = obj.X;
            S.PointY = obj.Y;
        end
        function obj = reload(obj,S)
            obj.X = S.PointX;
            obj.Y = S.PointY;
        end
    end
    methods (Static)
        function obj = loadobj(S)
            if isstruct(s)
                obj = MySuper;
                obj = reload(obj,S);
            end
        end
    end
end
```

Call the superclass saveobj and loadobj methods from the subclass saveobj and loadobj methods.

```matlab
classdef MySub < MySuper
    properties
        Z
    end
    methods
        function S = saveobj(obj)
            S = saveobj@MySuper(obj);
            S.PointZ = obj.Z;
        end
```
function obj = reload(obj,S)
    obj = reload@MySuper(obj,S);
    obj.Z = S.PointZ;
end

methods (Static)
    function obj = loadobj(S)
        if isstruct(s)
            obj = MySub;
            obj = reload(obj,S);
        end
    end
end
end
Restore Listeners

**Create Listener with loadobj**

Suppose that you create a property listener and want to be able to save and restore the event source and the listener. One approach is to create a listener from the `loadobj` method.

**Use Transient Property to Load Listener**

The `BankAccount` class stores the account balance and an account status. A `PostSet` listener attached to the `AccountBalance` property controls the account status.

When the `AccountBalance` property value changes, the listener callback determines the account status. Important points include:

- The `BankAccount` class defines the `AccountManagerListener` property to contain the listener handle. This property enables the `loadobj` method to create a listener and return a reference to it in the object that is loaded into the workspace.
- The `AccountManagerListener` property is `Transient` because there is no need to store the listener handle with a `BankAccount` object. Create a listener that is attached to the new `BankAccount` object created during the load process.
- The `AccountBalance` listener sets the `AccountStatus`.
- Only the `AccountManager` class can access `AccountStatus` property.

```matlab
classdef BankAccount < handle
    properties (SetObservable, AbortSet)
        AccountBalance
    end
    properties (Transient)
        AccountManagerListener
    end
    properties (Access = ?AccountManager)
end
```
AccountStatus
end
methods
function obj = BankAccount(initialBalance)
    obj.AccountBalance = initialBalance;
    obj.AccountStatus = 'New Account';
    obj.AccountManagerListener = AccountManager.addAccount(obj);
end
end
methods (Static)
function obj = loadobj(obj)
    if isstruct(obj) % Handle possible error
        initialBalance = obj.AccountBalance;
        obj = BankAccount(initialBalance);
    else
        obj.AccountManagerListener = AccountManager.addAccount(obj);
    end
end
end
end

Assume the AccountManager class provides services for various types of accounts. For the BankAccount class, the AccountManager class defines two Static methods:

- **assignStatus** — Callback for the AccountBalance property PostSet listener. This method determines the value of the BankAccount AccountStatus property.
- **addAccount** — Creates the AccountBalance property PostSet listener. The BankAccount constructor and loadobj methods call this method.

classdef AccountManager
    methods (Static)
        function assignStatus(BA,~)
            if BA.AccountBalance < 0 && BA.AccountBalance >= -100
                BA.AccountStatus = 'overdrawn';
            elseif BA.AccountBalance < -100
                BA.AccountStatus = 'frozen';
            else
                BA.AccountStatus = 'open';
            end
        end
        function lh = addAccount(BA)
            lh = addlistener(BA,'AccountBalance','PostSet', ...
            @(src,evt)AccountManager.assignStatus(BA));
        end
    end
end

13-33
Using the BankAccount and AccountManager Classes

Create an instance of the BankAccount class.

```plaintext
ba = BankAccount(100)
```

```plaintext
ba =

BankAccount with properties:

    AccountBalance: 100
    AccountManagerListener: [1x1 event.proplistener]
    AccountStatus: 'New Account'
```

Now set an account value to confirm that the AccountManager sets AccountStatus appropriately:

```plaintext
ba.AccountBalance = -10;
ba.AccountStatus
```

```plaintext
ans =

overdrawn
```

**Related Information**

“Property Attributes” on page 8-7

“Listen for Changes to Property Values” on page 11-31
Save and Load Dynamic Properties

In this section...

“Saving Dynamic Properties” on page 13-35
“When You Need saveobj and loadobj Methods” on page 13-35
“Implementing saveobj and loadobj Methods” on page 13-35

Saving Dynamic Properties

Use the addprop method to add dynamic properties to a class that is derived from the dynamicprops class. The save function saves dynamic properties with the object to which they are attached. For more information on dynamic properties, see “Dynamic Properties — Adding Properties to an Instance” on page 8-30.

When You Need saveobj and loadobj Methods

The save function saves dynamic properties and their values. However, save does not save dynamic property attributes because these attributes are not specified in the class definition. If you save an object that has dynamic properties with nondefault attributes values, use saveobj and loadobj to manage the saving and loading of attribute values.

If the dynamic property has nondefault attribute values, convert the object to a struct in the saveobj method. Save the dynamic property attribute values in the struct so that the loadobj method can restore these values.

Implementing saveobj and loadobj Methods

Your saveobj method can obtain the nondefault attribute values from the meta.DynamicProperty object associated with the dynamic property. Suppose the object that you are saving has a dynamic property called DynoProp. Create a struct in the saveobj method to save the data that the loadobj method uses to reconstruct the object.

Here is how the saveobj method works:

• Obtain the meta.DynamicProperty object for the dynamic property.
• Store the name and value of the dynamic property in struct s.
• Store the nondefault dynamic property attributes values for SetAccess and GetAccess in the struct. The loadobj function restores these values.

methods
  function s = saveobj(obj)
    metaDynoProp = findprop(obj,'DynoProp');
    s.dynamicprops(1).name = metaDynoProp.Name;
    s.dynamicprops(1).value = obj.DynoProp;
    s.dynamicprops(1).setAccess = metaDynoProp.SetAccess;
    s.dynamicprops(1).getAccess = metaDynoProp.GetAccess;
    ...
  end
end

Your loadobj method can add the dynamic property and set the attribute values:

• Create an instance of the class.
• Use addprop to add a new dynamic property to the object.
• Restore the attributes of the dynamic property.

methods (Static)
  function obj = loadobj(s)
    if isstruct(s)
      obj = ClassConstructor;
      ...
      metaDynoProp = addprop(obj,s.dynamicprops(1).name);
      obj.(s.dynamicprops(1).name) = s.dynamicprops(1).value;
      metaDynoProp.SetAccess = s.dynamicprops(1).setAccess;
      metaDynoProp.GetAccess = s.dynamicprops(1).getAccess;
    end
  end
end
Enumerations

- “Defining Named Values” on page 14-2
- “How to Use Enumerations” on page 14-5
- “Enumeration Class Restrictions” on page 14-15
- “Enumerations Derived from Built-In Types” on page 14-16
- “Mutable (Handle) vs. Immutable (Value) Enumeration Members” on page 14-22
- “Enumerations That Encapsulate Data” on page 14-29
- “Saving and Loading Enumerations” on page 14-33
Defining Named Values

In this section...

“Kinds of Predefined Names” on page 14-2
“Techniques for Defining Enumerations” on page 14-3

Kinds of Predefined Names

MATLAB supports two kinds of predefined names:

- Constant properties
- Enumerations

Constant Properties

Use constant properties when you want a collection of related constant values whose values can belong to different types (numeric values, character strings, and so on). Define properties with constant values by setting the property `Constant` attribute. Reference constant properties by name whenever you need access to that particular value.

See “Properties with Constant Values” on page 15-2 for more information.

Enumerations

Use enumerations when you want to create a fixed set of names representing a single type of value. You can derive enumeration classes from other classes to inherit the operations of the superclass. For example, if you define an enumeration class that subclasses a MATLAB numeric class like `double` or `int32`, the enumeration class inherits all of the mathematical and relational operations that MATLAB defines for those classes.

Using enumerations instead of character strings to represent a value, such as colors (`'red'`), can result in more readable code because:

- You can compare enumeration members with `==` instead of using `strcmp`
- Enumerations maintain type information, strings do not. For example, passing a string `red` to functions means that every function must interpret what `red'` means. If you define red as an enumeration, the actual value of `red'` can change
(from [1 0 0] to [.93 .14 .14], for example) without updating every function that accepts colors, as you would if you defined the color as a string 'red'.

Define enumerations by creating an enumeration block in the class definition.

See “How to Use Enumerations” on page 14-5 for more information.

**Techniques for Defining Enumerations**

Enumerations enable you to define names that represent entities useful to your application, without using numeric values or character strings. All enumerations support equality and inequality operations. Therefore, switch, if, and a number of comparison functions like isequal and ismember work with enumeration members.

You can define enumeration classes in ways that are most useful to your application, as described in the following sections.

**Simple Enumerated Names**

Simple enumeration classes have no superclasses and no properties. These classes define a set of related names that have no underlying values associated with them. Use this kind of enumeration when you want descriptive names, but your application does not require specific information associated with the name.

See the WeekDays class in the “Enumeration Class” on page 14-6 and the “Defining Methods in Enumeration Classes” on page 14-10 sections.

**Enumerations with Built-In Class Behaviors**

Enumeration classes that subclass MATLAB built-in classes inherit most of the behaviors of those classes. For example, an enumeration class derived from the double class inherits the mathematical, relational, and set operations that work with variables of the class.

Enumerations do not support the colon (:) operator, even if the superclass does.

**Enumerations with Properties for Member Data**

Enumeration classes that do not subclass MATLAB built-in numeric and logical classes can define properties. These classes can define constructors that set each member's unique property values.
The constructor can save input arguments in property values. For example, a Color class can specify a Red enumeration member color with three (Red, Green, Blue) values:

```
enumeration
  Red (1,0,0)
end
```

**Related Examples**

- “Enumeration Class Restrictions” on page 14-15
- “Enumerations Derived from Built-In Types” on page 14-16
- “Enumerations That Encapsulate Data” on page 14-29
How to Use Enumerations

In this section...

“Basic Knowledge” on page 14-5
“Enumeration Class” on page 14-6
“Defining Methods in Enumeration Classes” on page 14-10
“Defining Properties in Enumeration Classes” on page 14-11
“Array Expansion Operations” on page 14-12
“Constructor Calling Sequence” on page 14-12

Basic Knowledge

The material presented in this section builds on an understanding of the information provided in the following sections.

Defining Classes and Class Members

• “Class Components” on page 5-5
• “Create Subclasses — Syntax and Techniques” on page 12-7
• “Mutable and Immutable Properties” on page 8-13
• enumeration function displays enumeration names

Terminology and Concepts

This documentation uses terminology as described in the following list:

• Enumeration or Enumeration class — A class that contains an enumeration block defining enumeration members.
• Enumeration member — A named instance of an enumeration class.
• Enumeration member constructor arguments — Values in parentheses next to the enumeration member name in the enumeration block. When you create an instance of an enumeration member, MATLAB passes the value or values in parenthesis to the class constructor.
• Underlying value — For enumerations derived from built-in classes, the value associated with an instance of an enumeration class (that is, an enumeration member).
Enumeration Class

Create an enumeration class by adding an enumeration block to a class definition. For example, the WeekDays class enumerates a set of days of the week.

```matlab
classdef WeekDays
    enumeration
        Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday
    end
end
```

Construct an Enumeration Member

Refer to an enumeration member using the class name and the member name:

`ClassName.MemberName`

For example, assign the enumeration member `WeekDays.Tuesday` to the variable `today`:

```matlab
today = WeekDays.Tuesday;
```

`today` is a variable of class `WeekDays`:

```matlab
whos
Name       Size            Bytes  Class       Attributes
today      1x1                104  WeekDays
```

```matlab
today
```

```matlab
today =
    Tuesday
```

Default Methods

Enumeration classes have default methods:

```matlab
methods(today)
```

Methods for class `WeekDays`:
WeekDays   char    eq    ne

• Default constructor (WeekDays in this case)
• char — converts enumeration members to character strings
• eq — enables use of == in expressions
• ne — enables use of ~= in expressions

Equality and inequality methods enable you to use enumeration members in if, switch statements, and other functions that test for equality.

Because you can define enumeration members with descriptive names, conversion to char is useful. For example:

today = WeekDays.Friday;
['Today is ',char(today)]

ans =

Today is Friday

**Testing for Membership in a Set**

Determine if today is a meeting day for your team. Create a set of enumeration members corresponding to the days on which the team has meetings.

today = WeekDays.Tuesday;
teamMeetings = [WeekDays.Wednesday WeekDays.Friday];

Use equality to determine if today is part of the teamMeetings set:

any(today == teamMeetings)

ans =

0

**Enumerations in a Switch Statement**

Enumerations work in switch statements:

```
function c = Reminder(day)
    % Add error checking here
    switch(day)
```
```matlab
    case WeekDays.Monday
        c = 'Department meeting at 10:00';
    case WeekDays.Tuesday
        c = 'Meeting Free Day!';
    case {WeekDays.Wednesday WeekDays.Friday}
        c = 'Team meeting at 2:00';
    case WeekDays.Thursday
        c = 'Volley ball night';
    end
end

Pass a member of the WeekDays enumeration class to the Reminder function:

today = WeekDays.Wednesday;
Reminder (today)

ans =

Team meeting at 2:00

For more information, see “Objects In Switch Statements” on page 5-39.

Get Information About Enumerations

Obtain information about enumeration classes using the enumeration function. For example:

```matlab
    enumeration WeekDays
    Enumeration members for class 'WeekDays':

        Monday
        Tuesday
        Wednesday
        Thursday
        Friday
    
    See also “Metaclass EnumeratedValues Property” on page 16-8

Testing for an Enumeration

Use the isenum function to determine if a variable is an enumeration. For example:

today = WeekDays.Wednesday;
isenum(today)
```
ans =

1

isenum returns true for empty enumeration objects:

`noday = WeekDays.empty;`
`isenum(noday)`

ans =

1

Use the `meta.class` to determine if a variable’s class is an enumeration class:

`today = WeekDays.Wednesday;`
`mc = metaclass(today);`
`mc.Enumeration`

ans =

1

**Converting to Superclass Value**

If an enumeration class specifies a superclass, convert an enumeration object to the superclass by passing the object to the superclass constructor. However, the superclass constructor must be able to accept its own class as input and return an instance of the superclass. MATLAB built-in numeric classes, such as `uint32`, allow this conversion.

For example, the `Bearing` class derives from the `uint32` built-in class:

```matlab
classdef Bearing < uint32
    enumeration
        North (0)
        East  (90)
        South (180)
        West  (270)
    end
end
```

Assign the `Bearing.East` member to the variable `a`:

`a = Bearing.East;`
Pass `a` to the superclass constructor and return a `uint32` value:

```matlab
b = uint32(a);
whos
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Size</th>
<th>Bytes</th>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Attributes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>1x1</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>Bearing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>1x1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>uint32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The `uint32` constructor accepts an object of the subclass `Bearing` and returns an object of class `uint32`.

**Defining Methods in Enumeration Classes**

Define methods in an enumeration class like any MATLAB class. For example, here is the `WeekDays` class with a method called `isMeetingDay` added:

```matlab
classdef WeekDays
    enumeration
        Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday
    end
    methods
        function tf = isMeetingDay(obj)
            tf = ~(WeekDays.Tuesday == obj);
        end
    end
end
```

Call `isMeetingDay` with an instance of the `WeekDays` class:

```matlab
today = WeekDays.Tuesday;
today.isMeetingDay
```

```matlab
ans =

0
```

Use the enumeration member directly as input to the method:

```matlab
isMeetingDay(WeekDays.Wednesday)
```

```matlab
ans =
```
**Defining Properties in Enumeration Classes**

Add properties to an enumeration class when you must store data related to the enumeration members. Set the property values in the class constructor. For example, the `SyntaxColors` class defines three properties whose values the constructor assigns to the values of the input arguments when you reference a class member.

```plaintext
classdef SyntaxColors
    properties
        R
        G
        B
    end
    methods
        function c = SyntaxColors(r, g, b)
            c.R = r; c.G = g; c.B = b;
        end
    end
    enumeration
        Error   (1, 0, 0)
        Comment (0, 1, 0)
        Keyword (0, 0, 1)
        String  (1, 0, 1)
    end
end
```

When you refer to an enumeration member, the constructor initializes the property values:

```plaintext
e = SyntaxColors.Error;
e.R
```

```plaintext
ans =
    1
```

Because `SyntaxColors` is a value class (it does not derive from handle), only the class constructor can set property values:

```plaintext
e.R = 0
```

*You cannot set the read-only property 'R' of SyntaxColors.*
For more information on enumeration classes that define properties, see “Mutable (Handle) vs. Immutable (Value) Enumeration Members” on page 14-22.

**Array Expansion Operations**

MATLAB enables assignment to any element of an array, even if the array does not exist. For example, create an array of `WeekDays` objects:

```java
classdef WeekDays
    enumeration
        Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday
    end
end
```

Assign a value to element 5 of a newly created variable, `ary`:

```java
clear
ary(5) = WeekDays.Tuesday;
```

MATLAB must initialize the values of array elements `ary(1:4)`. The default value of an enumeration class is the first enumeration member defined by the class in the enumeration block. The result of the assignment to the fifth element of the array `ary` is, therefore:

```java
ary
```

```java
ary =
```

```java
    Monday       Monday       Monday       Monday       Tuesday
```

**Constructor Calling Sequence**

Each statement in an enumeration block is the name of an enumeration member, optionally followed by an argument list. If the enumeration class defines a constructor, MATLAB calls the constructor to create the enumerated instances.

MATLAB provides a default constructor for all enumeration classes that do not explicitly define a constructor. The default constructor creates an instance of the enumeration class:

- Using no input arguments, if the enumeration member defines no input arguments
- Using the input arguments defined in the enumeration class for that member
For example, the input arguments for the `Boolean` class are 0 for `Boolean.No` and 1 for `Boolean.Yes`.

```matlab
classdef Boolean < logical
    enumeration
    No (0)
    Yes (1)
end
end
```

The values of 0 and 1 are of class `logical` because the default constructor passes the argument to the first superclass. That is, this statement:

```matlab
n = Boolean.No;
```

Results in a call to `logical` that is equivalent to the following statement in a constructor:

```matlab
function obj = Boolean(val)
    obj@logical(val)
end
```

MATLAB passes the member argument only to the first superclass. For example, suppose `Boolean` derived from another class:

```matlab
classdef Boolean < logical & MyBool
    enumeration
    No (0)
    Yes (1)
end
end
```

The `MyBool` class can add some specialized behavior:

```matlab
classdef MyBool
    methods
        function boolValues = testBools(obj)
            ...
    end
end
end
```

The default `Boolean` constructor behaves as if defined like this function:

- Argument passed to first superclass constructor
• No arguments passed to subsequent constructors

```matlab
function obj = Boolean(val)
    obj@logical(val)
    obj@MyBool
end
```
Enumeration Class Restrictions

Enumeration classes, which consist of a fixed set of possible values, restrict certain aspects of class use and definition:

• Enumeration classes are implicitly **Sealed**. You cannot define a subclass of an enumeration class because doing so would expand the set.

• You cannot call the constructor of an enumeration class directly. Only MATLAB can call enumeration class constructors to create the fixed set of members.

**Note:** It is possible to provide a conversion function in any class where the function is the name of an enumerated class and. This function’s purpose is to convert to the enumeration. It is possible to convert to an instance of an enumerated class (one of the defined set of members), but it is not possible to make a new instance of the class. See “Default Converter” on page 14-20 for related information.

• The properties of value-based enumeration classes are immutable. Only the constructor can assign property values. MATLAB implicitly defines the **SetAccess** attributes of all properties defined by value-based enumeration classes as **immutable**. You cannot set the **SetAccess** attribute to any other value.

• All properties inherited by a value-based enumeration class that are not defined as **Constant** must have **immutable SetAccess**.

• The properties of handle-based enumeration classes are mutable. You can set property values on instances of the enumeration class. See “Mutable (Handle) vs. Immutable (Value) Enumeration Members” on page 14-22.

• An enumeration member cannot have the same name as a property, method, or event defined by the same class.

• Enumerations do not support colon (a:b) operations. For example, `FlowRate.Low:FlowRate.High` causes an error even if the `FlowRate` class derives from a numeric superclass.
Enumerations Derived from Built-In Types

In this section...

“Basic Knowledge” on page 14-16
“Why Derive Enumerations from Built-In Types” on page 14-16
“How to Alias Enumeration Names” on page 14-18
“Superclass Constructor Returns Underlying Value” on page 14-19
“Default Converter” on page 14-20

Basic Knowledge

The material presented in this section builds on an understanding of the information provided in the following sections.

- “Fundamental MATLAB Classes” for information on MATLAB built-in classes.
- `enumeration` function displays enumeration names

Why Derive Enumerations from Built-In Types

**Note:** Enumeration classes derived from built-in numeric and logical classes cannot define properties.

If an enumeration class subclasses a built-in numeric class, the subclass inherits ordering and arithmetic operations that you can apply to the enumerated names.

For example, the `Results` class subclasses the `int32` built-in class. This class associates an integer value with each of the four enumeration members — `First`, `Second`, `Third`, and `NoPoints`.

```matlab
classdef Results < int32
    enumeration
        First   (100)
        Second  (50)
        Third   (10)
        NoPlace (0)
    end
```
The enumeration member inherits the methods of the `int32` class (except the colon operator). Use these enumerations like numeric values (summed, sorted, averaged, and so on).

```matlab
isa(Results.Second, 'int32')
```

```matlab
ans =

1
```

For example, use enumeration names instead of numbers to rank two teams:

```matlab
Team1 = [Results.First, Results.NoPlace, Results.Third, Results.Second];
Team2 = [Results.Second, Results.Third, Results.First, Results.First];
```

Perform `int32` operations on these `Results` enumerations:

```matlab
sum(Team1)
```

```matlab
ans =

160
```

```matlab
mean(Team1)
```

```matlab
ans =

40
```

```matlab
sort(Team2, 'descend')
```

```matlab
ans =

First   First   Second   Third
```

```matlab
Team1 > Team2
```

```matlab
ans =

1     0     0     0
```

```matlab
sum(Team1) < sum(Team2)
```

```matlab
ans =
```
Creating Enumeration Instances

When you first refer to an enumeration class that derives from a built-in class such as, `int32`, MATLAB passes the input arguments associated with the enumeration members to the superclass constructor. For example, referencing the `Second Results` member, defined as:

Second (50)

means that MATLAB calls:

`int32(50)`

to initialize the `int32` aspect of this `Results` object.

How to Alias Enumeration Names

Enumeration classes that derive from MATLAB built-in numeric and logical classes can define more than one name for an underlying value. The first name in the enumeration block with a given underlying value is the actual name for that underlying value and subsequent names are aliases.

Specify aliased names with the same superclass constructor argument as the actual name:

```matlab
classdef Bool < logical
    enumeration
        No (0)
        Yes (1)
        off (0)
        on  (1)
    end
end
```

For example, the actual name of an instance of the `Bool.off` enumeration member is `No`:

```matlab
a = Bool.No
```

a =
No

b = Bool.off

b =

No

**Superclass Constructor Returns Underlying Value**

The actual underlying value associated with an enumeration member is the value returned by the built-in superclass. For example, consider the `Bool` class defined with constructor arguments that are of class `double`:

```matlab
classdef Bool < logical
    enumeration
        No (0)
        Yes (100)
    end
end
```

This class derives from the built-in `logical` class. Therefore, underlying values for an enumeration member depend only on what value `logical` returns when passed that value:

```matlab
a = Bool.Yes

a =

    Yes

logical(a)

ans =

1
```

**How to Subclass Numeric Built-In Classes**

The `FlowRate` enumeration class defines three members, Low, Medium, and High.

```matlab
classdef FlowRate < int32
    enumeration
```
Low    (10)
Medium (50)
High   (100)
end
end

Reference an instance of an enumeration member:

setFlow = FlowRate.Medium;

This statement causes MATLAB to call the default constructor with the argument value of 50. MATLAB passes this argument to the first superclass constructor (int32(50) in this case). The result is an underlying value of 50 as a 32-bit integer for the FlowRate.Medium member.

Because FlowRate subclasses a built-in numeric class (int32), this class cannot define properties. However FlowRate inherits int32 methods including a converter method. Programs can use the converter to obtain the underlying value:

setFlow = FlowRate.Medium;
int32(setFlow)

ans =

50

**Default Converter**

If an enumeration is a subclass of a built-in numeric class, you can convert from built-in numeric data to the enumeration using the name of the enumeration class. For example:

a = Bool(1)
a =

Yes

An enumerated class also accepts enumeration members of its own class as input arguments:

Bool(a)

ans =
Yes

The converter returns an object of the same size as in input:

```plaintext
Bool([0,1])
ans =
   No     Yes
```

Create an empty enumeration array using the `empty` static method:

```plaintext
Bool.empty
ans =
   0x0 empty Boolean enumeration.
```
Mutable (Handle) vs. Immutable (Value) Enumeration Members

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>In this section...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>“Basic Knowledge” on page 14-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Selecting Handle- or Value-Based Enumerations” on page 14-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Value-Based Enumeration Classes” on page 14-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Handle-Based Enumeration Classes” on page 14-24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Using Enumerations to Represent a State” on page 14-27</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Basic Knowledge**

The material presented in this section builds on an understanding of the information provided in the following sections.

- “Comparison of Handle and Value Classes” on page 7-2
- “Property Attributes” on page 8-7
- `enumeration` function displays enumeration names

**Selecting Handle- or Value-Based Enumerations**

Use a handle enumeration to enumerate a set of objects whose state might change over time. Use a value enumeration to enumerate a set of abstract (and immutable) values.

**Value-Based Enumeration Classes**

A value-based enumeration class has a fixed set of specific values. Modify these values by changing the values of properties. Doing so expands or changes the fixed set of values for this enumeration class.

**Inherited Property SetAccess Must Be Immutable**

Value-based enumeration class implicitly define the `SetAccess` attributes of all properties as immutable. You cannot set the `SetAccess` attribute to any other value.

However, all superclass properties must explicitly define property `SetAccess` as immutable.
Enumeration Members Remain Constant

An instance of a value-based enumeration class is unique until the class is cleared and reloaded. For example, given this class:

```matlab
classdef WeekDays	enumeration
    Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday
end
end
```

MATLAB considers `a` and `b` as equivalent:

```matlab
a = WeekDays.Monday;
b = WeekDays.Monday;
isequal(a,b)
ans =
    1
a == b
ans =
    1
```

Enumeration Member Properties Remain Constant

Value-based enumeration classes that define properties are immutable. For example, the `Colors` enumeration class associates RGB values with color names.

```matlab
classdef Colors
    properties
        R = 0;
        G = 0;
        B = 0;
    end
    methods
        function c = Colors(r,g,b)
            c.R = r; c.G = g; c.B = b;
        end
    end
    enumeration
        Red   (1, 0, 0)
        Green (0, 1, 0)
```
The constructor assigns the input arguments to R, G, and B properties:

```matlab
red = Colors.Red;
an =
```

You cannot change a property value:

```matlab
red.G = 1;
```

You cannot set the read-only property 'G' of Colors.

**Handle-Based Enumeration Classes**

Handle-based enumeration classes that define properties are mutable. Derive enumeration classes from the handle class when you must be able to change property values on instances of that class.

**Note:** You cannot derive an enumeration class from matlab.mixin.Copyable because the number of instances you can create are limited to the ones defined inside the enumeration block.

**An Enumeration Member Remains Constant**

Given a handle-based enumeration class with properties, changing the property value of an instance causes all references to that instance to reflect the changed value.

For example, the `HandleColors` enumeration class associates RGB values with color names, the same as the `Colors` class in the previous example. However, `HandleColors` derives from `handle`:

```matlab
classdef HandleColors < handle
    properties
        R = 0;
        G = 0;
```
B = 0;
end
methods
 function c = HandleColors(r, g, b)
    c.R = r; c.G = g; c.B = b;
 end
end
enumeration
   Red   (1, 0, 0)
   Green (0, 1, 0)
   Blue  (0, 0, 1)
end
end

Create an instance of HandleColors.Red and return the value of the R property:

a = HandleColors.Red;
a.R

ans =

    1

MATLAB constructs the HandleColors.Red enumeration member, which sets the R property to 1, the G property to 0, and the B property to 0.

Change the value of the R property to 0.8:

a.R = 0.8;

After setting the value of the R property to 0.8, create another instance, b, of HandleColors.Red:

b = HandleColors.Red;
b.R

ans =

0.8000

The value of the R property of the newly created instance is also 0.8. A MATLAB session has only one value for any enumeration member at any given time.

Clearing the workspace variables does not change the current definition of the enumeration member HandleColors.Red:
clear
a = HandleColors.Red;
a.R

ans =

    0.8000

Clear the class to reload the definition of the HandleColors class:

clear classes
a = HandleColors.Red;
a.R

ans =

    1

To prevent reassignment of a given property value, set that property's SetAccess
attribute to immutable.

**Equality of Handle-Based Enumerations**

Assign two variables to a particular enumeration member:

a = HandleColors.Red;
b = HandleColors.Red;

Compare a and b using `isequal`:

`isequal(a,b)`

ans =

    1

The property values of a and b are the same, so `isequal` returns `true`. However, unlike
handle classes that are not enumeration classes, a and b are the same handle because
there is only one enumeration member. Determine handle equality using `==` (the handle
eq method).

a == b

ans =
See the handle `eq` method for information on how `isequal` and `==` differ when used with handles.

### Using Enumerations to Represent a State

The `MachineState` class defines two enumeration members to represent the state of a machine, either running or not running.

```matlab
classdef MachineState
    enumeration
        Running
        NotRunning
    end
end
```

The `Machine` class represents a machine with start and stop operations. The `MachineState` enumerations are easy to work with because of their `eq` and `char` methods, and they result in code that is easy to read.

```matlab
classdef Machine < handle
    properties (SetAccess = private)
        State = MachineState.NotRunning;
    end

    methods
        function start(machine)
            if machine.State == MachineState.NotRunning
                machine.State = MachineState.Running;
            end
            disp (machine.State.char)
        end

        function stop(machine)
            if machine.State == MachineState.Running
                machine.State = MachineState.NotRunning;
            end
            disp (machine.State.char)
        end
    end
end
```

Create a `Machine` object and call `start` and `stop` methods.
m = Machine;
m.start

Running

m.stop

NotRunning
Enumerations That Encapsulate Data

In this section...

“Basic Knowledge” on page 14-29
“Store Data in Properties” on page 14-29

Basic Knowledge

The material presented in this section builds on an understanding of the information provided in the following sections.

• “Fundamental MATLAB Classes” for information on MATLAB built-in classes.
• enumeration function displays enumeration names

Store Data in Properties

Note: Enumeration classes that subclass built-in numeric or logical classes cannot define or inherit properties. See “Enumerations Derived from Built-In Types” on page 14-16 for more information on this kind of enumeration class.

Define properties in an enumeration class if you want to associate specific data with enumeration members, but do not need to inherit arithmetic, ordering, or other operations that MATLAB defines for specific built-in classes.

Representing Colors

Define an enumeration class to represent the RGB values of the colors in a color set. The Colors class defines names for the colors, each of which uses the RGB values as arguments to the class constructor:

```matlab
classdef Colors
    properties
        R = 0;
        G = 0;
        B = 0;
    end
```
methods
    function c = Colors(r, g, b)
        c.R = r; c.G = g; c.B = b;
    end
end
enumeration
    Blueish   (18/255,104/255,179/255)
    Reddish   (237/255,36/255,38/255)
    Greenish  (155/255,190/255,61/255)
    Purplish  (123/255,45/255,116/255)
    Yellowish (1,199/255,0)
    LightBlue (77/255,190/255,238/255)
end
end

Suppose you want to create a plot with the new shade of red named Reddish:

    a = Colors.Reddish;

ans =

    0.9294  0.1412  0.1490

Use these values by accessing the enumeration member properties. For example, the myPlot function accepts a Colors enumeration member as an input argument. The function accesses the RGB values defining the color from the property values.

    function h = myPlot(x,y,LineColor)
        h = line('XData',x,'YData',y);
        r = LineColor.R;
        g = LineColor.G;
        b = LineColor.B;
        h.Color = [r g b];
    end

Create a plot using a reddish color line:

    r = Colors.Reddish;
    h = myPlot(1:10,1:10,r);

The Colors class encapsulates the definitions of a standard set of colors. You can change the enumeration class definition of the colors and not affect functions that use the enumerations.
Enumerations Defining Categories

The Cars class defines categories used to inventory automobiles. The Cars class derives from the CarPainter class, which derives from handle. The abstract CarPainter class defines a paint method, which modifies the Color property if a car is painted another color.

The Cars class uses the Colors enumeration members to specify a finite set of available colors. The exact definition of any given color can change independently of the Cars class.

```matlab
classdef Cars < CarPainter
  enumeration
    Hybrid (2,'Manual',55,Colors.Reddish)
    Compact(4,'Manual',32,Colors.Greenish)
    MiniVan(6,'Automatic',24,Colors.Blueish)
    SUV    (8,'Automatic',12,Colors.Yellowish)
  end
  properties (SetAccess = private)
    Cylinders
    Transmission
    MPG
    Color
  end
  methods
    function obj = Cars(cyl,trans,mpg,colr)
      obj.Cylinders = cyl;
      obj.Transmission = trans;
      obj.MPG = mpg;
      obj.Color = colr;
    end
    function paint(obj,colorobj)
      if isa(colorobj,'Colors')
        obj.Color = colorobj;
      else
        [~,cls] = enumeration('Colors');
        disp('Not an available color')
        disp(cls)
      end
    end
  end
end
```

The CarPainter class requires its subclasses to define a method called paint:
classdef CarPainter < handle
    methods (Abstract)
        paint(carobj,colorobj)
    end
end

Define an instance of the Cars class:

c1 = Cars.Compact;

The color of this car is Greenish, as defined by the Colors.Greenish enumeration:

c1.Color

ans =

    Greenish

Use the paint method to change the car color:

c1.paint(Colors.Reddish)
c1.Color

ans =

    Reddish
Saving and Loading Enumerations

In this section...

“Basic Knowledge” on page 14-33
“Built-In and Value-Based Enumeration Classes” on page 14-33
“Simple and Handle-Based Enumeration Classes” on page 14-33
“Causes: Load as struct Instead of Object” on page 14-34

Basic Knowledge

See the save and load functions and “Save and Load Process” on page 13-2 for general information on saving and loading objects.

See the enumeration function to list enumeration names.

Built-In and Value-Based Enumeration Classes

When you save enumerations that derive from built-in classes or that are value-based classes with properties, MATLAB saves the names of the enumeration members and the definition of each member.

When loading these enumerations, MATLAB preserves names over underlying values. If the saved named value is different from the current class definition, MATLAB uses the value defined in the current class, and then issues a warning.

Simple and Handle-Based Enumeration Classes

When you save simple enumerations (those having no properties, superclasses, or values associated with the member names) or those enumerations derived from the handle class, MATLAB saves the names and any underlying values.

When loading these types of enumerations, MATLAB does not check the values associated with the names in the current class definition. This behavior results from the fact that simple enumerations have no underlying values and handle-based enumerations can legally have values that are different than those defined by the class.
Causes: Load as struct Instead of Object

If you add a new named value or a new property to a class after saving an enumeration, MATLAB does not give a warning during load.

If the changes to the enumeration class definition do not prevent MATLAB from loading the object (that is, all of the named values in the MAT-File are present in the modified class definition), then MATLAB issues a warning that the class has changed and loads the enumeration.

In the following cases, MATLAB issues a warning and loads as much of the saved data as possible as a struct:

- MATLAB cannot find the class definition
- The class is no longer an enumeration class
- MATLAB cannot initialize the class
- There is one or more enumeration member in the loaded enumeration that is not in the class definition
- If the class is a value-based enumerations with properties and a property that exists in the file, is not present in the class definition

struct Fields

The returned struct has these fields:

- `ValueNames` — A cell array of strings, one per unique value in the enumeration array.
- `Values` — An array of the same dimension as `ValueNames` containing the corresponding values of the enumeration members named in `ValueNames`. Depending on the kind of enumeration class, `Values` can be one of the following:
  - If the enumeration class derives from a built-in class, the array class is the same as the built-in class. The values in the array are the underlying values of each enumeration member.
  - Otherwise, a struct array representing the property name — property values pairs of each enumeration member. For simple and handle-based enumerations, the struct array has no fields.
- `ValueIndices` — a `uint32` array of the same size as the original enumeration. Each element is an index into the `ValueNames` and `Values` arrays. The content of `ValueIndices` represents the value of each object in the original enumeration array.
Constant Properties
Properties with Constant Values

In this section...

“Defining Named Constants” on page 15-2
“Constant Property Assigned a Handle Object” on page 15-4
“Constant Property Assigned Any Object” on page 15-4

Defining Named Constants

Use constant properties to define constant values that you can access by name. Create a class with constant properties by declaring the `Constant` attribute in the property blocks. Setting the `Constant` attribute means that, once initialized to the value specified in the property block, the value cannot be changed.

Assigning Values to Constant Properties

Assign any value to a `Constant` property, including a MATLAB expression. For example:

```matlab
classdef NamedConst
    properties (Constant)
        R = pi/180;
        D = 1/NamedConst.R;
        AccCode = '0145968740001110202NPQ';
        RN = rand(5);
    end
end
```

MATLAB evaluates the expressions when loading the class (when you first reference a constant property from that class). Therefore, the values MATLAB assigns to `RN` are the result of a single call to the `rand` function and do not change with subsequent references to `NamedConst.RN`. Calling `clear classes` causes MATLAB to reload the class and reinitialize the constant properties.

Referencing Constant Properties

Refer to the constant using the class name and the property name:

`ClassName.PropName`
For example, to use the NamedConst class defined in the previous section, reference the constant for the degree to radian conversion, R:

\[ \text{radi} = 45 \times \text{NamedConst.R} \]

\[ \text{radi} = 0.7854 \]

### Constants In Packages

To create a library for constant values that you can access by name, first create a package folder, then define the various classes to organize the constants. For example, to implement a set of constants that are useful for making astronomical calculations, define a AstroConstants class in a package called constants:

+constants/AstroConstants/AstroConstants.m

The class defines a set of Constant properties with values assigned:

```matlab
classdef AstroConstants
    properties (Constant)
        C = 2.99792458e8;     % m/s
        G = 6.67259;          % m/kgs
        Me = 5.976e24;        % Earth mass (kg)
        Re = 6.378e6;         % Earth radius (m)
    end
end
```

To use this set of constants, reference them with a fully qualified class name. For example, the following function uses some of the constants defined in AstroContants:

```matlab
function E = energyToOrbit(m,r)
    E = constants.AstroConstants.G * constants.AstroConstants.Me * m * ...
        (1/constants.AstroConstants.Re-0.5*r);
end
```

Importing the package into the function eliminates the need to repeat the package name (see import):

```matlab
function E = energyToOrbit(m,r)
    import constants.*;
    E = AstroConstants.G * AstroConstants.Me * m * ...
        (1/AstroConstants.Re - 0.5 * r);
end
```
Constant Property Assigned a Handle Object

If a class defines a constant property with a value that is a handle object, you can assign values to the handle object properties. Create a local variable to access the handle object.

For example, the `ConstMapClass` class defines a constant property. The value of the constant property is a handle object (a `containers.Map` object).

```matlab
classdef ConstMapClass < handle
    properties (Constant)
        ConstMapProp = containers.Map;
    end
end
```

To assign the current date to the `Date` key, return the handle from the constant property, then make the assignment using the local variable on the left side of the assignment statement:

```matlab
localMap = ConstMapClass.ConstMapProp
localMap('Date') = datestr(clock);
```

You cannot use a reference to a constant property on the left side of an assignment statement. For example, MATLAB interprets the following statement as the creation of a struct named `ConstantMapClass` with a field `ConstMapProp`:

```matlab
ConstMapClass.ConstMapProp('Date') = datestr(clock);
```

Constant Property Assigned Any Object

You can assign an instance of the defining class to a constant property. MATLAB creates the instance assigned to the constant property when loading the class. Use this technique only when the defining class is a handle class.

The `MyProject` is an example of such a class:

```matlab
classdef MyProject < handle
    properties (Constant)
        ProjectInfo = MyProject;
    end
    properties
        Date
        Department
        ProjectNumber
end
```
end
methods (Access = private)
    function obj = MyProject
        obj.Date = datestr(clock);
        obj.Department = 'Engineering';
        obj.ProjectNumber = 'P29.367';
    end
end
end

Reference property data via the Constant property:

MyProject.ProjectInfo.Date
ans =
18-Apr-2002 09:56:59

Because MyProject is a handle class, you can get the handle to the instance that is assigned to the constant property:

p = MyProject.ProjectInfo;

Access the data in the MyProject class using this handle:

p.Department
ans =
Engineering

Modify the nonconstant properties of the MyProject class using this handle:

p.Department = 'Quality Assurance';

p is a handle to the instance of MyProject that is assigned to the ProjectInfo constant property:

MyProject.ProjectInfo.Department
ans =
Quality Assurance

Clearing the class results in the assignment of a new instance of MyProject to the ProjectInfo property.
clear MyProject
MyProject.ProjectInfo.Department
ans =

Engineering

You can assign an instance of the defining class as the default value of a property only when the property is declared as Constant

**More About**

- “Defining Named Values” on page 14-2
Information from Class Metadata

- “Class Metadata” on page 16-2
- “Inspect Class and Object Metadata” on page 16-5
- “Find Objects with Specific Values” on page 16-9
- “Get Information About Properties” on page 16-13
- “Find Default Values in Property Metadata” on page 16-19
Class Metadata

In this section...

“What Is Class Metadata?” on page 16-2
“The meta Package” on page 16-3
“Metaclass Objects” on page 16-3
“Metaclass Object Lifecycle” on page 16-4

What Is Class Metadata?

Class metadata is information about class definitions that is available from metaclasses objects. Use metaclass objects to obtain information without having to create instances of the class itself. Metadata enables the programmatic inspection of classes. Each metaclass has properties, methods, and events that contain information about the class or class component it describes.

All class components have an associated metaclass, which you access from the `meta.class` object. For example, create the `meta.class` object for the `matlab.mixin.Copyable` class:

```matlab
mc = ?matlab.mixin.Copyable
```

```plaintext
mc =

class with properties:

    Name: 'matlab.mixin.Copyable'
    Description: 'Implement copy method for handle objects in MA...'
    DetailedDescription: '
    Hidden: 0
    Sealed: 0
    Abstract: 1
    Enumeration: 0
    ConstructOnLoad: 1
    HandleCompatible: 1
    InferiorClasses: {0x1 cell}
    ContainingPackage: [1x1 meta.package]
    PropertyList: [0x1 meta.property]
    MethodList: [19x1 meta.method]
    EventList: [1x1 meta.event]
```
The meta Package

The meta package contains metaclasses that describe the definition of classes and class components. The class name indicates the component described by the metaclass. For example, each class property has a meta.property associated with it. Attributes defined for class components correspond to properties in the respective metaclass object.

- meta.package — Access from meta.class ContainingPackage property.
- meta.class — Create from class name or class object using metaclass function or ? operator.
- meta.property — Access from meta.class PropertyList property.
- meta.DynamicProperty — Obtain from the addprop method.
- meta.method — Access from meta.class MethodList property.
- meta.event — Access from meta.class EventList property.
- meta.EnumeratedValue — Access from meta.class EnumerationMemberListList property.

Metaclass Objects

You cannot instantiate metaclasses directly by calling the respective class constructor. Create metaclass objects from class instances or from the class name.

- ?ClassName — Returns a meta.class object for the named class. Use meta.class.fromName with class names stored as characters in variables.
- meta.class.fromName('ClassName') — returns the meta.class object for the named class (meta.class.fromName is a meta.class method).
- metaclass(obj) — Returns a metaclass object for the class instance (metaclass)

Create meta.class object from class name using the ? operator:

```
mc = ?MyClass;
```

Create meta.class object from class name using the fromName method:

```
mc = meta.class.fromName('MyClass');
```
Create **meta.class** object from class instance

```matlab
obj = MyClass;
mc = metaclass(obj);
```

The `metaclass` function returns the **meta.class** object (that is, an object of the **meta.class** class). You can obtain other metaclass objects (**meta.property**, **meta.method**, and so on) from the **meta.class** object.

---

**Note:** Metaclass is a term used here to refer to all of the classes in the **meta** package. **meta.class** is a class in the **meta** package whose instances contain information about MATLAB classes. Metadata is information about classes contained in metaclasses.

---

**Metaclass Object Lifecycle**

When you change a class definition, MATLAB reloads the class definition. If instances of the class exist, MATLAB updates those objects according to the new definition.

However, MATLAB does not update existing metaclass objects to the new class definition. If you change a class definition while metaclass objects of that class exist, MATLAB deletes the metaclass objects and their handles become invalid. You must create a new metaclass object after updating the class.

For information on how to modify and reload classes, see “Automatic Updates for Modified Classes” on page 5-51.

**Related Examples**

- “Inspect Class and Object Metadata” on page 16-5
- “Find Objects with Specific Values” on page 16-9
- “Get Information About Properties” on page 16-13
- “Find Default Values in Property Metadata” on page 16-19
Inspect Class and Object Metadata

In this section...

“Inspect a Class” on page 16-5
“Metaclass EnumeratedValues Property” on page 16-8

Inspect a Class

The EmployeeData class is a handle class with two properties, one of which has private Access and defines a set access method.

```matlab
classdef EmployeeData < handle
  properties
    EmployeeName
  end
  properties (Access = private)
    EmployeeNumber
  end
end
methods
  function obj = EmployeeData(name,ss)
    if nargin > 0
      obj.EmployeeName = name;
      obj.EmployeeNumber = ss;
    end
  end
  function set.EmployeeName(obj,name)
    if ischar(name)
      obj.EmployeeName = name;
    else
      error('Employee name must be a text string')
    end
  end
end
```

Inspect Class Definition

Using the EmployeeData class, create a meta.class object using the ? operator:

```matlab
mc = ?EmployeeData;
```
Determine from what classes `EmployeeData` derives. The returned value is a `meta.class` object for the `handle` superclass:

```plaintext
a = mc.SuperclassList;
a.Name
ans =
handle
```

The `EmployeeData` class has only one superclass. For classes having more than one direct superclass, `a` contains a `meta.class` object for each superclass.

Use an indexed reference to refer to any particular superclass:

```plaintext
a(1).Name
or, directly from `mc`:
mc.SuperclassList(1).Name
ans =
handle
```

The `SuperclassList` property contains only direct superclasses.

**Inspect Properties**

Find the names of the properties defined by the `EmployeeData` class. First obtain an array of `meta.properties` objects from the `meta.class` `PropertyList` property.

```plaintext
mc = ?EmployeeData;
mpArray = mc.PropertyList;
```

The length of `mpArray` indicates there are two `meta.property` objects, one for each property defined by the `EmployeeData` class:

```plaintext
length(mpArray)
ans =
  2
```

Now get a `meta.property` object from the array:

```plaintext
prop1 = mpArray(1);
```
prop1.Name
ans =
EmployeeName

The Name property of the meta.property object identifies the class property represented by that meta.property object.

Query other meta.property object properties to determine the attributes of the EmployeeName properties.

**Find Component with Specific Attribute**

You can use indexing techniques to list class components that have specific attribute values. For example, this code lists the methods in the EmployeeData class that have private access:

```matlab
mc = ?EmployeeData;
mc.PropertyList(ismember({mc.PropertyList(:).SetAccess},'private')).Name
ans =
EmployeeNumber
```

Note that Access is not a property of the meta.property class. You must use SetAccess and GetAccess, which are properties of the meta.property class.

Find components with attributes that are logical values using a statement like this:

```matlab
mc = ?handle;
mc.MethodList(ismember([mc.MethodList(:).Hidden],true)).Name
ans =
empty
```

**Inspect Class Instance**

Create an EmployeeData object and determine property access settings:

```matlab
EdObj = EmployeeData('My Name',1234567);
mcEdObj = metaclass(EdObj);
mpArray = mcEdObj.PropertyList;
EdObj.(mpArray(1).Name) % Dynamic field names work with objects
```
ans =
    My Name

EdObj.(mpArray(2).Name)

You cannot get the 'EmployeeNumber' property of EmployeeData.

mpArray(2).GetAccess

ans =
    private

Obtain a function handle to the property set access function:

mpArray(1).SetMethod

ans =
    @D:\MyDir\@EmployeeData\EmployeeData.m>EmployeeData.set.EmployeeName

**Metaclass EnumeratedValues Property**

The **meta.class EnumeratedValues** property contains an array of **meta.EnumeratedValue** objects, one for each enumeration member. Use the **meta.EnumeratedValue Name** property to obtain the enumeration member names defined by an enumeration class. For example, given the **WeekDays** enumeration class:

```matlab
classdef WeekDays
    enumeration
        Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday
    end
end
```

Query enumeration names from the **meta.class** object:

```matlab
mc = ?WeekDays;
mc.EnumerationMemberList(2).Name
```

ans =

Tuesday

**Related Examples**

- “Find Objects with Specific Values” on page 16-9
Find Objects with Specific Values

In this section...

“Find Handle Objects” on page 16-9
“Find by Attribute Settings” on page 16-10

Find Handle Objects

Use the handle class findobj method to find objects that have properties with specific values. For example, the following class defines a PhoneBook object to represent a telephone book entry in a data base. The PhoneBook class subclasses the dynamicprops class, which derives from handle.

classdef PhoneBook < dynamicprops
    properties
    Name
    Address
    Number
    end
    methods
    function obj = PhoneBook(n,a,p)
        obj.Name = n;
        obj.Address = a;
        obj.Number = p;
    end
end

Here are three of the PhoneBook entries in the database:

PB(1) = PhoneBook('Nancy Vidal','123 Washington Street','5081234567');
PB(2) = PhoneBook('Nancy Vidal','123 Main Street','5081234568');
PB(3) = PhoneBook('Nancy Wong','123 South Street','5081234569');

One of these three PhoneBook objects has a dynamic property:

PB(2).addprop('HighSpeedInternet');
P(2).HighSpeedInternet = '1M';

Find Property/Value Pairs

Find the object representing employee Nancy Wong and display the name and number by concatenating the strings:
NW = findobj(PB,'Name','Nancy Wong');
[NW.Name,' - ',NW.Number]

ans =

Nancy Wong - 5081234569

Find Objects with Specific Property Names

Search for objects with specific property names using the -property option:

H = findobj(PB,-property,'HighSpeedInternet');
H.HighSpeedInternet

ans =

1M

The -property option enables you to omit the value of the property and search for objects using only the property name.

Using Logical Expressions

Search for specific combinations of property names and values:

H = findobj(PB,'Name','Nancy Vidal','-and','Address','123 Main Street');
H.Number

ans =

5081234568

Find by Attribute Settings

All metaclasses derive from the handle class. You can use the handle findobj method to find class members that have specific attribute settings.

For example, find the abstract methods in a class definition by searching the meta.class MethodList for meta.method objects with their Abstract property set to true:

Use the class name in string form because class is abstract. You cannot create an object of the class:

mc = meta.class.fromName('MyClass');
Search the MethodList list of meta.method objects for those methods that have their Abstract property set to true:

absMethods = findobj(mc.MethodList,'Abstract',true);
methodNamees = {absMethods.Name};

The cell array, methodNamees, contains the names of the abstract methods in the class.

**Find Properties That Have Public Get Access**

Find the names of all properties in the containers.Map class that have public GetAccess:

- Get the meta.class object.
- Use findobj to search the array of meta.property objects.
- Use braces to create a cell array of property names.

mc = ?containers.Map;
mpArray = findobj(mc.PropertyList,'GetAccess','public');
names = {mpArray.Name};

Display the names of all containers.Map properties that have public GetAccess:

celldisp(names)

names{1} =
Count

names{2} =
KeyType

names{3} =
ValueType

**Find Static Methods**

Determine if any containers.Map class methods are static:

~isempty(findobj([mc.MethodList(:)],'Static',true))

ans =
findobj returns an array of meta.method objects for the static methods. In this case, the list of static methods is not empty. Therefore, there are static methods defined by this class.

Get the names of any static methods from the meta.method array:

```matlab
staticMethodInfo = findobj([mc.MethodList(:)],'Static',true);
staticMethodInfo(:).Name
```

ans =

empty

The name of the static method (there is only one in this case) is empty. Here is the information from the meta.method object for the empty method:

```matlab
staticMethodInfo
```

method with properties:

```matlab
    Name: 'empty'
    Description: 'Returns an empty object array of the given size'
    DetailedDescription: ''
    Access: 'public'
    Static: 1
    Abstract: 0
    Sealed: 0
    Hidden: 1
    InputNames: {'varargin'}
    OutputNames: {'E'}
    DefiningClass: [1x1 meta.class]
```

**See Also**
empty

**Related Examples**
- “Get Information About Properties” on page 16-13
Get Information About Properties

The meta.property object

Use the meta.property class to determine the values of property attributes. The writable properties of a meta.property object correspond to the attributes of the associated property. The values of the writable meta.property properties correspond to the attribute values specified in the class definition.

For example, create a default containers.Map object. Use the handle findprop method to get the meta.property object for the Count property:

```matlab
mp = findprop(containers.Map,'Count')
```

mp =

property with properties:

- Name: 'Count'
- Description: 'Number of pairs in the collection'
- DetailedDescription: ''
- GetAccess: 'public'
- SetAccess: 'private'
- Dependent: 1
- Constant: 0
- Abstract: 0
- Transient: 1
- Hidden: 0
- GetObservable: 0
- SetObservable: 0
- AbortSet: 0
- GetMethod: []
- SetMethod: []
- DefiningClass: [1x1 meta.class]

The preceding meta.property display shows that the default Map object Count property:
Information from Class Metadata

- Has public GetAccess and private SetAccess
- Is Dependent
- Is Transient

For a list of property attributes, see “Table of Property Attributes” on page 8-7.

If the class is not a handle class, get the meta.property objects from the meta.class object. Use the metaclass function an object or the ? operator with the class name:

```matlab
mc = ?containers.Map
```

```matlab
mc =

class with properties:

    Name: 'containers.Map'
    Description: 'MATLAB Map Container'
    DetailedDescription: 'MATLAB Map Container'
    Hidden: 0
    Sealed: 0
    ConstructOnLoad: 1
    HandleCompatible: 1
    InferiorClasses: {0x1 cell}
    ContainingPackage: [1x1 meta.package]
    PropertyList: [4x1 meta.property]
    MethodList: [35x1 meta.method]
    EventList: [1x1 meta.event]
    EnumerationMemberList: [0x1 meta.EnumeratedValue]
    SuperclassList: [1x1 meta.class]
```

The meta.class object property named PropertyList contains an array of meta.property objects, one for each property defined by the containers.Map class. For example, the name of the property associated with the meta.property object in element 1 is:

```matlab
mc.PropertyList(1).Name
```

```matlab
ans =

Count
```

The meta.class object contains a meta.property object for hidden properties too. Compare the result with the properties function, which returns only public properties:
properties('containers.Map')

Properties for class containers.Map:

    Count
    KeyType
    ValueType

The serialization property is Hidden and has its GetAccess and SetAccess attributes set to private. Therefore, the properties function does not list it. However, you can get information about this property from its associated meta.property object (which is the fourth element in the array of meta.property objects in this case):

mc.PropertyList(4)

ans =

class with properties:

    Name: 'serialization'
    Description: 'Serialization property.'
    DetailedDescription: ''
    GetAccess: 'private'
    SetAccess: 'private'
    Dependent: 0
    Constant: 0
    Abstract: 0
    Transient: 0
    Hidden: 1
    GetObservable: 0
    SetObservable: 0
    AbortSet: 0
    GetMethod: []
    SetMethod: []
    DefiningClass: [1x1 meta.class]

How to Index Metaclass Objects

Access other metaclass objects directly from the meta.class object properties. For example, the statement:

mc = ?containers.Map;

returns a meta.class object:
Referencing the `PropertyList` `meta.class` property returns an array with one `meta.property` object for each property of the `containers.Map` class:

```matlab
class(mc.PropertyList)
an =
meta.property
```

Each array element is a single `meta.property` object:

```matlab
mc.Properties(1)
an =
   [1x1 meta.property]
```

The `Name` property of the `meta.property` object contains a character string that is the name of the property:

```matlab
class(mc.PropertyList(1).Name)
an =
char
```

Apply standard MATLAB indexing to access information in metaclass objects.

For example, the `meta.class PropertyList` property contains an array of `meta.property` objects. The following expression accesses the first `meta.property` object in this array and returns the first and last (`C` and `t`) letters of the string contained in the `meta.property Name` property.

```matlab
mc.PropertyList(1).Name([1 end])
an =
Ct```
How to Find Properties with Specific Attributes

This example implements a function that finds properties with specific attribute values. For example, you can:

- Find objects that define constant properties (Constant attribute set to true).
- Determine what properties are read-only (GetAccess = public, SetAccess = private).

The findAttrValue function returns a cell array of property names that set the specified attribute.

The findAttrValue function accesses information from metadata using these techniques:

- If input argument, obj, is a string, use the meta.class.fromName static method to get the meta.class object.
- If input argument, obj, is an object, use the metaclass function to get the meta.class object.
- Every property has an associated meta.property object. Obtain these objects from the meta.class PropertyList property.
- Use the handle class findprop method to determine if the requested property attribute is a valid attribute name. All property attributes are properties of the meta.property object. The statement, findobj(mp,'PropertyName') determines whether the meta.property object, mp, has a property called PropertyName.
- Reference meta.property object properties using dynamic field names. For example, if attrName = 'Constant', then MATLAB converts the expression mp.(attrName) to mp.Constant
- The optional third argument enables you to specify the value of attributes whose values are not logical true or false (such as GetAccess and SetAccess).

```matlab
function cl_out = findAttrValue(obj,attrName,varargin)
    if ischar(obj)
        mc = meta.class.fromName(obj);
    elseif isobject(obj)
        mc = metaclass(obj);
    end
    ii = 0; numb_props = length(mc.PropertyList);
    cl_array = cell(1,numb_props);
    for c = 1:numb_props
```
mp = mc.PropertyList(c);
if isempty(findprop(mp,attrName))
    error('Not a valid attribute name')
end
attrValue = mp.(attrName);
if attrValue
    if islogical(attrValue) || strcmp(varargin{1},attrValue)
        ii = ii + 1;
        cl_array(ii) = {mp.Name};
    end
end
end
cl_out = cl_array(1:ii);
end

Find Property Attributes

Suppose you have the following containers.Map object:
mapobj = containers.Map({'rose','bicycle'},{'flower','machine'});

Find properties with private SetAccess:
findAttrValue(mapobj,'SetAccess','private')
ans =
    'Count'    'KeyType'    'ValueType'    'serialization'

Find properties with public GetAccess:
findAttrValue(mapobj,'GetAccess','public')
ans =
    'Count'    'KeyType'    'ValueType'

Related Examples
- “Find Default Values in Property Metadata” on page 16-19
Find Default Values in Property Metadata

In this section...

“Default Values” on page 16-19
“meta.property Data” on page 16-19

Default Values

Class definitions can specify explicit default values for properties (see “Define Default Values” on page 5-13). You can determine if a class defines explicit default values for a property and what the value of the default is from the property’s meta.property object.

meta.property Data

The meta.class object for a class contains a meta.property object for every property defined by the class, including properties with private and protected access.

For example, get the meta.class object for MATLAB MException class:

```matlab
mc = ?MException;
```

Get an array of meta.property objects from the meta.class object:

```matlab
mp = mc.PropertyList;
```

The first element in the mp array is the meta.property object for the type property:

```matlab
mp(1)
ans =

    class with properties:

        Name: 'type'
    Description: 'Type of error reporting'
DetailedDescription: ''
        GetAccess: 'private'
    SetAccess: 'private'
        Dependent: 0
    Constant: 0
```
Abstract: 0
Transient: 0
Hidden: 0
GetObservable: 1
SetObservable: 1
AbortSet: 0
GetMethod: []
SetMethod: []
HasDefault: 1
DefaultValue: {}
DefiningClass: [1x1 meta.class]

Two `meta.property` properties provide information on default values:

- **HasDefault** — true if class specifies a default value for the property, false if it does not.
- **DefaultValue** — Contains the default value, if the class defines a default value for the property.

These properties provide a programmatic way to obtain property default values without reading class definition files. Use these `meta.property` object properties to obtain property default values for both built-in classes and classes defined in MATLAB code.

**Query Default Value**

The procedure for querying a default value involves:

1. Getting the `meta.property` object for the property whose default value you want to query.
2. Testing the logical value of the `meta.property HasDefault` property to determine if the property defines a default value. MATLAB returns an error when you query the `DefaultValue` property if the class does not define a default value for the property.
3. Obtaining the default value from the `meta.property DefaultValue` property if the `HasDefault` value is true.

Use the `?` operator, the `metaclass` function, or the `meta.class.fromName` static method (works with string variable) to obtain a `meta.class` object. The `meta.class` object `PropertyList` property contains an array of `meta.property` objects. Identify which property corresponds to which `meta.property` object using the `meta.property Name` property.
For example, this class defines properties with default values:

```matlab
classdef MyDefs
    properties
        Material = 'acrylic';
        InitialValue = 1.0;
    end
end
```

Follow these steps to obtain the default value defined for the `Material` property. Include any error checking that is necessary for your application.

1. Get the `meta.class` object for the class:
   ```matlab
   mc = ?MyDefs;
   ```
2. Get an array of `meta.property` objects from the `meta.class PropertyList` property:
   ```matlab
   mp = mc.PropertyList;
   ```
3. The length of the `mp` array equals the number of properties. You can use the `meta.property Name` property to find the property of interest:
   ```matlab
   for k = 1:length(mp)
       if (strcmp(mp(k).Name,'Material'))
           ...
       end
   end
   ```
4. Before querying the default value of the `Material` property, test the `HasDefault` `meta.property` to determine if `MyClass` defines a default property for this property:
   ```matlab
   if mp(k).HasDefault
       dv = mp(k).DefaultValue;
   end
   end
   ```

The `DefaultValue` property is read only. Changing the default value in the class definition changes the value of `DefaultValue` property. You can query the default value of a property regardless of its access settings.

Abstract and dynamic properties cannot define default values. Therefore, MATLAB returns an error if you attempt to query the default value of properties with these attributes. Always test the logical value of the `meta.property HasDefault` property before querying the `DefaultValue` property to avoid generating an error.
Default Values Defined as Expressions

Class definitions can define property default values as MATLAB expressions (see “Expressions in Class Definitions” on page 6-8 for more information). MATLAB evaluates these expressions the first time the default value is needed, such as the first time you create an instance of the class.

Querying the \texttt{meta.property DefaultValue} property causes MATLAB to evaluate a default value expression, if it had not yet been evaluated. Therefore, querying a property default value can return an error or warning if errors or warnings occur when MATLAB evaluates the expression. See “Property With Expression That Errors” on page 16-23 for an example.

Property With No Explicit Default Value

\texttt{MyClass} does not explicitly define a default value for the \texttt{Foo} property:

\begin{verbatim}
classdef MyFoo
    properties
        Foo
    end
end
\end{verbatim}

The \texttt{meta.property} instance for property \texttt{Foo} has a value of \texttt{false} for \texttt{HasDefault}. Because the class does not explicitly define a default value for \texttt{Foo}, attempting to access the \texttt{DefaultValue} property causes an error:

\begin{verbatim}
mc = ?MyFoo;
mp = mc.PropertyList(1);
mp.HasDefault
ans =
    0
dv = mp.DefaultValue;
\end{verbatim}

No default value has been defined for property \texttt{Foo}

Abstract Property

\texttt{MyClass} defines the \texttt{Foo} property as \texttt{Abstract}:

\begin{verbatim}
classdef MyAbst
\end{verbatim}
properties (Abstract)
    Foo
end
end

The `meta.property` instance for property `Foo` has a value of `false` for its `HasDefault` property because you cannot define a default value for an `Abstract` property. Attempting to access `DefaultValue` causes an error:

```matlab
mc = ?MyAbst;
mp = mc.PropertyList(1);
mp.HasDefault
ans =
    0
dv = mp.DefaultValue;
```

Property `Foo` is abstract and therefore cannot have a default value.

**Property With Expression That Errors**

`MyPropEr` defines the `Foo` property default value as an expression that errors when evaluated.

```matlab
classdef MyPropEr
    properties
        properties
            Foo = sin(pie/2);
        end
    end
end
```

The `meta.property` object for property `Foo` has a value of `true` for its `HasDefault` property because `Foo` does have a default value:

```
sin(pie/2)
```

However, this expression returns an error (`pie` is a function that creates a pie graph, not the value `pi`).

```matlab
mc = ?MyPropEr;
mp = mc.PropertyList(1);
mp.HasDefault
ans =
```
Information from Class Metadata

```
dv = mp.DefaultValue;

Error using pie (line 29)
Not enough input arguments.

Querying the default value causes the evaluation of the expression and returns the error.

**Property With Explicitly Defined Default Value of Empty ([])**

MyEmptyProp assigns a default of [ ] (empty double) to the Foo property:

```matlab
classdef MyEmptyProp
    properties
        Foo = [];
    end
end
```

The `meta.property` object for property `Foo` has a value of true for its `HasDefault` property. Accessing `DefaultValue` returns the value [ ]:

```matlab
mc = ?MyEmptyProp;
mp = mc.PropertyList(1);
mp.HasDefault

ans =

1

dv = mp.DefaultValue;
dv =

[]
```

**Related Examples**

- “Get Information About Properties” on page 16-13
Specialize Object Behavior

- “Methods That Modify Default Behavior” on page 17-2
- “Number of Arguments for subsref and subsasgn” on page 17-5
- “Modify nargout and nargin for Indexing Methods” on page 17-8
- “Concatenation Methods” on page 17-10
- “Object Converters” on page 17-11
- “Object Array Indexing” on page 17-14
- “Indexed Reference” on page 17-20
- “Indexed Assignment” on page 17-24
- “end as Object Index” on page 17-28
- “Objects In Index Expressions” on page 17-30
- “Class with Modified Indexing” on page 17-32
- “Class Operator Implementation” on page 17-40
Methods That Modify Default Behavior

In this section...

“How to Customize Class Behavior” on page 17-2
“Which Methods Control Which Behaviors” on page 17-2
“Overload Functions and Override Methods” on page 17-4

How to Customize Class Behavior

There are functions that MATLAB calls implicitly when you perform certain actions with objects. For example, a statement like \([B(1);A(3)]\) involves indexed reference and vertical concatenation.

You can change how user-defined objects behave by defining methods that control specific behaviors. To change a behavior, implement the appropriate method with the name and signature of the MATLAB function.

Which Methods Control Which Behaviors

The following table lists the methods to implement for your class and describes the behaviors that they control.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Method to Implement</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Concatenating Objects</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cat, horzcat, and vertcat</td>
<td>Customize behavior when concatenation objects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>See “Built-In Subclass with Properties” on page 12-61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creating Empty Arrays</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>empty</td>
<td>Create empty arrays of the specified class. See “Empty Arrays” on page 10-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Displaying Objects</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disp</td>
<td>Called when you enter disp(obj) on the command line</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>display</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class Method to Implement</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Called when statements are not terminated by semicolons. <code>disp</code> is often used to implement display methods.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See “Overload the disp Function” on page 18-38

See “Custom Display Interface” on page 18-2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Converting Objects to Other Classes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Converters like <code>double</code> and <code>char</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Convert an object to a MATLAB built-in class</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See “The Character Converter” on page 19-16 and “The Double Converter” on page 19-15

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indexing Objects</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>subsref</code> and <code>subsasgn</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enables you to create nonstandard indexed reference and indexed assignment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See “Object Array Indexing” on page 17-14

| `end` |
| Supports `end` syntax in indexing expressions using an object; e.g., `A(1:end)` |

See “end as Object Index” on page 17-28

| `numel` |
| Determine the number of elements in an array |

See “Modify nargout and nargin for Indexing Methods” on page 17-8

| `size` |
| Determine the dimensions of an array |

See “Use of size and numel with Classes” on page 12-67

| `subsindex` |
| Support using an object in indexing expressions |

See “Objects In Index Expressions” on page 17-30

<p>| Saving and Loading Objects |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Method to Implement</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>loadobj and saveobj</td>
<td>Customize behavior when loading and saving objects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>See “Object Save and Load ”</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Overload Functions and Override Methods**

Overloading and overriding are terms that describe techniques for customizing class behavior. Here is how we use these terms in MATLAB.

**Overloading**

Overloading means that there is more than one function or method having the same name within the same scope. MATLAB dispatches to a particular function or method based on the dominant argument. For example, the `timeseries` class overloads the MATLAB `plot` function. When you call `plot` with a `timeseries` object as an input argument, MATLAB calls the `timeseries` class method named `plot`.

**Overriding**

Overriding means redefining a method inherited from a superclass. MATLAB dispatches to the most specific version of the method. That is, if the dominant argument is an instance of the subclass, then MATLAB calls the subclass method.

To control class precedence, use the `InferiorClasses` attribute.

**More About**

- “Modify nargout and nargin for Indexing Methods” on page 17-8
Number of Arguments for subsref and subsasgn

In this section...

“How MATLAB Determines Number of Arguments” on page 17-5
“Syntax for subsref, and subsasgn Methods” on page 17-6

How MATLAB Determines Number of Arguments

MATLAB calls `subsref` or `subsasgn` to determine the result of executing code that involves indexed reference or assignment. The number of elements referenced or assigned by an indexing operation determines the number of arguments MATLAB uses to call `subsref` and `subsasgn`. That is, the indexing code determines the number of arguments that MATLAB:

• Returns from the call to `subsref`
• Passes to the call to `subsasgn`

Therefore, the indexing code determines the value of `nargout` for the call to `subsref` and the value of `nargin` for the call to `subsasgn`.

For example, consider the `ValuesArray` class.

```matlab
classdef ValuesArray
    properties
        Values
    end
    methods
        function obj = ValuesArray(v)
            if nargin > 0
                obj.Values = v;
            end
        end
    end
end
```

Create an array of 10 `ValuesArray` objects.

```matlab
l = ValuesArray.empty;
for k = 1:10
    l(k) = ValuesArray(k);
```
end

This subscripted reference returns a comma-separated list of three elements. For this statement, the value of nargout in subsref is 3.

```matlab
1(1:3).Values
ans =
    1
```

```matlab
ans =
    2
```

```matlab
ans =
    3
```

The left side of a subscripted assignment statement affects the number of input arguments that MATLAB uses to call subsasgn. This subscripted assignment assigns three values to the three elements added to the array. For this assignment, the value of nargin within subsasgn is 5 (the object, the indexing substructure, and the three values to assign).

```matlab
l =
    1x13 ValuesArray array with properties:
    Values
```

If the number of right-side arguments cannot satisfy the number of left-side arguments, MATLAB returns an error:

```matlab
Insufficient number of outputs from right hand side of equal sign to satisfy assignment.
```

**Syntax for subsref, and subsasgn Methods**
If a class overloads \texttt{subsref} to support either '{}, '.', or both types of indexing and the operation returns more than one value, overload \texttt{subsref} to return multiple values using \texttt{varargout}:

\begin{verbatim}
function varargout = subsref(A,S)
    ...
end
\end{verbatim}

If a class overloads \texttt{subsasgn} to support either '{}, '.', or both types of indexing and the operation assigns more than one value, overload \texttt{subsasgn} to accept multiple values using \texttt{varargin}:

\begin{verbatim}
function A = subsasgn(A,S,varargin)
    ...
end
\end{verbatim}

\textbf{More About}

- “Modify nargout and nargin for Indexing Methods” on page 17-8
Modify nargout and nargin for Indexing Methods

When to Modify Number of Arguments

By default, the number of values referenced by an indexing operation determines how many output arguments MATLAB uses to call `subsref`. Similarly, the number of values to assign in an indexed assignment operation determines how many input arguments MATLAB uses to call `subsasgn`.

If your class design requires that indexing operations return or assign a different number of values than the number defined by the indexing operation, use `numArgumentsFromSubscript` to specify the required number. `numArgumentsFromSubscript` provides control over `nargout` for `subsref` and `nargin` for `subsasgn`.

If your class uses `numArgumentsFromSubscript`, implement `subsref` and `subsasgn` methods to define the actual values returned or assigned by indexing operations.

Prior to MATLAB release R2015b, MATLAB produced different results for some indexing expressions that return or assign to a comma-separated list. Use `numArgumentsFromSubscript` to support code that relies on the behavior of previous releases. Also, now you can overload `numArgumentsFromSubscript` instead of `numel` to achieve specific results without redefining how `numel` works.

How to Modify Number of Arguments

When a class overloads `numArgumentsFromSubscript`, MATLAB calls this method instead of `numel` to compute the number of arguments expected for `subsref nargout` and `subsasgn nargin`.

If classes do not overload `numArgumentsFromSubscript`, MATLAB calls `numel` to compute the values of `nargout` or `nargin`.

MATLAB calls `numArgumentsFromSubscript` with three input arguments:
function n = numArgumentsFromSubscript(obj,s,callingContext)
    ...
end

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input Argument</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>obj</td>
<td>Object whose subsref or subsasgn method is called</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s</td>
<td>Indexing structure that contains the indexing type and indices used in the operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>callingContext</td>
<td>Context in which the indexing operation occurs: indexed reference used as a statement, index reference used as a function argument, and indexed assignment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MATLAB uses the value returned by `numArgumentsFromSubscript` for indexed reference and assignment. Determine the context in which the indexing operation executes by testing the value of `callingContext` in your implementation of `numArgumentsFromSubscript`. For example, test for any or all of the possible contexts.

```matlab
function n = numArgumentsFromSubscript(obj,~,callingContext)
    switch callingContext
        case matlab.mixin.util.IndexingContext.Statement
            n = ...; % nargout for indexed reference used as statement
        case matlab.mixin.util.IndexingContext.Expression
            n = ...; % nargout for indexed reference used as function argument
        case matlab.mixin.util.IndexingContext.Assignment
            n = ...; % nargin for indexed assignment
    end
end
```

For more information and examples, see `numArgumentsFromSubscript`.

**Note:** For MATLAB version R2015b and later releases, overload `numArgumentsFromSubscript` instead of `numel` to customize indexing for your class.

**More About**

- “Number of Arguments for subsref and subsasgn” on page 17-5
- “Use of size and numel with Classes” on page 12-67
Concatenation Methods

In this section...

“Default Concatenation” on page 17-10
“Methods to Overload” on page 17-10

Default Concatenation

You can concatenate objects into arrays. For example, suppose that you have three instances of the class MyClass, obj1, obj2, obj3. You can form arrays of these objects using brackets. Horizontal concatenation calls horzcat:

HorArray = [obj1, obj2, obj3];

HorArray is a 1-by-3 array of class MyClass. You can concatenate the objects along the vertical dimension, which calls vertcat:

VertArray = [obj1; obj2; obj3]

VertArray is a 3-by-1 array of class MyClass. To concatenate arrays along different dimensions, use the cat function. For example:

ndArray = cat(3, HorArray, HorArray);

ndArray is a 1-by-3-by-2 array.

Methods to Overload

Overload horzcat, vertcat, and cat to produce specialized behaviors in your class. Overload both horzcat and vertcat whenever you want to modify object concatenation because MATLAB uses both functions for any concatenation operation.

Related Examples

• “Built-In Subclass with Properties” on page 12-61
Object Converters

In this section...

“Why Implement Converters” on page 17-11
“Converters for Package Classes” on page 17-11
“Converters and Subscripted Assignment” on page 17-12

Why Implement Converters

You can convert an object of one class to an object of another class. A converter method has the same name as the class it converts to, such as char or double. Think of a converter method as an overloaded constructor method of another class. The converter takes an instance of its own class and returns an object of a different class.

Converters enable you to:

• Use methods defined for another class
• Ensure that expressions involving objects of mixed class types execute properly
• Control how instances are interpreted in other contexts

Suppose that you define a polynomial class. If you create a double method for the polynomial class, you can use it to call other functions that require inputs of type double.

    p = polynomial(...);
    dp = double(p);
    roots(dp)

p is a polynomial object, double is a method of the polynomial class, and roots is a standard MATLAB function whose input arguments are the coefficients of a polynomial.

Converters for Package Classes

Classes defined in packages can have names that are a dot-separated list of names. The last name is a class and preceding names are packages. Name the conversion methods using the package qualifiers in the method names. For example, a conversion method to convert objects of MyClass to objects of the PkgName.PkgClass class uses this method name:

    classdef MyClass
You cannot define a converter method that uses dots in the name in a separate file. Define package-class converters in the `classdef` file.

**Converters and Subscripted Assignment**

When you make a subscripted assignment statement like:

```matlab
A(1) = myobj;
```

MATLAB compares the class of the Right-Side variable to the class of the Left-Side variable. If the classes are different, MATLAB attempts to convert the Right-Side variable to the class of the Left-Side variable. To do this conversion, MATLAB first searches for a method of the Right-Side class that has the same name as the Left-Side class. Such a method is a converter method, which is similar to a typecast operation in other languages.

If the Right-Side class does not define a method to convert from the Right-Side class to the Left-Side class, MATLAB calls the Left-Side class constructor, passing it the Right-Side variable.

For example, suppose that you make the following assignments:

```matlab
A(1) = objA; % Object of class ClassA
A(2) = objB; % Object of class ClassB
```

MATLAB attempts to call a method of `ClassB` named `ClassA`. If no such converter method exists, MATLAB software calls the `ClassA` constructor, passing `objB` as an argument. If the `ClassA` constructor cannot accept `objB` as an argument, then MATLAB returns an error.

Use `cell` arrays to store objects of different classes.

**Related Examples**

- “Converter Methods” on page 10-18
• “The Double Converter” on page 19-15
Object Array Indexing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>In this section...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>“Default Indexed Reference and Assignment” on page 17-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“What You Can Modify” on page 17-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“When to Modify Indexing Behavior” on page 17-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Built-In subsref and subsasgn Called in Methods” on page 17-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Avoid Overriding Access Attributes” on page 17-18</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Default Indexed Reference and Assignment

MATLAB classes support object array indexing by default. Many class designs require no modification to this behavior.

Arrays enable you to reference and assign elements of the array using a subscripted notation. This notation specifies the indices of specific array elements. For example, suppose that you create two arrays of numbers (using `randi` and concatenation).

Create a 3-by-4 array of integers between 1 and 9:

```matlab
A = randi(9,3,4)
A =
4 8 5 7
4 2 6 3
7 5 7 7
```

Create a 1-by-3 array of the numbers 3, 6, 9:

```matlab
B = [3 6 9];
```

Reference and assign elements of either array using index values in parentheses:

```matlab
B(2) = A(3,4);
B
B =
3 7 9
```
When you execute a statement that involves indexed reference:

\[ C = A(3,4); \]

MATLAB calls the built-in `subsref` function to determine how to interpret the statement. Similarly, if you execute a statement that involves indexed assignment:

\[ C(4) = 7; \]

MATLAB calls the built-in `subsasgn` function to determine how to interpret the statement.

The MATLAB default `subsref` and `subsasgn` functions also work with user-defined objects. For example, create an array of objects of the same class:

```matlab
for k=1:3
    objArray(k) = MyClass;
end
```

Referencing the second element in the object array, `objArray`, returns the object constructed when \( k = 2 \):

\[ D = objArray(2); \]

\[ \text{class}(D) \]

\[ \text{ans} = \]

\[ \text{MyClass} \]

You can assign an object to an array of objects of the same class, or an uninitialized variable:

\[ \text{newArray}(3,4) = D; \]

Arrays of objects behave much like numeric arrays in MATLAB. You do not need to implement any special methods to provide standard array behavior with your class.

For general information about array indexing, see “Matrix Indexing”.

**What You Can Modify**

You can modify your class indexed reference and/or assignment behavior by implementing class methods called `subsref` and `subsasgn`. For syntax description, see their respective reference pages.
Once you add a `subsref` or `subsasgn` method to your class, then MATLAB calls only the class method, not the built-in function. Therefore, your class method must implement all the indexed reference and assignment operations that you want your class to support. These operations include:

- Dot notation calls to class methods
- Dot notation reference and assignment involving properties
- Any indexing using parentheses ' () '
- Any indexing using braces ' {} '

Implementing `subsref` and `subsasgn` methods gives you complete control over the interpretation of indexing expressions for objects of your class. Implementing the extent of behaviors that MATLAB provides by default is nontrivial.

**When to Modify Indexing Behavior**

Default indexing for object arrays and dot notation for access to properties and methods enables user-defined objects to behave like built-in classes. For example, suppose that you define a class with a property called `Data` that contains an array of numeric data.

This statement:
`obj.Data(2,3)`

Returns the value contained in the second row, third column of the array. If you have an array of objects, use an expression like:
`objArray(3).Data(2,3)`

This statement returns the value contained in the second row, third column of the third element in the array.

Modify the default indexing behavior when your class design requires behavior that is different from MATLAB default behavior.

**Built-In subsref and subsasgn Called in Methods**

MATLAB does not call class-defined `subsref` or `subsasgn` methods within the overloaded methods. Within class methods, MATLAB always calls the built-in `subsref` and `subsasgn` functions. This behavior occurs within the class-defined `subsref` and `subsasgn` methods too.
For example, within a class method, this dot reference:

```matlab
obj.Prop
```
calls the built-in `subsref` function. To call the class-defined `subsref` method, use:

```matlab
subsref(obj, substruct('.','Prop'))
```

Whenever a method requires the functionality of the class-defined `subsref` or `subsasgn` method, the class must call the overloaded methods as functions. Do not use the operators, `'()'`, `'{}'`, or `'.'.`

For example, suppose that you define a class to represent polynomial. This class has a `subsref` method that evaluates the polynomial with the value of the independent variable equal to the subscript. Assume that this statement defines the polynomial with its coefficients:

```matlab
p = polynom([1 0 -2 -5]);
```

The MATLAB expression for the resulting polynomial is:

```matlab
x^3 - 2*x - 5
```

This subscripted expression returns the value of the polynomial at `x = 3`:

```matlab
p(3)
```

```matlab
ans =
   16
```

Suppose that you want to use this feature in another class method. To do so, call the `subsref` function directly. The `evalEqual` method accepts two `polynom` objects and a value at which to evaluate the polynomials:

```matlab
methods
   function ToF = evalEqual(p1,p2,x)
       % Create arguments for subsref
       subs.type = '()';
       subs.subs = {x};
       % Need to call subsref explicitly
       y1 = subsref(p1,subs);
       y2 = subsref(p2,subs);
       if y1 == y2
           ToF = true;
       else
```

```matlab
end
```

17-17
This behavior enables you to use standard MATLAB indexing to implement specialized behaviors. See “Class with Modified Indexing” on page 17-32 for examples of how to use both built-in and class-modified indexing.

Avoid Overriding Access Attributes

Because `subsref` is a class method, it has access to private class members. Avoid inadvertently giving access to private methods and properties as you handle various types of reference. Consider this `subsref` method defined for a class having private properties, x and y:

```matlab
classdef MyPlot
    properties (Access = private)
        x
        y
    end
    properties
        Maximum
        Minimum
        Average
    end
end
methods
    function obj = MyPlot(x,y)
        obj.x = x;
        obj.y = y;
        obj.Maximum = max(y);
        obj.Minimum = min(y);
        obj.Average = mean(y);
    end
    function B = subsref(A,S)
        switch S(1).type
            case '.
                switch S(1).subs
                    case 'plot'
                        % Reference to A.x and A.y call built-in subsref
                        B = plot(A.x,A.y);
                    otherwise
                        % Enable dot notation for all properties and methods
```
This `subsref` enables the use of dot notation to create a plot using the name `'plot'`. The statement:

```matlab
obj = MyPlot(1:10,1:10);
h = obj.plot;
```

calls the `plot` function and returns the handle to the graphics object.

You do not need to code each method and property name. The `otherwise` code in the inner `switch` block manages any name reference that you do not explicitly specify in `case` statements. However, using this technique exposes any private and protected class members via dot notation. For example, you can reference the private property, `x`, with this statement:

```matlab
obj.x
```

```matlab
ans =

     1     2     3     4     5     6     7     8     9    10
```

The same issue applies to writing a `subsasgn` method that enables assignment to private or protected properties. Your `subsref` and `subsasgn` methods might need to code each specific property and method name explicitly to avoid violating the class design.

**Related Examples**

- “Indexed Reference” on page 17-20
- “Indexed Assignment” on page 17-24
Indexed Reference

In this section...

“How Indexed Reference Works” on page 17-20
“Compound Indexed References” on page 17-21
“How to Write subsref” on page 17-22

How Indexed Reference Works

Object indexed references are in three forms — parentheses, braces, and name:

A(I)
A{I}
A.name

Each of these statements causes a call by MATLAB to: , or a call to the:

• subsref method of the class of A
• Built-in subsref function, if the class of A does not implement a subsref method.

MATLAB passes two arguments to subsref:

B = subsref(A,S)

The first argument is the object being referenced, A. The second argument, S, is a struct with two fields:

• S.type is a string containing '()', '{}, or '.' specifying the indexing type used.
• S.subs is a cell array or string containing the actual index or name. A colon used as an index is passed in the cell array as the string ':'. Ranges specified using a colon (e.g., 2:5) are expanded to 2 3 4 5.

For example, the expression:

A(1:4,:)

Causes MATLAB to call subsref(A,S), where S is a 1-by-1 structure with a two-element cell array. The cell array contains the numbers 1, 2, 3, 4, and the colon character ::.
S.type = '()'  
S.subs = {1:4,'::'}

Returning the contents of each cell of S.subs gives the index values for the first dimension and a string '::' for the second dimension:

S.subs{::}

ans =

    1     2     3     4

ans =

:

The default subsref returns all array elements in rows 1 through 4 and all the columns in the array.

Similarly, this expression:

A{1:4}

Uses a cell array containing the numbers 1, 2, 3, 4.

S.type = '{}'
S.subs = {1:4}

The default subsref returns the contents of all cell array elements in rows 1 through 4 and all the columns in the array.

This expression:

A.Name

Calls subsref(A,S), where the struct S has these values:

S.type = '.'
S.subs = 'Name'

**Compound Indexed References**

These simple calls are combined for more complicated indexing expressions. In such cases, length(S) is the number of indexing levels. For example,
A(1,2).PropertyName(1:4)
calls `subsref(A,S)`, where S is a 3-by-1 array of structs with the values:

*S(1).type = '('*    *S(2).type = '*'    *S(3).type = '()'*  
*S(1).subs = {1,2}   *S(2).subs = 'PropertyName'   *S(3).subs = {1:4}*

**How to Write subsref**

Your class `subsref` method must interpret the indexing expressions passed in by MATLAB. Your `subsref` method must implement any behavior you want your class to support. However, your method can call the built-in `subsref` to handle indexing types that you do not want to change.

You can use a `switch` statement to determine the type of indexing used and to obtain the actual indices. The following three code fragments illustrate how to interpret the input arguments. In each case, the function must return the value (\(B\)) that your `subsref` function returns.

For a parentheses index:

```matlab
% Parse A(n)
switch S.type
  case '()'
    B = A(S.subs{:});
  end
```

For a brace index (CellProperty contained a cell array):

```matlab
% Parse A{n}
switch S.type
  case '{}'
    B = A.CellProperty{S.subs{:}};
  end
```

Although braces are used for cell arrays in MATLAB, your `subsref` method can define its own meaning for this syntax.

Dot name indexing typically accesses property values. The name can be an arbitrary string for which you take an arbitrary action:

```matlab
switch S.type
  case '.
    switch S.subs
```

case 'name1'
    B = A.name1;
end

case 'name2'
    B = A.name2;
end

end

If the dot name is a method call, passing arguments requires a second level of indexing.

**Related Examples**

- “Class with Modified Indexing” on page 17-32
- “Redefine Indexed Reference” on page 19-18
Indexed Assignment

In this section...

“How Indexed Assignment Works” on page 17-24
“Indexed Assignment to Objects” on page 17-26
“Compound Indexed Assignments” on page 17-26

How Indexed Assignment Works

Object indexed assignments are in three forms — parentheses, braces, and name:

\[
\begin{align*}
  A(I) &= B \\
  A\{I\} &= B \\
  A.\text{name} &= B
\end{align*}
\]

Each of these statements causes a call to the class \text{subsasgn} method. If the class of class \text{of} \text{A} does not implement a \text{subsasgn} method, MATLAB calls the built-in \text{subsasgn}.

MATLAB passes three arguments to \text{subsasgn}:

\[
A = \text{subsasgn}(A,S,B)
\]

The first argument, \text{A}, is the object being assigned the value in the third argument \text{B}.

The second argument is the indexing structure (a MATLAB \text{struct}). \text{S} has two fields:

\begin{itemize}
  \item \text{S.type} is a string containing \text{'}()\text{'}, \text{'}\{}\text{'}\text{'}, or \text{'}\text{.}' \text{ specifying the indexing type used.}
  \item \text{S.subs} is a cell array or character array containing the actual indices or field name. A colon used as an index is passed in the cell array as the character \text{' : '}. Ranges specified using a colon (e.g., \text{2:5}) are expanded to \text{2 3 4 5}.
\end{itemize}

For example, the assignment statement:

\[
A(2,3) = B;
\]

generates a call to \text{subsasgn}:

\[
A = \text{subsasgn}(A,S,B)
\]

\text{S} contains:
S.type = '()' 
S.subs = {2,3}

The built-in subsasgn:

- Determines the class of A. If B is not the same class as A, then MATLAB tries to construct an object of the same class as A using B as an input argument. If this attempt fails, MATLAB returns an error.
- If A and B are, or can be made, into the same class, then MATLAB assigns the value of B to the array element at row 2, column 3.
- If A does not exist before you execute the assignment statement, then MATLAB initializes the five array elements that come before A(2,3) with default objects of class B.

Similarly, this expression

A{2,3} = B

Uses these values for S:

S.type = '{'} 
S.subs = {2,3}

The built-in subsasgn:

- Assigns B to the cell array element at row 2, column 3.
- If A does not exist before you execute the assignment statement, MATLAB initializes the five cells that come before A(2,3) with []. The result is a 2-by-3 cell array.

This expression:

A.Name = B

Calls A = subsasgn(A,S,B) where the struct S has these values:

S.type = '.' 
S.subs = 'Name'

The default subsasgn:

- Assigns B to the struct field Name.
- If A does not exist before you execute the assignment statement, MATLAB creates a struct variable, A with field Name and assigns the value of B to this field location.
• If `struct A` exists, but has no field `Name`, then MATLAB adds the field `Name` and assigns the value of `B` to the new field location.

• If `struct A` exists and has a `Name` field, then MATLAB assigns the value of `B` to `Name`.

You can redefine all or some of these assignment behaviors by implementing a `subsasgn` method for your class.

### Indexed Assignment to Objects

If `A` is an object, this expression:

```matlab
A.Name = B
```

Calls `A = subsasgn(A,S,B)` where, `S` has these values:

```matlab
S.type = '.'
S.subs = 'Name'
```

The default `subsasgn`:

• Attempts to assign `B` to the `Name` property.

• If the class of `A` does not have a `Name` property, MATLAB returns an error.

• If the `Name` property has restricted access (`private` or `protected`), MATLAB determines if the assignment is allowed based on the context in which the assignment is made.

• If the class of `A` defines a set method for property `Name`, MATLAB calls the set method.

• MATLAB applies all other property attributes before determining whether to assigning `B` to the property `Name`.

### Compound Indexed Assignments

These simple calls are combined for more complicated indexing expressions. In such cases, `length(S)` is the number of indexing levels. For example,

```matlab
A(1,2).PropertyName(1:4) = B
```

calls `subsasgn(A,S,B)`, where `S` is a 3-by-1 array of structures with the values:
S(1).type = '()'    S(2).type = '.'              S(3).type = '()'
S(1).subs = {1,2}   S(2).subs = 'PropertyName'   S(3).subs = {1:4}

**Related Examples**

- “Specialize Subscripted Assignment — subsasgn” on page 17-35
end as Object Index

In this section...

“Define end Indexing for an Object” on page 17-28
“The end Method ” on page 17-29

Define end Indexing for an Object

When you use end in an object indexing expression, such as A(4:end), the end function returns the index value corresponding to the last element in that dimension.

Classes can overload the end function to implement specialized behavior. If your class defines an end method, MATLAB calls that method to determine how to interpret the expression.

The end method has the calling syntax:

\[ \text{ind} = \text{end}(A,k,n) \]

The arguments are described as follows:

- A is the object
- k is the index in the expression using the end syntax
- n is the total number of indices in the expression
- ind is the index value to use in the expression

For example, consider the expression:

A(end-1,:) 

MATLAB calls the end method defined for the object A using the arguments:

\[ \text{ind} = \text{end}(A,1,2) \]

These arguments mean the end statement occurs in the first index element and there are two index elements. The end class method returns the index value for the last element of the first dimension (from which 1 is subtracted in this case). If your class implements an end method, ensure that it returns a value appropriate for the class.
The end Method

The end method for the MyDataClass example (see “Class with Modified Indexing” on page 17-32) operates on the contents of the Data property. The objective of this method is to return a value that can replace end in any indexing expression, such as:

\[ \text{obj(4:end)} \]
\[ \text{obj.Data(2,3:end)} \]

This end method determines a positive integer value for end. The method returns the value so that MATLAB can use it in the indexing expression.

function \( \text{ind} = \text{end(obj,k,n)} \)
  \( \text{szd} = \text{size(obj.Data)}; \)
  \( \text{if } k < n \)
    \( \text{ind} = \text{szd(k)}; \)
  \( \text{else} \)
    \( \text{ind} = \text{prod(szd(k:end))}; \)
  \( \text{end} \)
end

Related Examples

- “Class with Modified Indexing” on page 17-32
- “Objects In Index Expressions” on page 17-30
Objects In Index Expressions

In this section...

“Objects Indexes” on page 17-30
“Ways to Implement Objects as Indices” on page 17-30
“subsindex Implementation” on page 17-30

Objects Indexes

MATLAB can use objects as indices in indexed expressions. The rules of array indexing apply — indices must be positive integers. Therefore, MATLAB must be able to derive a value from the object that is a positive integer for use in the indexed expression.

Indexed expressions like \(X(A)\), where \(A\) is an object, cause MATLAB to call the \texttt{subsindex} function. However, if an indexing expression results in a call to an overloaded \texttt{subsref} or \texttt{subsasgn} method defined by the class of \(X\), then MATLAB does not call \texttt{subsindex}.

Ways to Implement Objects as Indices

There are several ways to implement indexing of one object by another object, \(X(A)\):

- Define a \texttt{subsindex} method in the class of \(A\) that converts \(A\) to an integer. MATLAB calls \(A\)'s \texttt{subsindex} method to perform indexing operations when the class of \(X\) does not overload \texttt{subsref} or \texttt{subsasgn}.
- If the class of \(X\) overloads \texttt{subsref} or \texttt{subsasgn}, these methods can call the \texttt{subsindex} method of \(A\) explicitly. The class of \(A\) must implement a \texttt{subsindex} method that returns an appropriate value.
- If the class of \(X\) overloads \texttt{subsref} or \texttt{subsasgn}, these methods can contain code that determines an integer index value. In this case, the class of \(A\) does not implement a \texttt{subsindex} method.

subsindex Implementation

\texttt{subsindex} must return the value of the object as a zero-based integer index value in the range 0 to \(\text{prod(size}(X)) - 1\).
Suppose that you want to use object \( A \) to index into object \( B \). \( B \) can be a single object or an array, depending on the class designs.

\[
C = B(A);
\]

Here are two examples of \texttt{subsindex} methods. The first assumes you can convert class \( A \) to a \texttt{uint8}. The second assumes class \( A \) stores an index value in a property.

- The \texttt{subsindex} method implemented by class \( A \) can convert the object to numeric format to be used as an index:

```matlab
function ind = subsindex(obj)
    ind = uint8(obj);
end
```

The class of \( \texttt{obj} \) implements a \texttt{uint8} method to provide the conversion from the object to an integer value.

- Class \( A \) implements \texttt{subsindex} to return a numeric value that is stored in a property:

```matlab
function ind = subsindex(obj)
    ind = obj.ElementIndex;
end
```

\textbf{Note:} \texttt{subsindex} values are 0-based, not 1-based.

\textbf{See Also}

\texttt{numArgumentsFromSubscript} | \texttt{subsasgn} | \texttt{subsref}

\textbf{Related Examples}

- “end as Object Index” on page 17-28

\textbf{More About}

- “Modify nargout and nargin for Indexing Methods” on page 17-8
Class with Modified Indexing

In this section...

“How to Modify Class Indexing” on page 17-32
“Class Description” on page 17-32
“Specialize Subscripted Reference — subsref” on page 17-34
“Specialize Subscripted Assignment — subsasgn” on page 17-35
“Implement Addition for Object Data — double and plus” on page 17-36
“MyDataClass.m” on page 17-37

How to Modify Class Indexing

This example defines a class that modifies the default indexing behavior by implementing `subsref` and `subsasgn` methods. The class also implements type conversion and addition by implementing a `double` converter method and a `plus` method.

The objective of the class design is to:

• Enable you to treat an object of the class as a numeric array
• Be able to contain nonnumeric and numeric data in an object of the class

Class Description

The class has three properties:

• Data — numeric test data
• Description — description of test data
• Date — date test was conducted

Assume that you have the following random data (`randi`):

```matlab
d = randi(9,3,4)
d =
```

*17-32*
Create an instance of the class:

```matlab
obj = MyDataClass(d,'Test001')
```

```matlab
obj =
    MyDataClass with properties:
        Data: [3x4 double]
        Description: 'Test001'
        Date: [2012 1 7 9 32 34.5190]
```

The constructor arguments pass the values for the `Data` and `Description` properties. The `clock` function assigns the value to the `Date` property from within the constructor. This approach captures the time and date information when each instance is created.

Here is the preliminary code listing without the `subsref`, `subsasgn double`, and `plus` methods.

```matlab
classdef MyDataClass
    properties
        Data
        Description
    end
    properties (SetAccess = private)
        Date
    end
    methods
        function obj = MyDataClass(data,desc)
            if nargin > 0
                obj.Data = data;
            end
            if nargin > 1
                obj.Description = desc;
            end
            obj.Date = clock;
        end
    end
end
```
Specialize Subscripted Reference — subsref

Implement a `subsref` method to support both the default and a specialized type of indexing.

- The default indexed reference behavior for scalar objects:

  ```matlab
  obj.Data(2,3)
  ans =
  5
  - And to add the functionality to index into the `Data` property with an expression like this statement:

  ```matlab
  obj(2,3)
  ```

To redefine `()` indexing to support access to the `Data` property means you cannot create arrays of `MyDataClass` objects and use `()` indexing to access individual objects. You can reference only scalar objects.

To achieve the design goals, the `subsref` method must handle all indexing types. The `subsref` method:

- Calls the `builtin` `subsref` function for `.` indexing
- Returns an error for `{}` indexing
- Defines its own version of `()` indexing.

The result: `obj(i)` is equivalent to `obj.Data(i)`.

```matlab
function sref = subsref(obj,s)
    switch s(1).type
    case '.
        sref = builtin('subsref',obj,s);
    case '()
        if length(s) < 2
            sref = builtin('subsref',obj.Data,s);
            return
        else
            sref = builtin('subsref',obj,s);
        end
    case '{}
        error(''MYDataClass:subsref'',...```
```
Specialize Subscripted Assignment — subsasgn

To support the equivalent of the indexed reference behavior with indexed assignment, implement a `subsasgn` method.

- Support the default indexed assignment:
  ```matlab
  obj.Data(2,3) = 9;
  ```
- Add the functionality to assign values to the `Data` property with an expression like this statement:
  ```matlab
  obj(2,3) = 9;
  ```

Like the `subsref` method, the `subsasgn` method:

- Calls the `builtin` `subsasgn` function for `'.'` indexing
- Returns an error for `'{}'` indexing
- Defines its own version of `'( )'` indexing.

The `substruct` function redefines the index type and index subscripts structure that MATLAB passes to `subsref` and `subsasgn`.

```matlab
function obj = subsasgn(obj,s,val)
    if isempty(s) && isa(val,'MyDataClass')
        obj = MyDataClass(val.Data,val.Description);
    end
    switch s(1).type
    case '.
        obj = builtin('subsasgn',obj,s,val);
    case '()
        if length(s)<2
            if isa(val,'MyDataClass')
                error('MyDataClass:subsasgn',...                          'Object must be scalar')
            elseif isa(val,'double')
                % Redefine the struct s to make the call: obj.Data(i)
                snew = substruct('.', 'Data', '()', s(1).subs(1));
                obj = subsasgn(obj, snew, val);
            end
        end
    end
end
```
end

case '{}'
    error('MyDataClass:subsasgn',...    
        'Not a supported subscripted assignment')
end
end

Implement Addition for Object Data — double and plus

First, implement a double method that converts an object to an array of doubles. By implementing a double converter method, it is possible to add a MyDataClass object to another class of object. However, the other class must implement a double method that also returns an array of doubles. For more information on type conversion, see “Object Converters” on page 17-11.

Allow direct addition of the Data property values by implementing a plus method. Implementing a plus method enables the use of the + operator for addition of MyDataClass objects.

Because the plus method implements addition by adding double arrays, MATLAB:

• Apply the rules of addition when adding MyDataClass objects
• Returns errors for any condition that can cause errors in default numeric addition. For example, dimension mismatch.

The plus method uses the double method to convert the object to numeric values before performing the addition:

```matlab
function a = double(obj)
    a = obj.Data;
end

function c = plus(obj,b)
    c = double(obj) + double(b);
end
```

For example, the plus method enables you to add a scalar number to the object Data array.

Here are the values of the Data, displayed using indexed reference:

```matlab
obj(:,:,)
ans =
```
Add 7 to the array contained in the Data property:

```
obj + 7
```

```
ans =
```

```
15  16  10  16
16  13  16   9
  9   8  16  16
```

MyDataClass.m

This definition for MyDataClass includes the end indexing method discussed in “end as Object Index” on page 17-28.

```matlab
classdef MyDataClass
    % Example for "A Class with Modified Indexing"
    properties
        Data
        Description
    end
    properties (SetAccess = private)
        Date
    end
    methods
        function obj = MyDataClass(data,desc)
            % Support 0-2 args
            if nargin > 0
                obj.Data = data;
            end
            if nargin > 1
                obj.Description = desc;
            end
            obj.Date = clock;
        end

        function sref = subsref(obj,s)
            % obj(i) is equivalent to obj.Data(i)
            switch s(1).type
                case '.
```

17-37
sref = builtin('subsref', obj, s);

    case '()'
        if length(s)<2
            sref = builtin('subsref', obj.Data, s);
            return
        else
            sref = builtin('subsref', obj, s);
        end
    case '{}'
        error('MyDataClass:subsref', ...
            'Not a supported subscripted reference')
    end

end

function obj = subsasgn(obj, s, val)
    if isempty(s) && isa(val, 'MyDataClass')
        obj = MyDataClass(val.Data, val.Description);
    end
    switch s(1).type
    case '.'
        obj = builtin('subsasgn', obj, s, val);
    case '()'
        %
        if length(s)<2
            if isa(val, 'MyDataClass')
                error('MyDataClass:subsasgn', ...
                    'Object must be scalar')
            elseif isa(val, 'double')
                snew = substruct('.','Data','()',s(1).subs(:));
                obj = subsasgn(obj,snew,val);
            end
        end
    case '{}'
        error('MyDataClass:subsasgn', ...
            'Not a supported subscripted assignment')
    end
end

function a = double(obj)
    a = obj.Data;
end

function c = plus(obj, b)
    c = double(obj) + double(b);
function ind = end(obj,k,n)
    szd = size(obj.Data);
    if k < n
        ind = szd(k);
    else
        ind = prod(szd(k:end));
    end
end

Related Examples

- “end as Object Index” on page 17-28
- “Number of Arguments for subsref and subsasgn” on page 17-5
Class Operator Implementation

In this section...

“How to Define Operators” on page 17-40
“MATLAB Operators and Associated Functions” on page 17-42

How to Define Operators

You can implement MATLAB operators (+, *, >, etc.) to work with objects of your class. To implement operators, define the associated class methods.

Each operator has an associated function (e.g., the + operator has an associated \texttt{plus.m} function). You can implement any operator by creating a class method with the appropriate name. This method can perform whatever steps are appropriate for the operation being implemented.

Object Precedence in Operations

User-defined classes have a higher precedence than built-in classes. For example, suppose \( q \) is an object of class \texttt{double} and \( p \) is a user-defined class. Both of these expressions generate a call to the \texttt{plus} method in the user-define class, if it exists:

\[
q + p \\
p + q
\]

Whether this method can add objects of class \texttt{double} and the user-defined class depends on how you implement the method.

When \( p \) and \( q \) are objects of different classes, MATLAB applies the rules of precedence to determine which method to use.

“Object Precedence in Methods” on page 9-38 provides information on how MATLAB determines which method to call.

Addable Objects

The \texttt{Adder} class implements addition for objects of this class. \texttt{Adder} defines addition of objects as the addition

\[
\texttt{classdef Adder}
\]
properties
    NumericData
end

methods
    function obj = Adder(val)
        obj.NumericData = val;
    end
    function r = plus(obj1,obj2)
        a = double(obj1);
        b = double(obj2);
        r = Adder(a + b);
    end
    function d = double(obj)
        d = obj.NumericData;
    end
end
end

Using a double converter enables you to add Adder to numeric values and other objects of the class.

ao = Adder(1:10)

ao =

    Adder with properties:
        NumericData: [1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10]

ao + ao

ans =

    AddOer with properties:
        NumericData: [2 4 6 8 10 12 14 16 18 20]

Add an object with any numeric value:

uint8(255) + ao

ans =

    Adder with properties:
Ensure that your class provides any error checking required to implement your class design.

**MATLAB Operators and Associated Functions**

The following table lists the function names for MATLAB operators. Implementing operators to work with arrays (scalar expansion, vectorized arithmetic operations, and so on), can also require modifying indexing and concatenation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Method to Define</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a + b</td>
<td>plus(a,b)</td>
<td>Binary addition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a - b</td>
<td>minus(a,b)</td>
<td>Binary subtraction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-a</td>
<td>uminus(a)</td>
<td>Unary minus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+a</td>
<td>uplus(a)</td>
<td>Unary plus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a.*b</td>
<td>times(a,b)</td>
<td>Element-wise multiplication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a*b</td>
<td>mtimes(a,b)</td>
<td>Matrix multiplication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a./b</td>
<td>rdivide(a,b)</td>
<td>Right element-wise division</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a.</td>
<td>ldivide(a,b)</td>
<td>Left element-wise division</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a/b</td>
<td>mrdivide(a,b)</td>
<td>Matrix right division</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>mldivide(a,b)</td>
<td>Matrix left division</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a.^b</td>
<td>power(a,b)</td>
<td>Element-wise power</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a^b</td>
<td>mpower(a,b)</td>
<td>Matrix power</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a &lt; b</td>
<td>lt(a,b)</td>
<td>Less than</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a &gt; b</td>
<td>gt(a,b)</td>
<td>Greater than</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a &lt;= b</td>
<td>le(a,b)</td>
<td>Less than or equal to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a &gt;= b</td>
<td>ge(a,b)</td>
<td>Greater than or equal to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a ~= b</td>
<td>ne(a,b)</td>
<td>Not equal to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a == b</td>
<td>eq(a,b)</td>
<td>Equality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a &amp; b</td>
<td>and(a,b)</td>
<td>Logical AND</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>or(a,b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~a</td>
<td>not(a)</td>
<td>Logical NOT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Operation | Method to Define | Description
--- | --- | ---
a:d:b | `colon(a,d,b)` | Colon operator
a:b | `colon(a,b)` |
a' | `ctranspose(a)` | Complex conjugate transpose
a.' | `transpose(a)` | Matrix transpose
command window output | `display(a)` | Display method
[a b] | `horzcat(a,b,...)` | Horizontal concatenation
[a; b] | `vertcat(a,b,...)` | Vertical concatenation
a(s1,s2,...sn) | `subsref(a,s)` | Subscripted reference
a(s1,...,sn) = b | `subsasgn(a,s,b)` | Subscripted assignment
b(a) | `subsindex(a)` | Subscript index

### Related Examples
- “Define Arithmetic Operators” on page 19-21
Customizing Object Display

- “Custom Display Interface” on page 18-2
- “How CustomDisplay Works” on page 18-7
- “Role of size Function in Custom Displays” on page 18-9
- “Customize Display for Heterogeneous Arrays” on page 18-10
- “Class with Default Object Display” on page 18-12
- “Choose a Technique for Display Customization” on page 18-16
- “Customize Property Display” on page 18-20
- “Customize Header, Property List, and Footer” on page 18-23
- “Customize Display of Scalar Objects” on page 18-29
- “Customize Display of Object Arrays” on page 18-33
- “Overload the disp Function” on page 18-38
Custom Display Interface

In this section...

“Default Object Display” on page 18-2
“CustomDisplay Class” on page 18-3
“Methods for Customizing Object Display” on page 18-3

Default Object Display

MATLAB adds default methods named `disp` and `display` to all MATLAB classes that do not implement their own methods with those names. These methods are not visible, but create the default simple display.

The default simple display consists of the following parts:

- A header showing the class name, and the dimensions for nonscalar arrays.
- A list of all nonhidden public properties, shown in the order of definition in the class.

The actual display depends on whether the object is scalar or nonscalar. Also, there are special displays for a scalar handle to a deleted object and empty object arrays. Objects in all of these states are displayed differently if the objects have no properties.

The `details` method creates the default detailed display. The detailed display adds these items to the simple display:

- Use of fully qualified class names
- Link to `handle` class, if the object is a handle
- Links to `methods`, `events`, and `superclasses` functions executed on the object.

See “Class with Default Object Display” on page 18-12 for an example of how MATLAB displays objects.

Properties Displayed by Default

MATLAB displays object properties that have public get access and are not hidden (see “Property Attributes” on page 8-7). Inherited abstract properties are excluded from
display. When the object being displayed is scalar, any dynamic properties attached to the object are also included.

**CustomDisplay Class**

The matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay class provides an interface that you can use to customize object display for your class. To use this interface, derive your class from `CustomDisplay`:

```matlab
classdef MyClass < matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay

The CustomDisplay class is HandleCompatible, so you can use it in combination with both value and handle superclasses.

**Note:** You cannot use matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay to derive a custom display for enumeration classes.

**disp, display, and details**

The CustomDisplay class defines three sealed public methods. These methods overload three MATLAB functions: `disp`, `display`, and `details`. The `disp` and `display` methods behave like the equivalent MATLAB functions, but use the customizations defined by classes derived from CustomDisplay.

The `details` method always uses the default detailed object display and does not apply customizations defined for the class.

The CustomDisplay interface does not allow you to override `disp` and `display`. Instead, override any combination of the customization methods defined for this purpose.

**Methods for Customizing Object Display**

There are two groups of methods that you use to customize object display for your class:

- **Part builder methods** build the strings used for the standard display. Override any of these methods to change the respective parts of the display.
  - *State handler methods* are called for objects in specific states, like scalar, nonscalar, and so on. Override any of these methods to handle objects in a specific state.
All of these methods have protected access and must be defined as protected in your subclass of `CustomDisplay` (that is, `Access = protected`).

**Parts of an Object Display**

There are three parts that makeup the standard object display — header, property list, and footer.

For example, here is the standard object display for a `containers.Map` object:

```
>> map1 = containers.Map({'Apr','Jul','Nov'},[4,7,11])
map1 =
    Map with properties:
       Header
          Count: 3
          KeyType: char
          ValueType: double
    Property List
    Footer
```

The default object display does not include a footer. The detailed display provides more information:

```
>> details(map1)
  3x1 containers.Map handle array with properties:
       Count: 3
       KeyType: 'char'
       ValueType: 'double'

       Methods, Events, Superclasses
```

**Part Builder Methods**

Each part of the object display has an associated method that assembles the respective part of the display.
### Custom Display Interface

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>getHeader</td>
<td>Create the string used for the header.</td>
<td>Returns the string, <code>[class(obj), ' with properties:']</code> linking the class name to a help popup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getPropertyGroups</td>
<td>Define how and what properties display, including order, values, and grouping.</td>
<td>Returns an array of <code>PropertyGroup</code> objects, which determines how to display the properties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getFooter</td>
<td>Create the string used for the footer.</td>
<td>There are two footers:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Simple display — Returns an empty string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Detailed display — Returns linked calls to <code>methods</code>, <code>events</code>, and <code>superclasses</code> for this class</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Object States That Affect Display

There are four object states that affect how MATLAB displays objects:

- Valid scalar object
- Nonscalar object array
- Empty object array
- Scalar handle to a deleted object

#### State Handler Methods

Each object state has an associated method that MATLAB calls whenever displaying objects that are in that particular state.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>State Handler Method</th>
<th>Called for Object in This State</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>displayScalarObject</td>
<td><code>(isa(obj,'handle') &amp;&amp; isvalid(obj)) &amp;&amp; prod(size(obj)) == 1</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>displayNonScalarObject</td>
<td><code>prod(size(obj)) &gt; 1</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>displayEmptyObject</td>
<td><code>prod(size(obj)) == 0</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>displayScalarHandleToDeletedObject</td>
<td><code>isa(obj,'handle') &amp;&amp; isscalar(obj) &amp;&amp; ~isvalid(obj)</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Utility Methods**

The `CustomDisplay` class provides utility methods that return strings that are used in various parts of the different display options. These static methods return text that simplifies the creation of customized object displays.

If the computer display does not support hypertext linking, the strings are returned without the links.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Inputs</th>
<th>Outputs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>convertDimensionsToString</code></td>
<td>Valid object array</td>
<td>Object dimensions converted to a string; determined by calling <code>size(obj)</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>displayPropertyGroups</code></td>
<td><code>PropertyGroup</code> array</td>
<td>Displays the titles and property groups defined</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>getClassNameForHeader</code></td>
<td>Object</td>
<td>Simple class name linked to the object’s documentation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>getDeletedHandleText</code></td>
<td>None</td>
<td>String 'handle to deleted' linked to the documentation on deleted handles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>getDetailedFooter</code></td>
<td>Object</td>
<td>String containing phrase 'Methods, Events, Superclasses', with each link executing the respective command on the input object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>getDetailedHeader</code></td>
<td>Object</td>
<td>String containing linked class name, link to handle page (if handle class) and 'with properties:'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>getHandleText</code></td>
<td>None</td>
<td>String 'handle' linked to a section of the documentation that describes handle objects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>getSimpleHeader</code></td>
<td>Object</td>
<td>String containing linked class name and the phrase 'with properties:'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
How CustomDisplay Works

In this section...

“Steps to Display an Object” on page 18-7
“Methods Called for a Given Object State” on page 18-8

Steps to Display an Object

When displaying an object, MATLAB determines the state of the object and calls the appropriate method for that state (see “Object States That Affect Display” on page 18-5).

For example, suppose obj is a valid scalar object of a class derived from CustomDisplay. If you type obj at the command line without terminating the statement with a semicolon:

>> obj

The following sequence results in the display of obj:

1 MATLAB determines the class of obj and calls the disp method to display the object.
2 disp calls size to determine if obj is scalar or nonscalar.
3 When obj is a scalar handle object, disp calls isvalid to determine if obj is the handle of a deleted object. Deleted handles in nonscalar arrays do not affect the display.
4 disp calls the state handler method for an object of the state of obj. In this case, obj is a valid scalar that results in a call to:

   displayScalarObject(obj)

5 displayScalarObject calls the display part-builder methods to provide the respective header, property list, and footer.

   ... 
   header = getHeader(obj);
   disp(header)
   ... 
   groups = getPropertyGroups(obj)
   displayPropertyGroups(obj,groups)
   ... 
   footer = getFooter
MATLAB follows a similar sequence for nonscalar object arrays and empty object arrays.

In the case of scalar handles to deleted objects, `disp` calls the `displayScalarHandleToDeletedObject` method, which displays the default string for handles to deleted objects without calling any part-builder methods.

**Methods Called for a Given Object State**

The following diagram illustrates the methods called to display an object that derives from `CustomDisplay`. The `disp` method calls the state handler method that is appropriate for the state of the object or object array being displayed.

Only an instance of a handle class can be in a state of scalar handle to a deleted object.
Role of size Function in Custom Displays

In this section...

“How size Is Used” on page 18-9
“Precautions When Overloading size” on page 18-9

How size Is Used

In the process of building the custom display, CustomDisplay methods call the size function at several points:

• `disp` calls `size` to determine which state handler method to invoke.
• The default `getHeader` method calls `size` to determine whether to display a scalar or nonscalar header.
• The default `displayPropertyGroups` method calls `size` to determine if it should look up property values when the property group is a cell array of property names. By default, only scalar objects display the values of properties.

Precautions When Overloading size

If your class overloads the `size` function, then MATLAB calls the overloading version. You must ensure that the implementation of `size` is consistent with the way you want to display objects of the class.

An unusual or improper implementation of `size` can result in undesirable display behavior. For example, suppose a class overloads `size` reports an object as scalar when it is not. In this class, a property list consisting of a cell array of strings results in the property values of the first object of the array being displayed. This behavior can give the impression that all objects in the array have the same property values.

However, reporting an object as scalar when in fact the object is empty results in the object displaying as an empty object array. The default methods of the CustomDisplay interface always determine if the input is an empty array before attempting to access property values.

As you override CustomDisplay methods to implement your custom object display, consider how an overloading size method can affect the result.
Customize Display for Heterogeneous Arrays

You can call only sealed methods on nonscalar heterogeneous arrays. If you want to customize classes that are part of a heterogeneous hierarchy, you must override and declare as Sealed all the methods that are part of the CustomDisplay interface.

The versions of disp and display that are inherited from matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay are sealed. However, these methods call all of the part builder (“Part Builder Methods” on page 18-4) and state handler methods (“State Handler Methods” on page 18-5).

To use the CustomDisplay interface, the root class of the heterogeneous hierarchy can declare these methods as Sealed and Access = protected.

If you do not need to override a particular method, then call the superclass method, as shown in the following code.

For example, the following code shows modifications to the getPropertyGroups and displayScalarObject methods, while using the superclass implementation of all others.

```matlab
classdef RootClass < matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay & matlab.mixin.Heterogeneous
%...
    methods (Sealed, Access = protected)
        function header = getHeader(obj)
            header = getHeader@matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay(obj);
        end

        function groups = getPropertyGroups(obj)
            % Override of this method
            % ...
        end

        function footer = getFooter(obj)
            footer = getFooter@matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay(obj);
        end

        function displayNonScalarObject(obj)
            displayNonScalarObject@matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay(obj);
        end

        function displayScalarObject(obj)
            % Override of this method
            % ...
        end

        function displayEmptyObject(obj)
            displayEmptyObject@matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay(obj);
        end
```
function displayScalarHandleToDeletedObject(obj)
    displayScalarHandleToDeletedObject@matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay(obj);
end
end
end

You do not need to declare the inherited static methods as **Sealed**.
Class with Default Object Display

The EmployeeInfo Class

The EmployeeInfo class defines a number of properties to store information about company employees. This simple class serves as the example class used in display customization sample classes.

EmployeeInfo derives from the matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay class to enable customization of the object display.

EmployeeInfo is also a handle class. Therefore instances of this class can be in the state referred to as a handle to a deleted object. This state does not occur with value classes (classes not derived from handle).

```matlab
classdef EmployeeInfo < handle & matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay
    properties
        Name
        JobTitle
        Department
        Salary
        Password
    end
    methods
        function obj = EmployeeInfo
            obj.Name       = input('Name: ');
            obj.JobTitle   = input('Job Title: ');
            obj.Department = input('Department: ');
            obj.Salary     = input('Salary: ');
            obj.Password   = input('Password: ');
        end
end
```
The `matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay` is handle compatible. Therefore, superclasses can be either handle or value classes.

**Default Display — Scalar**

Here is the creation and display of a scalar `EmployeeInfo` object. By default, MATLAB displays properties and their values for scalar objects.

Provide inputs for the constructor:

```matlab
>> Emp123 = EmployeeInfo;
Name: 'Bill Tork'
Job Title: 'Software Engineer'
Department: 'Product Development'
Salary: 1000
Password: 'bill123'
```

Display the object:

```matlab
>> Emp123
Emp123 =
    EmployeeInfo with properties:
        Name: 'Bill Tork'
        JobTitle: 'Software Engineer'
        Department: 'Product Development'
        Salary: 1000
        Password: 'bill123'
```

**Testing for Scalar Objects**

To test for scalar objects, use `isscalar`.

**Default Display — Nonscalar**

The default display for an array of objects does not show property values. For example, concatenating two `EmployeeInfo` objects generates this display:
Customizing Object Display

>>[Emp123,Emp124]
ans

1x2 EmployeeInfo array with properties:

   Name
   JobTitle
   Department
   Salary
   Password

Testing for Nonscalar Objects

To test for nonscalar objects, use a negated call to isscalar.

Default Display — Empty Object Array

An empty object array has at least one dimension equal to zero.

>> Empt = EmployeeInfo.empty(0,5)

Empt =

0x5 EmployeeInfo array with properties:

   Name
   JobTitle
   Department
   Salary
   Password

Testing for Empty Object Arrays

Use isempty to test for empty object arrays. An empty object array is not scalar because its dimensions can never be 1-by-1.

>> emt = EmployeeInfo.empty

emt =

0x0 EmployeeInfo array with properties:

   Name
   JobTitle
Default Display — Handle to Deleted Object

When a handle object is deleted, the handle variable can remain in the workspace.

```matlab
>> delete(Emp123)
>> Emp123
Emp123 =
    handle to deleted EmployeeInfo
```

Testing for Handles to Deleted Objects

To test for a handle to a deleted object, use `isvalid`.

---

Note: `isvalid` is a handle class method. Calling `isvalid` on a value class object causes an error.

Default Display — Detailed Display

The details method does not support customization and always returns the standard detailed display:

```matlab
details(Emp123)
EmployeeInfo handle with properties:

    Name: 'Bill Tork'
    JobTitle: 'Software Engineer'
    Department: 'Product Development'
    Salary: 1000
    Password: 'bill123'
```

Methods, Events, Superclasses
Choose a Technique for Display Customization

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>In this section...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>“Ways to Implement a Custom Display” on page 18-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Sample Approaches Using the Interface” on page 18-17</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ways to Implement a Custom Display

The way you customize object display using the `matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay` class depends on:

- What parts of the display you want to customize
- What object states you want to use the custom display

If you are making small changes to the default layout, then override the relevant part builder methods (“Part Builder Methods” on page 18-4). For example, suppose you want to:

- Change the order or value of properties, display a subset of properties, or create property groups
- Modify the header string
- Add a footer

If you are defining a nonstandard display for a particular object state (scalar, for example), then the best approach is to override the appropriate state handler method (“State Handler Methods” on page 18-5).

In some cases, a combination of method overrides might be the best approach. For example, your implementation of `displayScalarObject` might

- Use some of the utility methods (“Utility Methods” on page 18-6) to build your own display strings using parts from the default display
- Call a part builder method to get the default string for that particular part of the display
- Implement a completely different display for scalar objects.

Once you override any `CustomDisplay` method, MATLAB calls your override in all cases where the superclass method would have been called. For example, if you override the
getHeader method, your override must handle all cases where a state handler method calls getHeader. (See “Methods Called for a Given Object State” on page 18-8)

Sample Approaches Using the Interface

Here are some simple cases that show what methods to use for the particular customized display.

Change the Display of Scalar Objects

Use a nonstandard layout for scalar object display that is fully defined in the displayScalarObject method:

```matlab
classdef MyClass < matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay
    ...
    methods (Access = protected)
        function displayScalarObject(obj)
            % Implement the custom display for scalar obj
        end
    end
end
```

Custom Property List with Standard Layout

Use standard display layout, but create a custom property list for scalar and nonscalar display:

```matlab
classdef MyClass < matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay
    ...
    methods (Access = protected)
        function groups = getPropertyGroups(obj)
            % Return PropertyGroup instances
        end
    end
end
```

Custom Property List for Scalar Only

Use standard display layout, but create a custom property list for scalar only. Call the superclass getPropertyGroups for the nonscalar case.

```matlab
classdef MyClass < matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay
    properties
```
Prop1
Prop2
Prop3
end
methods (Access = protected)
function groups = getPropertyGroups(obj)
if isscalar(obj)
    % Scalar case: change order
    propList = {'Prop2','Prop1','Prop3'};
    groups = matlab.mixin.util.PropertyGroup(propList)
else
    % Nonscalar case: call superclass method
    groups = getPropertyGroups@matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay(obj);
end
end
end

Custom Property List with Modified Values

Change the values displayed for some properties in the scalar case by creating property/value pairs in a struct. This `getPropertyGroups` method displays only Prop1 and Prop2, and displays the value of Prop2 as Prop1 divided by Prop3.

classdef MyClass < matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay
    properties
        Prop1
        Prop2
        Prop3
    end
    methods (Access = protected)
        function groups = getPropertyGroups(obj)
            if isscalar(obj)
                % Specify the values to be displayed for properties
                propList = struct('Prop1',obj.Prop1,...
                        'Prop2',obj.Prop1/obj.Prop3);
                groups = matlab.mixin.util.PropertyGroup(propList)
            else
                % Nonscalar case: call superclass method
                groups = getPropertyGroups@matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay(obj);
            end
        end
    end
end

Complete Class Definitions

For complete class implementations, see these sections:

• “Customize Property Display” on page 18-20

    “Customize Header, Property List, and Footer” on page 18-23
“Customize Display of Scalar Objects” on page 18-29

“Customize Display of Object Arrays” on page 18-33
Customize Property Display

This example shows how to change the order and number of properties displayed for an object of your class.

In this section...

“Change the Property Order” on page 18-20
“Change the Values Displayed for Properties” on page 18-21

Change the Property Order

Suppose your class definition contains the following property definition:

```matlab
classdef MyClass
    properties
        Name
        JobTitle
        Department
        Salary
        Password
    end
end
```

In the default scalar object display, MATLAB displays all the public properties along with their values. However, you want to display only Department, JobTitle, and Name, in that order. You can do this by deriving from CustomDisplay and overriding the getPropertyGroups method.

Your override

- Defines method Access as protected to match the definition in the CustomDisplay superclass
- Creates a cell array of property names in the desired order
- Returns a PropertyGroup object constructed from the property list cell array

```matlab
methods (Access = protected)
    function propgrp = getPropertyGroups(~)
        proplist = {'Department','JobTitle','Name'};
        propgrp = matlab.mixin.util.PropertyGroup(proplist);
    end
end
```

When you create a PropertyGroup object using a cell array of property names, MATLAB automatically
• Adds the property values for a scalar object display
• Uses the property names without values for a nonscalar object display (including empty object arrays)

The `getPropertyGroups` method is not called to create the display for a scalar handle to a deleted object.

**Change the Values Displayed for Properties**

Given the same class properties used in the previous section, you can change the value displayed for properties by building the property list as a `struct` and specifying values for property names. This override of the `getPropertyGroups` method uses the default property display for nonscalar objects by calling the superclass `getPropertyGroups` method. For scalar objects, the override:

• Changes the value displayed for the **Password** property to a '*' character for each character in the password string.
• Displays the string 'Not Available' for the **Salary** property.

```matlab
def function propgrp = getPropertyGroups(obj)
    if ~isscalar(obj)
        propgrp = getPropertyGroups@matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay(obj);
    else
        pd(1:length(obj.Password)) = '*';
        propList = struct('Department',obj.Department,...
                           'JobTitle',obj.JobTitle,...
                           'Name',obj.Name,...
                           'Salary','Not available',...
                           'Password',pd);
        propgrp = matlab.mixin.util.PropertyGroup(propList);
    end
end
```

The object display looks like this:

**EmployeeInfo with properties:**

- **Department**: 'Product Development'
- **JobTitle**: 'Software Engineer'
- **Name**: 'Bill Tork'
- **Salary**: 'Not available'
- **Password**: '*******'
Full Class Listing

classdef EmployeeInfo < handle & matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay

    properties
        Name
        JobTitle
        Department
        Salary
        Password
    end

    methods
        function obj = EmployeeInfo
            obj.Name       = input('Name: ');
            obj.JobTitle   = input('Job Title: ');
            obj.Department = input('Department: ');
            obj.Salary     = input('Salary: ');
            obj.Password   = input('Password: ');
        end
    end

    methods (Access = protected)
        function propgrp = getPropertyGroups(obj)
            if ~isscalar(obj)
                propgrp = getPropertyGroups@matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay(obj);
            else
                pd(1:length(obj.Password)) = '*';
                propList = struct('Department',obj.Department,...
                                  'JobTitle',obj.JobTitle,...
                                  'Name',obj.Name,...
                                  'Salary','Not available',...
                                  'Password',pd);
                propgrp = matlab.mixin.util.PropertyGroup(propList);
            end
        end
    end
end
Customize Header, Property List, and Footer

This example shows how to customize each of the three parts of the display.

In this section...

“Design of Custom Display” on page 18-23
“getHeader Method Override” on page 18-25
“getPropertyGroups Override” on page 18-26
“getFooter Override” on page 18-26

Design of Custom Display

Note: This example uses the EmployeeInfo class described in the “Class with Default Object Display” on page 18-12 section.

For the header:

• Use default header for nonscalar object arrays.
• Build header string with linked class name and department name (from Department property)

For properties:

• Nonscalar object arrays display a subset of property names in a different order than the default.
• Scalar objects create two property groups that have titles (Public Info and Personal Info).

For the footer:

• Add a footer to the display, only when the object is a valid scalar that displays property values.

Here is the customized display of an object of the EmployeeInfo class.

Emp123 =
EmployeeInfo Dept: Product Development

  Public Info
  Name: 'Bill Tork'
  JobTitle: 'Software Engineer'

  Personal Info
  Salary: 1000
  Password: 'bill123'

Company Private

Here is the custom display of an array of EmployeeInfo objects:

[Emp123,Emp124]

ans =

1x2 EmployeeInfo array with properties:

    Department
    Name
    JobTitle

Here is the display of an empty object array:

>> EmployeeInfo.empty(0,5)

ans =

0x5 EmployeeInfo array with properties:

    Department
    Name
    JobTitle

Here is the display of a handle to a delete object (EmployeeInfo is a handle class):

>> delete(Emp123)
>> Emp123

Emp123 =
handle to deleted EmployeeInfo

Implementation

The EmployeeInfo class overrides three matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay methods to implement the display shown:

• getHeader
• getPropertyGroups
• getFooter

Each method must produce the desired results with each of the following inputs:

• Scalar object
• Nonscalar object array
• Empty object array

getHeader Method Override

MATLAB calls getHeader to get the header string. The EmployeeInfo class overrides this method to implement the custom header for scalar display. Here is how it works:

• Nonscalar (including empty object) arrays call the superclass getHeader, which returns the default header.
• Scalar handles to deleted objects do not result in a call to getHeader.
• Scalar inputs build a custom header using the getClassNameForHeader static method to return a linked class name string, and the value of the Department property.

Here is the EmployeeInfo override of the getHeader method. The required protected access is inherited from the superclass.

```matlab
methods (Access = protected)
    function header = getHeader(obj)
        if ~isscalar(obj)
            header = getHeader@matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay(obj);
        else
            className = matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay.getClassNameForHeader(obj);
            newHeader = [className,' Dept: ',obj.Department];
            header = sprintf('%s
',newHeader);
        end
    end
end
```
Customizing Object Display

getPropertyGroups Override

MATLAB calls `getPropertyGroups` to get the `PropertyGroup` objects, which control how properties are displayed. This method override defines two different property lists depending on the object’s state:

- For nonscalar inputs, including empty arrays and arrays containing handles to deleted objects, create a property list as a cell array to reorder properties.

  By default, MATLAB does not display property values for nonscalar inputs.

- For scalar inputs, create two property groups with titles. The scalar code branch lists properties in a different order than the nonscalar case and includes `Salary` and `Password` properties. MATLAB automatically assigns property values.

- Scalar handles to deleted objects do not result in a call to `getPropertyGroups`.

Both branches return a `matlab.mixin.util.PropertyGroup` object, which determines how to display the object properties.

Here is the `EmployeeInfo` override of the `getPropertyGroups` method. The protected access is inherited from the superclass.

```matlab
methods (Access = protected)
    function propgrp = getPropertyGroups(obj)
        if ~isscalar(obj)
            propList = {'Department','Name','JobTitle'};
            propgrp = matlab.mixin.util.PropertyGroup(propList);
        else
            gTitle1 = 'Public Info';
            gTitle2 = 'Personal Info';
            propList1 = {'Name','JobTitle'};
            propList2 = {'Salary','Password'};
            propgrp(1) = matlab.mixin.util.PropertyGroup(propList1,gTitle1);
            propgrp(2) = matlab.mixin.util.PropertyGroup(propList2,gTitle2);
        end
    end
end
```

gFooter Override

MATLAB calls `gFooter` to get the footer string. The `EmployeeInfo` `gFooter` method defines a footer for the display, which is included only when the input is a valid scalar object. In all other cases, `gFooter` returns an empty string.

Scalar handles to deleted objects do not result in a call to `gFooter`.

```matlab
```
functions (Access = protected)
    function footer = getFooter(obj)
        if isscalar(obj)
            footer = sprintf('%s\n','Company Private');
        else
            footer = ''; 
        end
    end
end

Complete Class Listing

classdef EmployeeInfo < handle & matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay
    properties
        Name
        JobTitle
        Department
        Salary
        Password
    end
end
methods
    function obj = EmployeeInfo
        obj.Name       = input('Name: '); 
        obj.JobTitle   = input('Job Title: '); 
        obj.Department = input('Department: '); 
        obj.Salary     = input('Salary: '); 
        obj.Password   = input('Password: '); 
    end
end

methods (Access = protected) 
    function header = getHeader(obj)
        if ~isscalar(obj)
            header = getHeader(matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay(obj));
        else
            className = matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay.getClassNameForHeader(obj);
            newHeader = [className,' Dept: ',obj.Department];
            header = sprintf('%s\n',newHeader);
        end
    end
end

function propgrp = getPropertyGroups(obj)
    if ~isscalar(obj)
        propList = {'Department','Name','JobTitle'};
        propgrp = matlab.mixin.util.PropertyGroup(propList);
    else
        gTitle1 = 'Public Info';
        gTitle2 = 'Personal Info';
        propList1 = {'Name','JobTitle'};
        propList2 = {'Salary','Password'};
        propgrp1 = matlab.mixin.util.PropertyGroup(propList1,gTitle1);
        propgrp2 = matlab.mixin.util.PropertyGroup(propList2,gTitle2);
    end
end
function footer = getFooter(obj)
    if isscalar(obj)
        footer = sprintf('%s
','Company Private');
    else
        footer = '';
    end
end
end
Customize Display of Scalar Objects

This example shows how to customize the display of scalar objects.

In this section...

“Design Of Custom Display” on page 18-29
“displayScalarObject Method Override” on page 18-30
“getPropertyGroups Override” on page 18-31

Design Of Custom Display

Note: This example uses the EmployeeInfo class described in the “Class with Default Object Display” on page 18-12 section.

The objective of this customized display is to:

• Modify the header to include the department name obtained from the Department property
• Group properties into two categories titled Public Info and Personal Info.
• Modify which properties are displayed
• Modify the values displayed for Personal Info category
• Use the default displayed for nonscalar objects, including empty arrays, and scalar deleted handles

For example, here is the customized display of an object of the EmployeeInfo class.

Emp123 =

EmployeeInfo Dept: Product Development

    Public Info
        Name: 'Bill Tork'
        JobTitle: 'Software Engineer'

    Personal Info
        Salary: 'Level: 10'
Implementation

The EmployeeInfo class overrides two matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay methods to implement the display shown:

• displayScalarObject — Called to display valid scalar objects
• getPropertyGroups — Builds the property groups for display

displayScalarObject Method Override

MATLAB calls displayScalarObject to display scalar objects. The EmployeeInfo class overrides this method to implement the scalar display. Once overridden, this method must control all aspects of scalar object display, including creating the header, property groups, and footer, if used.

This implementation:

• Builds a custom header using the getClassNameForHeader static method to return a linked class name string and the value of the Department property to get the department name.
• Uses sprintf to add a new line to the header string
• Displays the header with the built-in disp function.
• Calls the getPropertyGroups override to define the property groups (see following section).
• Displays the property groups using the displayPropertyGroups static method.

Here is the EmployeeInfo override of the displayScalarObject method. The required protected access is inherited from the superclass.

```matlab
methods (Access = protected)
function displayScalarObject(obj)
    className = matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay.getClassNameForHeader(obj);
    scalarHeader = [className,' Dept: ',obj.Department];
    header = sprintf('%s
',scalarHeader);
    disp(header)
    propgroup = getPropertyGroups(obj);
    matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay.displayPropertyGroups(obj,propgroup)
```
getPropertyGroups Override

MATLAB calls `getPropertyGroups` when displaying scalar or nonscalar objects. However, MATLAB does not call this method when displaying a scalar handle to a deleted object.

The `EmployeeInfo` class overrides this method to implement the property groups for scalar object display.

This implementation calls the superclass `getPropertyGroups` method if the input is not scalar. If the input is scalar, this method:

- Defines two titles for the two groups
- Creates a cell array of property names that are included in the first group. MATLAB adds the property values for the display
- Creates a `struct` array of property names with associated property values for the second group. Using a `struct` instead of a cell array enables you to replace the values that are displayed for the `Salary` and `Password` properties without changing the personal information stored in the object properties.
- Constructs two `matlab.mixin.util.PropertyGroup` objects, which are used by the `displayScalarObject` method.

Here is the `EmployeeInfo` override of the `getPropertyGroups` method. The required protected access is inherited from the superclass.

```matlab
methods (Access = protected)
    function propgrp = getPropertyGroups(obj)
        if ~isscalar(obj)
            propgrp = getPropertyGroups@matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay(obj);
        else
            gTitle1 = 'Public Info';
            gTitle2 = 'Personal Info';
            propList1 = {'Name','JobTitle'};
            pd(1:length(obj.Password)) = '*';
            level = round(obj.Salary/100);
            propList2 = struct('Salary',...
                ['Level: ',num2str(level)],...
                'Password',pd);
            propgrp(1) = matlab.mixin.util.PropertyGroup(propList1,gTitle1);
            propgrp(2) = matlab.mixin.util.PropertyGroup(propList2,gTitle2);
        end
    end
end
```
Complete Class Listing

classdef EmployeeInfo4 < handle & matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay
  properties
    Name
    JobTitle
    Department
    Salary
    Password
  end
  methods
    function obj = EmployeeInfo4
      obj.Name       = input('Name: '); 
      obj.JobTitle   = input('Job Title: '); 
      obj.Department = input('Department: '); 
      obj.Salary     = input('Salary: '); 
      obj.Password   = input('Password: '); 
    end
  end
  methods (Access = protected)
    function displayScalarObject(obj)
      className = matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay.getClassNameForHeader(obj);
      scalarHeader = [className,' Dept: ',obj.Department];
      header = sprintf('%s
',scalarHeader);
      disp(header)
      propgroup = getPropertyGroups(obj);
      matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay.displayPropertyGroups(obj,propgroup)
    end
    function propgrp = getPropertyGroups(obj)
      if ~isscalar(obj)
        propgrp = getPropertyGroups@matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay(obj);
      else
        % property groups for scalars
        gTitle1 = 'Public Info';
        gTitle2 = 'Personal Info';
        propList1 = {'Name','JobTitle'};
        pd(1:length(obj.Password)) = '*';
        level = round(obj.Salary/100);
        propList2 = struct('Salary',...
            'Level: ',num2str(level),...
            'Password',pd);
        propgrp(1) = matlab.mixin.util.PropertyGroup(propList1,gTitle1);
        propgrp(2) = matlab.mixin.util.PropertyGroup(propList2,gTitle2);
      end
    end
  end
end
Customize Display of Object Arrays

This example shows how to customize the display of nonscalar objects, including empty object arrays.

In this section...

“Design of Custom Display” on page 18-33
“The displayNonScalarObject Override” on page 18-34
“The displayEmptyObject Override” on page 18-35

Design of Custom Display

Note: This example uses the EmployeeInfo class described in the “Class with Default Object Display” on page 18-12 section.

The objective of this customized display is to:

• Construct a custom header using some elements of the default header
• Display a subset of property-specific information for each object in the array.
• List handles to deleted objects in the array using a string with links to documentation for handle objects and the class.
• Display empty objects with a slight modification to the default header

Here is the customized display of an array of three EmployeeInfo objects

1x3 EmployeeInfo array with members:
1. Employee:
   Name: 'Bill Tork'
   Department: 'Product Development'

2. Employee:
   Name: 'Alice Blackwell'
   Department: 'QE'

3. Employee:
   Name: 'Nancy Green'
Department: 'Documentation'

Deleted object handles in the array indicate their state:

1x3 EmployeeInfo members:

1. Employee:
   Name: 'Bill Tork'
   Department: 'Product Development'

2. handle to deleted EmployeeInfo

3. Employee:
   Name: 'Nancy Green'
   Department: 'Documentation'

To achieve the desired result, the EmployeeInfo class overrides the following methods of the matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay class:

• displayNonScalarObject — Called to display nonempty object arrays
• displayEmptyObject — Called to display empty object arrays

**The displayNonScalarObject Override**

MATLAB calls the displayNonScalarObject method to display object arrays. The override of this method in the EmployeeInfo class:

• Builds a header string using convertDimensionsToString to obtain the array size and getClassNameForHeader to get the class name with a link to the help for that class.
• Displays the modified header string.
• Loops through the elements in the array, building two different subheaders depending on the individual object state. In the loop, this method:
  • Detects handles to deleted objects (using the isvalid handle class method). Uses getDeletedHandleText and getClassNameForHeader to build a string for array elements that are handles to deleted objects.
  • Builds a custom subheader for valid object elements in the array
  • Creates a PropertyGroup object containing the Name and Department properties for valid objects
  • Uses the displayPropertyGroups static method to generate the property display for valid objects.
Here is the implementation of `displayNonScalarObjects`:

```matlab
methods (Access = protected)
    function displayNonScalarObject(objAry)
        dimStr = matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay.convertDimensionsToString(objAry);
        cName = matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay.getClassNameForHeader(objAry);
        headerStr = [dimStr,' ',cName,' members:'];
        header = sprintf('%s
',headerStr);
        disp(header)
        for ix = 1:length(objAry)
            o = objAry(ix);
            if ~isvalid(o)
                str1 = matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay.getDeletedHandleText;
                str2 = matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay.getClassNameForHeader(o);
                headerInv = [str1,' ',str2];
                tmpStr = [num2str(ix),'. ',headerInv];
                numStr = sprintf('%s
',tmpStr);
                disp(numStr)
            else
                numStr = [num2str(ix),'. Employee:' ];
                disp(numStr)
                propList = struct('Name',o.Name,...
                        'Department',o.Department);
                propgrp = matlab.mixin.util.PropertyGroup(propList);
                matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay.displayPropertyGroups(o,propgrp);
            end
        end
    end
end
end
```

The `displayEmptyObject` Override

MATLAB calls the `displayEmptyObject` method to display empty object arrays. The implementation of this method in the `EmployeeInfo` class builds a custom header for empty objects following these steps:

- Gets the array dimensions in string format using the `convertDimensionsToString` static method.
- Gets a string with the class name linked to the `helpPopup` function using the `getClassNameForHeader` static method.
- Builds and displays the custom string for empty arrays.

```matlab
methods (Access = protected)
    function displayEmptyObject(obj)
        dimstr = matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay.convertDimensionsToString(obj);
        className = matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay.getClassNameForHeader(obj);
        emptyHeader = [dimstr,' ',className,' with no employee information'];
        header = sprintf('%s
',emptyHeader);
        disp(header)
    end
end
```

18-35
Customizing Object Display

For example, an empty EmployeeInfo object displays like this:

\[
\text{Empt} = \text{EmployeeInfo}\.\text{empty}(0,5)
\]

\[
\text{Empt} = \text{0x5 EmployeeInfo with no employee information}
\]

Complete Class Listing

```matlab
classdef EmployeeInfo < handle & matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay
    properties
        Name
        JobTitle
        Department
        Salary
        Password
    end
    methods
        function obj = EmployeeInfo
            obj.Name       = input('Name: ');
            obj.JobTitle   = input('Job Title: ');
            obj.Department = input('Department: ');
            obj.Salary     = input('Salary: ');
            obj.Password   = input('Password: ');
        end
    end
    methods (Access = protected)
        function displayNonScalarObject(objAry)
            dimStr = matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay.convertDimensionsToString(objAry);
            cName = matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay.getClassNameForHeader(objAry);
            headerStr = [dimStr,' ',cName,' members:'
            header = sprintf('%s
',headerStr);
            disp(header)
            for ix = 1:length(objAry)
                o = objAry(ix);
                if ~isvalid(o)
                    str1 = matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay.getDeletedHandleText;
                    str2 = matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay.getClassNameForHeader(o);
                    headerInv = [str1,' ',str2];
                    tmpStr = [num2str(ix),'. ',headerInv];
                    numStr = sprintf('%s
',tmpStr);
                    disp(numStr)
                else
                    numStr = [num2str(ix),'. Employee'
                    disp(numStr)
                    propList = struct('Name',o.Name,
                        'Department',o.Department);
                    propgrp = matlab.mixin.util.PropertyGroup(propList);
                    matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay.displayPropertyGroups(o,propgrp);
                end
            end
        end
    end
end
```
function displayEmptyObject(obj)
dimstr = matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay.convertDimensionsToString(obj);
className = matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay.getClassNameForHeader(obj);
emptyHeader = [dimstr, ',className, ' with no employee information'];
header = sprintf('%s
',emptyHeader);
disp(header)
end
end
end
Overload the disp Function

Display Methods

Subclassing `matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay` is the best approach to customizing object display. However, if you do not derive your class from `matlab.mixin.CustomDisplay`, you can overload the `disp` function to change how MATLAB displays objects of your class.

MATLAB calls an object’s `display` method whenever an object is referred to in a statement that is not terminated by a semicolon. For example, the following statement creates the variable `a`. MATLAB calls `display`, which displays the value of `a` in the command line.

```matlab
a = 5
```

```matlab
a =
5
```

display then calls `disp`.

Implement disp or disp and display

The built-in `display` function prints the name of the variable that is being displayed, if an assignment is made, or otherwise uses `ans` as the variable name. Then `display` calls `disp` to handle the actual display of the values.

If the variable that is being displayed is an object of a class that overloads `disp`, then MATLAB always calls the overloaded method. Overload `disp` or `disp` and `display` to customize the display of objects. Overloading only `display` is not sufficient to properly implement a custom display for your class.

If you overload `disp` and `display` for your class, use the two-argument form of `display`. For example, pass the variable name as the second argument:
a = 7;
display(a,'a')
a = 
7

**Relationship Between disp and display**

MATLAB invokes the built-in `display` function when:

- MATLAB executes a statement that returns a value and is not terminated with a semicolon.
- There is no left-side variable, then MATLAB prints `ans =` followed by the value.
- Code explicitly invokes the `display` function.

If you invoke `display` explicitly:

- If the input argument is an existing variable, `display` prints the variable name and equal sign, followed by the value.
- If the input is the result of an expression, `display` does not print `ans =`.

MATLAB invokes the built-in `disp` function when:

- The built-in `display` function calls `disp`.
- Code explicitly invokes `disp`.

For empty built-in types (numeric types, `char`, `struct`, and `cell`) the `display` function displays:

- `[]` — for numeric types
- "0x0 struct array with no fields." — for empty structs.
- "Empty cell array: 0-by-1" — for empty cell arrays.
- "" — for empty char arrays

`disp` differs from `display` in these ways:

- `disp` does not print the variable name or `ans`.
- `disp` prints nothing for built-in types (numeric types, `char`, `struct`, and `cell`) when the value is empty.
Related Examples

- “Overload disp for DocPolynom” on page 19-17
- “Custom Display Interface” on page 18-2
Implementing a Class for Polynomials
Class Design for Polynomials

Object Requirements

This example implements a class to represent polynomials in the MATLAB language. The design requirements are:

- Value class behavior—a polynomial object should behave like MATLAB numeric variables when copied and passed to functions.
- Specialized display and indexing
- Objects can be scalar only. The specialization of display and indexing functionality preclude normal array behavior.
- Arithmetic operations
- Double converter simplifying the use of polynomial object with existing MATLAB functions that accept numeric inputs.

DocPolynom Class Members

The class definition specifies a property for data storage and defines a folder (@DocPolynom) that contains the class definition.

The following table summarizes the properties defined for the DocPolynom class.
**DocPolynom Class Properties**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Default</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>coef</td>
<td>double</td>
<td>[]</td>
<td>Vector of polynomial coefficients [highest order ... lowest order]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following table summarizes the methods for the DocPolynom class.

**DocPolynom Class Methods**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DocPolynom</td>
<td>Class constructor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>double</td>
<td>Converts a DocPolynom object to a double (i.e., returns its coefficients in a vector)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>char</td>
<td>Creates a formatted display of the DocPolynom object as powers of x and is used by the disp method</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disp</td>
<td>Determines how MATLAB displays a DocPolynom objects on the command line</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subsref</td>
<td>Enables you to specify a value for the independent variable as a subscript, access the coef property with dot notation, and call methods with dot notation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plus</td>
<td>Implements addition of DocPolynom objects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minus</td>
<td>Implements subtraction of DocPolynom objects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mtimes</td>
<td>Implements multiplication of DocPolynom objects</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Using the DocPolynom Class**

The following examples illustrate basic use of the DocPolynom class.

Create DocPolynom objects to represent the following polynomials. Note that the argument to the constructor function contains the polynomial coefficients

\[ f(x) = x^3 - 2x - 5 \]

\[ f(x) = 2x^4 + 3x^2 + 2x - 7 \]

\[ p1 = DocPolynom([1 0 -2 -5]) \]

\[ p1 = x^3 - 2x - 5 \]

\[ p2 = DocPolynom([2 0 3 2 -7]) \]
p2 =
    2*x^4 + 3*x^2 + 2*x - 7

Find the roots of the polynomial by passing the coefficients to the roots function.

roots(p1.coef)
ans =
    2.0946 + 0.0000i
    -1.0473 + 1.1359i
    -1.0473 - 1.1359i

Add the two polynomials p1 and p2.

MATLAB calls the plus method defined for the DocPolynom class when you add two DocPolynom objects.

p1 + p2
ans =
    2*x^4 + x^3 + 3*x^2 - 12

**DocPolynom Class Synopsis**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example Code</th>
<th>Discussion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>classdef DocPolynom</td>
<td>Value class that implements a data type for polynomials.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>properties coef</td>
<td>Vector of polynomial coefficients [highest order ... lowest order]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>methods</td>
<td>For general information about methods, see “Ordinary Methods” on page 9-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>function obj = DocPolynom(c) if nargin &gt; 0 if isa(c,'DocPolynom') obj.coef = c.coef; else obj.coef = c(:).'; end end</td>
<td>Class constructor creates objects using: • Coefficient vector of existing object • Coefficient vector passed as argument</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example Code</td>
<td>Discussion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **function** obj = set.coef(obj,val)  
  if ~isa(val,'double')  
    error('Coefficients must be doubles')  
  end  
  ind = find(val(:).'~=0);  
  if ~isempty(ind);  
    obj.coef = val(ind(1):end);  
  else  
    obj.coef = val;  
  end | Set method for **coef** property:  
  • Allows coefficients only of type double  
  • Removes leading zeros from the coefficient vector.  
  See “Remove Irrelevant Coefficients” on page 19-14 |
| **function** c = double(obj)  
  c = obj.coef;  
  end | Convert **DocPolynom** object to **double** by returning the coefficients.  
  See “Convert **DocPolynom** Objects to Other Types” on page 19-15 |
## Example Code

```matlab
function str = char(obj)
    if all(obj.coef == 0)
        s = '0';
        str = s;
        return
    else
        d = length(obj.coef)-1;
        s = cell(1,d);
        ind = 1;
        for a = obj.coef;
            if a ~= 0;
                if ind ~= 1
                    if a > 0
                        s(ind) = {' + '};
                        ind = ind + 1;
                    else
                        s(ind) = {' - '};
                        a = -a;
                        ind = ind + 1;
                    end
                end
                if a ~= 1 || d == 0
                    if a == -1
                        s(ind) = {'-'};
                        ind = ind + 1;
                    else
                        s(ind) = {num2str(a)};
                        ind = ind + 1;
                    end
                end
                if d >= 2
                    s(ind) = {[int2str(d)}; ind = ind + 1;
                elseif d == 1
                    s(ind) = {'x'};
                    ind = ind + 1;
                end
            end
        end
    end
end
```

## Discussion

Convert `DocPolynom` object to `char` that represents the expression:

\[ y = f(x) \]

See “Convert `DocPolynom` Objects to Other Types” on page 19-15
### Example Code

```matlab
d = d - 1;
end
end
str = [s{:}];
end
```

### Discussion

- **function disp(obj)**
  
  ```matlab
c = char(obj);
if iscell(c)
    disp(['   ' c{:}])
else
    disp(c)
end
end
```

Overload `disp` function. Display objects as output of `char` method.

For information about this code, see “Overload disp for DocPolynom” on page 19-17

- **function dispPoly(obj,x)**
  
  ```matlab
  p = char(obj);
e = @(x)eval(p);
y = zeros(length(x));
disp(['y = ',p])
for k = 1:length(x)
y(k) = e(x(k));
disp(['  ',num2str(y(k)),...
       ' = f(x = ',...
       num2str(x(k)),')]])
end
```

Return evaluated expression with formatted output.

Uses output of `char` method to evaluate polynomial at specified values of independent variable.

For information about this code, see “Display Evaluated Expression” on page 19-18
### Example Code

```matlab
function b = subsref(a,s)
    switch s(1).type
    case '()
        ind = s.subs{;};
        b = polyval(a.coef,ind);
    case '.
        switch s(1).subs
        case 'coef'
            b = a.coef;
        case 'disp'
            disp(a)
        otherwise
            if length(s)>1
                b = a.(s(1).subs)(s(2)).
            else
                b = a.(s.subs);
            end
        end
    otherwise
        error('Specify value for x as obj(x)')
    end
end
```

### Discussion

Redefine indexed reference for DocPolynom objects.

For information about this code, see “Redefine Indexed Reference” on page 19-18
### Example Code

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example Code</th>
<th>Discussion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| `function r = plus(obj1,obj2)`  
  `obj1 = DocPolynom(obj1);`  
  `obj2 = DocPolynom(obj2);`  
  `k = length(obj2.coef) - length(obj1.coef);`  
  `zp = zeros(1,k);`  
  `zm = zeros(1,-k);`  
  `r = DocPolynom([zp,obj1.coef] + [zm,obj2.coef]);`  
  `end` | Define three arithmetic operators:  
  - Polynomial addition  
  - Polynomial subtraction  
  - Polynomial multiplication |
| `function r = minus(obj1,obj2)`  
  `obj1 = DocPolynom(obj1);`  
  `obj2 = DocPolynom(obj2);`  
  `k = length(obj2.coef) - length(obj1.coef);`  
  `zp = zeros(1,k);`  
  `zm = zeros(1,-k);`  
  `r = DocPolynom([zp,obj1.coef] - [zm,obj2.coef]);`  
  `end` | For information about this code, see “Define Arithmetic Operators” on page 19-21 |
| `function r = mtimes(obj1,obj2)`  
  `obj1 = DocPolynom(obj1);`  
  `obj2 = DocPolynom(obj2);`  
  `r = DocPolynom(conv(obj1.coef,obj2.coef));`  
  `end` | For general information about defining operators, see “Class Operator Implementation” on page 17-40 |

### Expand for Class Code

```matlab
classdef DocPolynom
    % Documentation example
    % A value class that implements a data type for polynomials
    % See Implementing a Class for Polynomials in the
    % MATLAB documentation for more information.
    properties
        coef
    end

    % Class methods
    methods
        function obj = DocPolynom(c)
    end
end
```

end statements for methods and for `classdef`. 

Class Design for Polynomials
if nargin > 0
    if isa(c,'DocPolynom')
        obj.coef = c.coef;
    else
        obj.coef = c(:).';
    end
end
end % DocPolynom
function obj = set.coef(obj,val)
    if ~isa(val,'double')
        error('Coefficients must be doubles')
    end
    % Remove leading zeros
    ind = find(val(:).'==0);
    if ~isempty(ind);
        obj.coef = val(ind(1):end);
    else
        obj.coef = val;
    end
end % set.coef

function c = double(obj)
    c = obj.coef;
end % double

function str = char(obj)
    % Created a formatted display of the polynomial
    % as powers of x
    if all(obj.coef == 0)
        s = '0';
        str = s;
        return
    else
        d = length(obj.coef)-1;
        s = cell(1,d);
        ind = 1;
        for a = obj.coef;
            if a == 0;
                if ind ~= 1
                    if a > 0
                        s(ind) = {' + '};
                        ind = ind + 1;
                    else
                        s(ind) = {' - '};
                    end
                end
            end
        end
    end
end % char
a = -a; %#ok<FXSET>
    ind = ind + 1;
end
end
if a ~= 1 || d == 0
    if a == -1
        s(ind) = {'-'};
        ind = ind + 1;
    else
        s(ind) = {num2str(a)};
        ind = ind + 1;
        if d > 0
            s(ind) = {'*'};
            ind = ind + 1;
        end
    end
end
end
if d >= 2
    s(ind) = {'x^', int2str(d)};
    ind = ind + 1;
elseif d == 1
    s(ind) = {'x'};
    ind = ind + 1;
end
end
d = d - 1;
end
end
str = [s{:}];
end % char

function disp(obj)
    % DISP Display object in MATLAB syntax
    c = char(obj);
    if iscell(c)
        disp(['  ' c{:}])
    else
        disp(c)
    end
end % disp

function dispPoly(obj,x)
    % evaluate obj at x
    p = char(obj);
e = @(x)eval(p);
y = zeros(length(x));
disp(['y = ',p])
for k = 1:length(x)
y(k) = e(x(k));
disp(['  ',num2str(y(k)),...
     ' = f(x = ',...
     num2str(x(k)),',')])
end
end

function b = subsref(a,s)
% SUBSREF Implementing the following syntax:
% obj([1 ...])
% obj.coef
% obj.disp
% out = obj.method(args)
% out = obj.method
switch s(1).type
 case '()'
   ind = s.subs{:};
   b = polyval(a.coef,ind);
 case '.'
   switch s(1).subs
   case 'coef'
     b = a.coef;
   case 'disp'
     disp(a)
   otherwise
     if length(s)>1
       b = a.(s(1).subs)(s(2).subs{:});
     else
       b = a.(s.subs);
     end
   end
 otherwise
   error('Specify value for x as obj(x)')
 end
end % subsref

function r = plus(obj1,obj2)
% PLUS Implement obj1 + obj2 for DocPolynom
obj1 = DocPolynom(obj1);
obj2 = DocPolynom(obj2);
The `DocPolynom` Constructor

The following function is the `DocPolynom` class constructor, which is in the file `@DocPolynom/DocPolynom.m`:

```matlab
methods
    function obj = DocPolynom(c)
        if isa(c,'DocPolynom')
            obj.coef = c.coef;
        else
            obj.coef = c(:).';
        end
    end
end
```

Constructor Calling Syntax

It is possible to all the `DocPolynom` constructor with two different arguments:
• Input argument is a DocPolynom object — If you call the constructor function with an input argument that is already a DocPolynom object, the constructor returns a new DocPolynom object with the same coefficients as the input argument. The isa function checks for this input.

• Input argument is a coefficient vector — If the input argument is not a DocPolynom object, the constructor attempts to reshape the values into a vector and assign them to the coef property.

The coef property set method restricts property values to doubles. See “Remove Irrelevant Coefficients” on page 19-14 for a description of the property set method.

An example use of the DocPolynom constructor is the statement:

```
p = DocPolynom([1 0 -2 -5])
p =
    x^3 - 2*x -5
```

This statement creates an instance of the DocPolynom class with the specified coefficients. Note the display of the object shows the equivalent polynomial using MATLAB language syntax. The DocPolynom class implements this display using the disp and char class methods.

**Remove Irrelevant Coefficients**

MATLAB software represents polynomials as row vectors containing coefficients ordered by descending powers. Zeros in the coefficient vector represent terms that drop out of the polynomial. Leading zeros, therefore, can be ignored when forming the polynomial.

Some DocPolynom class methods use the length of the coefficient vector to determine the degree of the polynomial. It is useful, therefore, to remove leading zeros from the coefficient vector so that its length represents the true value.

The DocPolynom class stores the coefficient vector in a property that uses a set method to remove leading zeros from the specified coefficients before setting the property value.

```matlab
methods
    function obj = set.coef(obj,val)
        if ~isa(val,'double')
            error('Coefficients must be doubles')
        end
        ind = find(val(:).'-=0);
        if ~isempty(ind);
```
Convert DocPolynom Objects to Other Types

The DocPolynom class defines two methods to convert DocPolynom objects to other classes:

• double — Converts to the double numeric type so functions can perform mathematical operations on the coefficients.
• char — Converts to string used to format output for display in the command window

The Double Converter

The double converter method for the DocPolynom class simply returns the coefficient vector:

```matlab
methods
    function c = double(obj)
        c = obj.coef;
    end
end
```

For the DocPolynom object `p`:
```
p = DocPolynom([1 0 -2 -5]);
```
the statement:
```
c = double(p)
```
returns:
```
c =
    1     0    -2    -5
```
which is of class double:
```matlab
class(c)
ans =
    double
```
The Character Converter

The `char` method produces a character string that represents the polynomial displayed as powers of \( x \). The string returned is a syntactically correct MATLAB expression.

The `char` method uses a cell array to collect the string components that make up the displayed polynomial.

The `disp` method uses `char` to format the `DocPolynom` object for display. The `evalPoly` method uses `char` to create the MATLAB expression to evaluate.

Users of `DocPolynom` objects are not likely to call the `char` or `disp` methods directly, but these methods enable the `DocPolynom` class to behave like other data classes in MATLAB.

Here is the `char` method.

```matlab
function str = char(obj)
    if all(obj.coef == 0)
        s = '0';
        str = s;
        return
    else
        d = length(obj.coef)-1;
        s = cell(1,d);
        ind = 1;
        for a = obj.coef;
            if a ~= 0;
                if ind ~= 1
                    if a > 0
                        s(ind) = {' + '};
                        ind = ind + 1;
                    else
                        s(ind) = {' - '};
                        a = -a;
                        ind = ind + 1;
                    end
                end
                if a ~= 1 || d == 0
                    if a == -1
                        s(ind) = {' - '};
                        ind = ind + 1;
                    else
                        s(ind) = {num2str(a)};
                        ind = ind + 1;
                    end
                end
            end
        end
    end
end
```
Overload disp for DocPolynom

To provide a more useful display of DocPolynom objects, this class overloads disp in the class definition.

This disp method relies on the char method to produce a string representation of the polynomial, which it then displays on the screen.

The char method returns a cell array or the character '0' if the coefficients are all zero.

methods
  function disp(obj)
    c = char(obj);
    if iscell(c)
      disp(['     ' c{:}])
    else
      disp(c)
    end
  end
end

When MATLAB Calls the disp Method

The statement:

```
p = DocPolynom([1 0 -2 -5])
```

creates a DocPolynom object. Because the statement is not terminated with a semicolon, the resulting output is displayed on the command line:

```
p =
```
Implementing a Class for Polynomials

\[ x^3 - 2x - 5 \]

**Display Evaluated Expression**

The `char` converter method forms a MATLAB expression for the polynomial represented by a `DocPolynom` object. The `dispPoly` method evaluates the expression returned by the `char` method with a specified value for \( x \).

**methods**

```matlab
function dispPoly(obj,x)
    p = char(obj);
    e = @(x)eval(p);
    y = zeros(length(x));
    disp(['y = ',p])
    for k = 1:length(x)
        y(k) = e(x(k));
        disp(['  ',num2str(y(k)),...
             ' = f(x = ',...
             num2str(x(k)),')'])
    end
end
end
```

Create a `DocPolynom` object \( p \):

```matlab
p = DocPolynom([1 0 -2 -5])
```

\( p = x^3 - 2x - 5 \)

Evaluate the polynomial at \( x \) equal to three values, \([3 5 9] \):

```matlab
dispPoly(p,[3 5 9])
y = x^3 - 2x - 5
16 = f(x = 3)
110 = f(x = 5)
706 = f(x = 9)
```

**Redefine Indexed Reference**

The `DocPolynom` class redefines indexed reference to better serve the use of objects representing polynomials. In the `DocPolynom` class, a subscripted reference to an object
causes an evaluation of the polynomial with the value of the independent variable equal to the subscript.

For example, given the following polynomial:

\[ f(x) = x^3 - 2x - 5 \]

Create a DocPolynom object \( p \):

\[
p = \text{DocPolynom}([1 \ 0 \ -2 \ -5])
\]

\[
p = x^3 - 2x - 5
\]

The following subscripted expression evaluates the value of the polynomial at \( x = 3 \) and at \( x = 4 \), and returns the resulting values:

\[
p([3 \ 4])
\]

\[
\text{ans} = 16 \quad 51
\]

**Indexed Reference Design Objectives**

Redefine the default subscripted reference behavior by implementing a `subsref` method.

If a class defines a `subsref` method, MATLAB calls this method for objects of this class whenever a subscripted reference occurs. The `subsref` method must define all the indexed reference behaviors, not just a specific case that you want to change.

The `DocPolynom` `subsref` method implements the following behaviors:

- \( p(x = [a_1 \ldots a_n]) \) — Evaluate polynomial at \( x = a \).
- \( p.coef \) — Access `coef` property value
- \( p.disp \) — Display the polynomial as a MATLAB expression without assigning an output.
- \( \text{obj} = p.method(args) \) — Use dot notation to call methods arguments and return a modified object.
- \( \text{obj} = p.method \) — Use dot notation to call methods without arguments and return a modified object.
**subsref Implementation Details**

The `subsref` method overloads the `subsref` function.

For example, consider a call to the `polyval` function:

```matlab
p = DocPolynom([1 0 -2 -5])
p =
    x^3 - 2*x - 5
polyval(p.coef,[3 5 7])
ans =
    16   110   324
```

The `polyval` function requires the:

- Polynomial coefficients
- Values of the independent variable at which to evaluate the polynomial

The `polyval` function returns the value of \( f(x) \) at these values. `subsref` calls `polyval` through the statements:

```matlab
case '()'
    ind = s.subs{:};
    b = polyval(a.coef,ind);
```

When implementing `subsref` to support method calling with arguments using dot notation, both the `type` and `subs` structure fields contain multiple elements.

The `subsref` method implements all subscripted reference explicitly, as show in the following code listing.

```matlab
methods
    function b = subsref(a,s)
        switch s(1).type
            case '()'
                ind = s.subs{:};
                b = polyval(a.coef,ind);
            case '.'
                switch s(1).subs
                    case 'coef'
                        b = a.coef;
                    case 'disp'
                        disp(a)
            otherwise
```
Define Arithmetic Operators

Several arithmetic operations are meaningful on polynomials. The DocPolynom class implements these methods:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method and Syntax</th>
<th>Operator Implemented</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>plus(a,b)</td>
<td>Addition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minus(a,b)</td>
<td>Subtraction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mtimes(a,b)</td>
<td>Matrix multiplication</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When overloading arithmetic operators, consider the data types you must support. The plus, minus, and mtimes methods are defined for the DocPolynom class to handle addition, subtraction, and multiplication on DocPolynom — DocPolynom and DocPolynom — double combinations of operands.

Define + Operator

If either p or q is a DocPolynom object, this expression:

\[ p + q \]

Generates a call to a function @DocPolynom/plus, unless the other object is of higher precedence.

The following method overloads the plus (+) operator for the DocPolynom class:

```matlab
methods
    function r = plus(obj1, obj2)
        obj1 = DocPolynom(obj1);
        obj2 = DocPolynom(obj2);
        k = length(obj2.coef) - length(obj1.coef);
```
Implementing a Class for Polynomials

zp = zeros(1,k);
zm = zeros(1,-k);
r = DocPolynom([zp,obj1.coef] + [zm,obj2.coef]);
end
end

Here is how the function works:

• Ensure that both input arguments are DocPolynom objects so that expressions such as
  \( p + 1 \)
  that involve both a DocPolynom and a double, work correctly.

• Access the two coefficient vectors and, if necessary, pad one of them with zeros to make both the same length. The actual addition is simply the vector sum of the two coefficient vectors.

• Call the DocPolynom constructor to create a properly typed object that is the result of adding the polynomials.

**Define - Operator**

Implement the \texttt{minus} operator (\texttt{-}) using the same approach as the \texttt{plus} (\texttt{+}) operator.

The \texttt{minus} method computes \( p \ - q \). The dominant argument must be a DocPolynom object.

**Define the * Operator**

Implement the \texttt{mtimes} method to compute the product \( p \times q \). The \texttt{mtimes} method implements matrix multiplication since the multiplication of two polynomials is the convolution (\texttt{conv}) of their coefficient vectors:
Using the Arithmetic Operators

Given the DocPolynom object:

\[ p = \text{DocPolynom}([1 \ 0 -2 -5]); \]

The following two arithmetic operations call the DocPolynom plus and mtimes methods:

\[ q = p+1; \]
\[ r = p*q; \]

to produce

\[ q = x^3 - 2x - 4 \]
\[ r = x^6 - 4x^4 - 9x^3 + 4x^2 + 18x + 20 \]
Designing Related Classes

- “A Simple Class Hierarchy” on page 20-2
- “Containing Assets in a Portfolio” on page 20-20
A Simple Class Hierarchy

Shared and Specialized Properties

As an example of how subclasses are specializations of more general classes, consider an asset class that can be used to represent any item that has monetary value. Some examples of assets are stocks, bonds, and savings accounts. This example implements four classes — DocAsset, and the subclasses DocStock, DocBond, DocSavings.

The DocAsset class holds the data that is common to all of the specialized asset subclasses in class properties. The subclasses inherit the super class properties in addition to defining their own properties. The subclasses are all kinds of assets.
The following diagram shows the properties defined for the classes of assets.

![Class Hierarchy Diagram]

The DocStock, DocBond, and DocSavings classes inherit properties from the DocAsset class. In this example, the DocAsset class provides storage for data common to all subclasses and shares methods with these subclasses.

**Designing a Class for Financial Assets**

This class provides storage and access for information common to all asset children. It is not intended to be instantiated directly, so it does not require an extensive set of methods. The class contains the following methods:

- Constructor
• A local setter function for one property

**DocAsset Class Definition**

For a full code listing for the DocAsset class, see “DocAsset Class Code Listing” on page 20-17

To use the class, create a folder named @DocAsset and save the class code as DocAsset.m in this folder. The parent folder of @DocAsset must be on the MATLAB path.

**Summary of the DocAsset Class**

The class is defined in one file, DocAsset.m, which you must place in an @ folder of the same name. The parent folder of the @DocAsset folder must be on the MATLAB path. See the addpath function for more information.

The following table summarizes the properties defined for the DocAsset class.

**DocAsset Class Properties**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Default</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>char</td>
<td>' '</td>
<td>Description of asset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CurrentValue</td>
<td>double</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Current value of asset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date</td>
<td>char</td>
<td>date</td>
<td>Date when record is created (set by date function)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>char</td>
<td>'savings'</td>
<td>Type of asset (stock, bond, savings)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following table summarizes the methods for the DocAsset class.

**DocAsset Class Methods**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DocAsset</td>
<td>Class constructor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disp</td>
<td>Displays information about this object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set.Type</td>
<td>Set function for Type. Property tests for correct value when property is set.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The DocAsset Constructor Method

This class has four properties that store data common to all of the asset subclasses. All except Date are passed to the constructor by a subclass constructor. Date is a private property and is set by a call to the date function.

- **Description** — A character string that describes the particular asset (e.g., stock name, savings bank name, bond issuer, and so on).
- **Date** — The date the object was created. This property's set access is private so that only the constructor assigns the value using the date command when creating the object.
- **Type** — The type of asset (e.g., savings, bond, stock). A local set function provides error checking whenever an object is created.
- **CurrentValue** — The current value of the asset.

Property Definition Block

The following code block shows how the properties are defined. Note the set function defined for the Type property. It restricts the property's values to one of three strings: bond, stock, or savings.

```matlab
properties
    Description = '';
    CurrentValue = 0;
end
properties(SetAccess = private)
    Date % Set value in constructor
    Type = 'savings'; % Provide a default value
end
```

Constructor Method Code

The DocAsset class is not derived from another class, so you do not need to call a superclass constructor. MATLAB constructs an object when you assign values to the specified output argument (a in the following code):

```matlab
function a = DocAsset(description,type, currentValue)
% DocAsset constructor
    if nargin > 0
        a.Description = description;
        a.Date = date;
        a.Type = type;
```
a.CurrentValue = current_value;
end
end % DocAsset

Set Function for Type Property

In this class design, there are only three types of assets—bonds, stocks, and savings. Therefore, the possible values for the Type property are restricted to one of three possible strings by defining a set function as follows:

```matlab
function obj = set.Type(obj,type)
    if ~(strcmpi(type,'bond') || strcmpi(type,'stock') || strcmpi(type,'savings'))
        error('Type must be either bond, stock, or savings')
    end
    obj.Type = type;
end %Type set function
```

The MATLAB runtime calls this function whenever an attempt is made to set the Type property, even from within the class constructor function or by assigning an initial value. Therefore, the following statement in the class definition would produce an error:

```matlab
properties
    Type = 'cash';
end
```

The only exception is the set.Type function itself, where the statement:

```matlab
obj.Type = type;
```

does not result in a recursive call to set.Type.

The DocAsset Display Method

The asset disp method is designed to be called from child-class disp methods. Its purpose is to display the data it stores for the child object. The method simply formats the data for display in a way that is consistent with the formatting of the child's disp method:

```matlab
function disp(a)
    % Display a DocAsset object
    fprintf('Description: %s
Date: %s
Type: %s
CurrentValue:%9.2f\n',...
        a.Description,a.Date,a.Type,a.CurrentValue);
end % disp
```

The DocAsset subclass display methods can now call this method to display the data stored in the parent class. This approach isolates the subclass disp methods from changes to the DocAsset class.
Designing a Class for Stock Assets

Stocks are one type of asset. A class designed to store and manipulate information about stock holdings needs to contain the following information about the stock:

- The number of shares
- The price per share

In addition, the base class (DocAsset) maintains general information including a description of the particular asset, the date the record was created, the type of asset, and its current value.

DocStock Class Definition

For a full code listing for the DocStock class, see “DocStock Class Code Listing” on page 20-17.

To use the class, create a folder named @DocStock and save the class code as DocStock.m in this folder. The parent folder of @DocStock must be on the MATLAB path.

Summary of the DocStock Class

This class is defined in one file, DocStock.m, which you must place in an @ folder of the same name. The parent folder of the @DocStock folder must be on the MATLAB path. See the addpath function for more information.

DocStock is a subclass of the DocAsset class.

The following table summarizes the properties defined for the DocStock class.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Default</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NumShares</td>
<td>double</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Number of shares of a particular stock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SharePrice</td>
<td>double</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Current value of asset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>char</td>
<td>' '</td>
<td>Description of asset</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Designing Related Classes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Default</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CurrentValue</td>
<td>double</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Current value of asset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date</td>
<td>char</td>
<td>date</td>
<td>Date when record is created (set by date function)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>char</td>
<td>''</td>
<td>Type of asset (stock, bond, savings)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following table summarizes the methods for the `DocStock` class.

**DocStock Class Methods**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DocStock</td>
<td>Class constructor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disp</td>
<td>Displays information about the object</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Specifying the Base Class**

The `<` symbol specifies the `DocAsset` class as the base class for the `DocStock` class in the `classdef` line:

```matlab
classdef DocStock < DocAsset
```

**Property Definition Block**

The following code shows how the properties are defined:

```matlab
properties
    NumShares = 0;
    SharePrice = 0;
end
```

**Using the DocStock Class**

Suppose you want to create a record of a stock asset for 200 shares of a company called Xdotcom with a share price of $23.47.

Call the `DocStock` constructor function with the following arguments:

- Stock name or description
- Number of shares
- Share price
For example, the following statement:

XdotcomStock = DocStock('Xdotcom',200,23.47);

creates a DocStock object, XdotcomStock, that contains information about a stock asset in Xdotcom Corp. The asset consists of 200 shares that have a per share value of $23.47.

The DocStock Constructor Method

The constructor first creates an instance of a DocAsset object since the DocStock class is derived from the DocAsset class (see “The DocAsset Constructor Method” on page 20-5). The constructor returns the DocStock object after setting value for its two properties:

function s = DocStock(description,num_shares,share_price)
    if nargin ~= 3 % Support no argument constructor syntax
        description = '';
        num_shares = 0;
        share_price = 0;
    end
    s = s@DocAsset(description,'stock',share_price*num_shares);
    s.NumShares = num_shares;
    s.SharePrice = share_price;
end % DocStock

The DocStock disp Method

When you issue the statement (without terminating with a semicolon):

XdotcomStock = DocStock('Xdotcom',100,25)

the MATLAB runtime looks for a method in the @DocStock folder called disp. The disp method for the DocStock class produces this output:

Description: Xdotcom
Date: 17-Nov-1998
Type: stock
Current Value: $2500.00
Number of shares: 100
Share price: $25.00

The following function is the DocStock disp method. When this function returns from the call to the DocAsset disp method, it uses fprintf to display the Numshares and SharePrice property values on the screen:
Designing Related Classes

function disp(s)
    disp@DocAsset(s)
    fprintf('Number of shares: %g
Share price: %3.2f\n',...
    s.NumShares,s.SharePrice);
end % disp

Designing a Class for Bond Assets

The DocBond class is similar to the DocStock class in that it is derived from the DocAsset class to represent a specific type of asset.

DocBond Class Definition

For a full code listing for the DocBond class, see “DocBond Class Code Listing” on page 20-18

To use the class, create a folder named @DocBond and save the class code as DocBond.m in this folder. The parent folder of @DocBond must be on the MATLAB path.

Summary of the DocBond Class

This class is defined in one file, DocBond.m, which you must place in an @ folder of the same name. The parent folder of the @DocBond folder must on the MATLAB path.

DocStock is a subclass of the DocAsset class.

The following table summarize the properties defined for the DocBond class

DocBond Class Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Default</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FaceValue</td>
<td>double</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Face value of the bond</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SharePrice</td>
<td>double</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Current value of asset</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Properties Inherited from the DocAsset Class

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Default</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>char</td>
<td>''</td>
<td>Description of asset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CurrentValue</td>
<td>double</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Current value of asset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date</td>
<td>char</td>
<td>date</td>
<td>Date when record is created (set by date function)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Class</td>
<td>Default</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>char</td>
<td>''</td>
<td>Type of asset (stock, bond, savings)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following table summarizes the methods for the `DocStock` class.

**DocBond Class Methods**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DocBond</td>
<td>Class constructor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disp</td>
<td>Displays information about this object and calls the DocAsset disp method</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calc_value</td>
<td>Utility function to calculate the bond's current value</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Specifying the Base Class**

The `<` symbol specifies the `DocAsset` class as the base class for the `DocBond` class in the `classdef` line:

```plaintext
classdef DocBond < DocAsset
```

**Property Definition Block**

The following code block shows how the properties are defined:

```plaintext
properties
    FaceValue = 0;
    Yield = 0;
    CurrentBondYield = 0;
end
```

**Using the DocBond Class**

Suppose you want to create a record of an asset that consists of an xyzbond with a face value of $100 and a current yield of 4.3%. The current yield for the equivalent bonds today is 6.2%, which means that the market value of this particular bond is less than its face value.

Call the `DocBond` constructor function with the following arguments:

- Bond name or description
• Bond's face value
• Bond's interest rate or yield
• Current interest rate being paid by equivalent bonds (used to calculate the current value of the asset)

For example, this statement:

```
b = DocBond('xyzbond',100,4.3,6.2);
```

creates a `DocBond` object, `b`, that contains information about a bond asset `xyzbond` with a face value of $100, a yield of 4.3%, and also contains information about the current yield of such bonds (6.2% in this case) that is used to calculate the current value.

---

**Note** The calculations performed in this example are intended only to illustrate the use of MATLAB classes and do not represent a way to determine the actual value of any monetary investment.

---

### The DocBond Constructor Method

The `DocBond` constructor method requires four arguments. It also supports the no argument syntax by defining default values for the missing input arguments:

```matlab
function b = DocBond(description,face_value,yield,current_yield)
    if nargin ~= 4
        description = ''; face_value = 0; yield = 0; current_yield = 0;
    end
    market_value = DocBond.calc_value(face_value,yield,current_yield);
    b = b@DocAsset(description,'bond',market_value);
    b.FaceValue = face_value;
    b.Yield = yield;
    b.CurrentBondYield = current_yield;
end % DocBond
```

### The calc_value Method

The `DocBond` class determines the market value of bond assets using a simple formula that scales the face value by the ratio of the bond's interest yield to the current yield for equivalent bonds.
Calculation of the asset's market value requires that the yields be nonzero, and should be positive just to make sense. While the `calc_value` method issues no errors for bad yield values, it does ensure bad values are not used in the calculation of market value.

The asset's market value is passed to the `DocAsset` base-class constructor when it is called within the `DocBond` constructor. `calc_value` has its `Static` attribute set to true because it does not accept a `DocBond` object as an input argument. The output of `calc_value` is used by the base-class (`DocAsset`) constructor:

```matlab
methods (Static)
    function market_value = calc_value(face_value,yield,current_yield)
        if current_yield <= 0 || yield <= 0
            market_value = face_value;
        else
            market_value = face_value*yield/current_yield;
        end
    end % calc_value
end % methods
```

**The DocBond disp Method**

When you issue this statement (without terminating it with a semicolon):

```matlab
b = DocBond('xyzbond',100,4.3,6.2)
```

the MATLAB runtime looks for a method in the `@DocBond` folder called `disp`. The `disp` method for the `DocBond` class produces this output:

Description: xyzbond
Date: 17-Nov-1998
Type: bond
Current Value: $69.35
Face value of bonds: $100
Yield: 4.30%

The following function is the `DocBond disp` method. When this function returns from the call to the `DocAsset disp` method, it uses `fprintf` to display the `FaceValue`, `Yield`, and `CurrentValue` property values on the screen:

```matlab
function disp(b)
    disp@DocAsset(b) % Call DocAsset disp method
    fprintf('Face value of bonds: $%g\nYield: %3.2f\n',...
        b.FaceValue,b.Yield);
end % disp
Designing a Class for Savings Assets

The DocSavings class is similar to the DocStock and DocBond class in that it is derived from the DocAsset class to represent a specific type of asset.

DocSavings Class Definition

For a full code listing for the DocSavings class, see “DocSavings Class Code Listing” on page 20-19.

To use the class, create a folder named @DocSavings and save the class code as DocSavings.m in this folder. The parent folder of @DocSavings must be on the MATLAB path.

Summary of the DocSavings Class

This class is defined in one file, DocSavings.m, which you must place in an @ folder of the same name. The parent folder of the @DocSavings folder must on the MATLAB path. See the addpath function for more information.

The following table summarizes the properties defined for the DocSavings class.

DocSavings Class Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Default</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>InterestRate</td>
<td>double</td>
<td>'&quot;'</td>
<td>Current interest rate paid on the savings account</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Properties Inherited from the DocAsset Class

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Default</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>char</td>
<td>'&quot;'</td>
<td>Description of asset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CurrentValue</td>
<td>double</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Current value of asset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date</td>
<td>char</td>
<td>date</td>
<td>Date when record is created (set by date function)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>char</td>
<td>'&quot;'</td>
<td>The type of asset (stock, bond, savings)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The following table summarizes the methods for the `DocSavings` class.

**DocSavings Class Methods**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>DocSavings</code></td>
<td>Class constructor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>disp</code></td>
<td>Displays information about this object and calls the <code>DocAsset disp</code> method</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Specifying the Base Class**

The `<` symbol specifies the `DocAsset` class as the base class for the `DocBond` class in the `classdef` line:

```matlab
classdef DocSavings < DocAsset
```

**Property Definition Block**

The following code shows how the property is defined:

```matlab
properties
    InterestRate = 0;
end
```

**Using the DocSavings Class**

Suppose you want to create a record of an asset that consists of a savings account with a current balance of $1000 and an interest rate of 2.9%.

Call the `DocSavings` constructor function with the following arguments:

- Bank account description
- Account balance
- Interest rate paid on savings account

For example, this statement:

```matlab
sv = DocSavings('MyBank',1000,2.9);
```

creates a `DocSavings` object, `sv`, that contains information about an account in MyBank with a balance of $1000 and an interest rate of 2.9%.
The DocSavings Constructor Method

The savings account interest rate is saved in the DocSavings class InterestRate property. The asset description and the current value (account balance) are saved in the inherited DocAsset object properties.

The constructor calls the base class constructor (DocAsset.m) to create an instance of the object. It then assigns a value to the InterestRate property. The constructor supports the no argument syntax by providing default values for the missing arguments.

```matlab
function s = DocSavings(description,balance,interest_rate)
    if nargin ~= 3
        description = '';
        balance = 0;
        interest_rate = 0;
    end
    s = s@DocAsset(description,'savings',balance);
    s.InterestRate = interest_rate;
end % DocSavings
```

The DocSavings disp Method

When you issue this statement (without terminating it with a semicolon):

```matlab
sv = DocSavings('MyBank',1000,2.9)
```

the MATLAB runtime looks for a method in the @DocSavings folder called disp. The disp method for the DocSavings class produces this output:

Description: MyBank
Date: 17-Nov-1998
Type: savings
Current Value: $1000.00
Interest Rate: 2.90%

The following function is the DocSaving disp method. When this function returns from the call to the DocAsset disp method, it uses fprintf to display the Numshares and SharePrice property values on the screen:

```matlab
function disp(b)
    disp@DocAsset(b)  % Call DocAsset disp method
    fprintf('%s%3.2f%%
','Interest Rate: ',s.InterestRate);
end % disp
DocAsset Class Code Listing

```matlab
classdef DocAsset
    % file: @DocAsset/DocAsset.m
    properties
        Description = '';
        CurrentValue = 0;
    end

    properties (SetAccess = private)
        Date
        Type = 'savings';
    end

    % Class methods
    methods
        function a = DocAsset(description, type, current_value)
            % DocAsset Constructor function
            if nargin > 0
                a.Description = description;
                a.Date = date;
                a.Type = type;
                a.CurrentValue = current_value;
            end
        end % DocAsset

        function disp(a)
            % Display a DocAsset object
            fprintf('Description: %s
Date: %s
Type: %s
Current Value: $%4.2f\n',... 
            a.Description,a.Date,a.Type,a.CurrentValue);
        end % disp

        function obj = set.Type(obj, type)
            if ~(strcmpi(type,'bond') || strcmpi(type,'stock') || strcmpi(type,'savings'))
                error('Type must be either bond, stock, or savings')
            end
            obj.Type = type;
        end % Set.Type
    end % methods
end % classdef
```

DocStock Class Code Listing

```matlab
classdef DocStock < DocAsset
    properties
        NumShares = 0;
        SharePrice = 0;
    end

    methods
        function s = DocStock(description, num_shares, share_price)
            if nargin == 3
                ...)
```

...
description = '';  
num_shares = 0;  
share_price = 0;  
end  
s = s@DocAsset(description, 'stock', share_price*num_shares);  
s.NumShares = num_shares;  
s.SharePrice = share_price;  
end  
function disp(s)  
disp@DocAsset(s)  
fprintf('Number of shares: %g
Share price: $%2.2f\n',...  
s.NumShares,s.SharePrice);  
end  
end  

DocBond Class Code Listing

classdef DocBond < DocAsset

    properties
        FaceValue = 0;  
        Yield = 0;  
        CurrentBondYield = 0;  
    end

    methods
        function b = DocBond(description,face_value,yield,current_yield)
            if nargin == 4  
                description = '';  
                face_value = 0;  
                yield = 0;  
                current_yield = 0;  
            end  
            market_value = DocBond.calc_value(face_value,yield,current_yield);  
b = b@DocAsset(description,'bond',market_value);  
b.FaceValue = face_value;  
b.Yield = yield;  
b.CurrentBondYield = current_yield;  
        end

        function disp(b)
            disp@DocAsset(b)  
            fprintf('Face value of bonds: $%g\nYield: %3.2f%%\n',...  
b.FaceValue,b.Yield);  
        end
    end

    methods (Static = true)
        function market_value = calc_value(face_value,yield,current_yield)
            if current_yield <= 0 || yield <= 0
                market_value = face_value;  
            end
        end
    end

end
else
market_value = face_value*yield/current_yield;
end
end
end

**DocSavings Class Code Listing**

```matlab
classdef DocSavings < DocAsset
    properties
        InterestRate = 0;
    end
    methods
        function s = DocSavings(description,balance,interest_rate)
            if nargin ~= 3
                description = '';
                balance = 0;
                interest_rate = 0;
            end
            s = s@DocAsset(description,'savings',balance);
            s.InterestRate = interest_rate;
        end

        function disp(s)
            disp@DocAsset(s)
            fprintf('%s%.2f%%
','Interest Rate: ',s.InterestRate);
        end
    end
end
```
Containing Assets in a Portfolio

**In this section...**

“Kinds of Containment” on page 20-20
“Designing the DocPortfolio Class” on page 20-20
“Displaying the Class Files” on page 20-21
“Summary of the DocPortfolio Class” on page 20-21
“The DocPortfolio Constructor Method” on page 20-23
“The DocPortfolio disp Method” on page 20-24
“The DocPortfolio pie3 Method” on page 20-24
“Visualizing a Portfolio” on page 20-25
“DocPortfolio Class Code Listing” on page 20-26

**Kinds of Containment**

Aggregation is the containment of objects by other objects. The basic relationship is that each contained object "is a part of" the container object. Composition is a more strict form of aggregation in which the contained objects are parts of the containing object and are not associated with any other objects. Portfolio objects form a composition with asset objects because the asset objects are value classes, which are copied when the constructor method creates the DocPortfolio object.

For example, consider a financial portfolio class as a container for a set of assets (stocks, bonds, savings, and so on). It can group, analyze, and return useful information about the individual assets. The contained objects are not accessible directly, but only via the portfolio class methods.

“A Simple Class Hierarchy” on page 20-2 provides information about the assets collected by this portfolio class.

**Designing the DocPortfolio Class**

The DocPortfolio class is designed to contain the various assets owned by an individual client and to provide information about the status of his or her investment portfolio. This example implements a somewhat over-simplified portfolio class that:

- Contains an individual's assets
• Displays information about the portfolio contents
• Displays a 3-D pie chart showing the relative mix of asset types in the portfolio

**Displaying the Class Files**

For a full code listing for the `DocAsset` class, see “DocPortfolio Class Code Listing” on page 20-26

To use the class, create a folder named `@DocPortfolio` and save the class code as `DocPortfolio.m` in this folder. The parent folder of `@DocPortfolio` must be on the MATLAB path.

**Summary of the DocPortfolio Class**

This class is defined in one file, `DocPortfolio.m`, which you must place in an `@` folder of the same name. The parent folder of the `@DocPortfolio` folder must be on the MATLAB path. See the `addpath` function for more information.

The following table summarizes the properties defined for the `DocPortfolio` class.

### DocPortfolio Class Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Default</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>char</td>
<td>''</td>
<td>Name of client owning the portfolio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IndAssets</td>
<td>cell</td>
<td>{}</td>
<td>A cell array containing individual asset objects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TotalValue</td>
<td>double</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Value of all assets (calculated in the constructor method)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following table summarizes the methods for the `DocPortfolio` class.

### DocBond Class Methods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>DocPortfolio</code></td>
<td>Class constructor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>disp</code></td>
<td>Displays information about this object and calls the <code>DocAsset</code> <code>disp</code> method</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pie3</code></td>
<td>Overloaded version of <code>pie3</code> function designed to take a single portfolio object as an argument</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Property Definition Block**

The following code block shows how the properties are defined:

```matlab
properties
    Name = '';
end
properties (SetAccess = private)
    IndAssets = {};
    TotalValue = 0;
end
```

**How Class Properties Are Used**

- **Name** — Stores the name of the client as a character string. The client's name is passed to the constructor as an input argument.

- **IndAsset** — A cell array that stores asset objects (i.e., DocStock, DocBond, and DocSavings objects). These asset objects are passed to the DocPortfolio constructor as input arguments and assigned to the property from within the constructor function.

- **IndAsset** — The structure of this property is known only to DocPortfolio class member functions so the property's SetAccess attribute is set to private.

- **TotalValue** — Stores the total value of the client's assets. The class constructor determines the value of each asset by querying the asset's CurrentValue property and summing the result. Access to the TotalValue property is restricted to DocPortfolio class member functions by setting the property's SetAccess attribute to private.

**Using the DocPortfolio Class**

The DocPortfolio class is designed to provide information about the financial assets owned by a client. There are three possible types of assets that a client can own: stocks, bonds, and savings accounts.

The first step is to create an asset object to represent each type of asset owned by the client:

```matlab
XYZStock = DocStock('XYZ Stocks',200,12.34);
USTBonds = DocBond('U.S. Treasury Bonds',1600,3.2,2.8);
SaveAccount = DocSavings('MyBank Acc # 123',2000,6);
VictoriaSelna = DocPortfolio('Victoria Selna',...
The DocPortfolio object displays the following information:

VictoriaSelna =

Assets for Client: Victoria Selna
Description: XYZ Stocks
Date: 11-Mar-2008
Type: stock
Current Value: $2468.00
Number of shares: 200
Share price: $12.34
Description: MyBank Acc # 123
Date: 11-Mar-2008
Type: savings
Current Value: $2000.00
Interest Rate: 6.00%
Description: U.S. Treasury Bonds
Date: 11-Mar-2008
Type: bond
Current Value: $1828.57
Face value of bonds: $1600
Yield: 3.20%

Total Value: $6296.57

“The DocPortfolio pie3 Method” on page 20-24 provides a graphical display of the portfolio.

The DocPortfolio Constructor Method

The DocPortfolio constructor method takes as input arguments a client's name and a variable length list of asset objects (DocStock, DocBond, and DocSavings objects in this example).

The IndAssets property is a cell array used to store all asset objects. From these objects, the constructor determines the total value of the client's assets. This value is stored in the TotalValue property:

function p = DocPortfolio(name, varargin)
if nargin > 0
    p.Name = name;
    for k = 1:length(varargin)
        p.IndAssets{k} = varargin(k);
        asset_value = p.IndAssets{k}{1}.CurrentValue;
        p.TotalValue = p.TotalValue + asset_value;
    end
end
end % DocPortfolio

The DocPortfolio disp Method

The portfolio disp method lists the contents of each contained object by calling the object's disp method. It then lists the client name and total asset value:

function disp(p)
    fprintf('Assets for Client: %s
',p.Name);
    for k = 1:length(p.IndAssets)
        disp(p.IndAssets{k}{1}) % Dispatch to corresponding disp
    end
    fprintf('Total Value: $%0.2f
',p.TotalValue);
end % disp

The DocPortfolio pie3 Method

The DocPortfolio class overloads the MATLAB pie3 function to accept a portfolio object and display a 3-D pie chart illustrating the relative asset mix of the client's portfolio. MATLAB calls the @DocPortfolio/pie3.m version of pie3 whenever the input argument is a single portfolio object:

function pie3(p)
% Step 1: Get the current value of each asset
    stock_amt = 0; bond_amt = 0; savings_amt = 0;
    for k = 1:length(p.IndAssets)
        if isa(p.IndAssets{k},'DocStock')
            stock_amt = stock_amt + p.IndAssets{k}.CurrentValue;
        elseif isa(p.IndAssets{k},'DocBond')
            bond_amt = bond_amt + p.IndAssets{k}.CurrentValue;
        elseif isa(p.IndAssets{k},'DocSavings')
            savings_amt = savings_amt + p.IndAssets{k}.CurrentValue;
        end % if
    end % for

% Step 2: Create labels and data for the pie graph
    k = 1;
    if stock_amt ~= 0
There are three parts in the overloaded pie3 method.

- Step 1 — Get the `CurrentValue` property of each contained asset object and determine the total value in each category.
- Step 2 — Create the pie chart labels and build a vector of graph data, depending on which objects are present in the portfolio.
- Step 3 — Call the MATLAB pie3 function, make some font and colormap adjustments, and add a title.

**Visualizing a Portfolio**

You can use a `DocPortfolio` object to present an individual's financial portfolio. For example, given the following assets:

```matlab
XYZStock = DocStock('XYZ Stocks',200,12.34);
USTBonds = DocBond('U.S. Treasury Bonds',1600,3.2,2.8);
SaveAccount = DocSavings('MyBank Acc # 123',2000,6);
VictoriaSelna = DocPortfolio('Victoria Selna',...
    XYZStock,...
    SaveAccount,...
    USTBonds);
```

you can use the class's `pie3` method to display the relative mix of assets as a pie chart.
pie3(VictoriaSelna)

Portfolio Composition for Victoria Selna
Total Value of Assets: $6296.57

DocPortfolio Class Code Listing

classdef DocPortfolio

    properties
        Name = '';
    end

    properties (SetAccess = private)
        IndAssets = {}; 
        TotalValue = 0;
    end

    methods
        function p = DocPortfolio(name,varargin)
            if nargin > 0
                p.Name = name;
                for k = 1:length(varargin) % Store objects in a cell array
                    p.IndAssets{k} = varargin(k);
                    asset_value = p.IndAssets{k}{1}.CurrentValue;
                    p.TotalValue = p.TotalValue + asset_value;
                end
            end
function disp(p)
    fprintf('
Assets for Client: %s\n',p.Name);
    for k = 1:length(p.IndAssets)
        disp(p.IndAssets{k}{1})
    end
    fprintf('
Total Value: $%0.2f\n',p.TotalValue);
end

function pie3(p)
stock_amt = 0; bond_amt = 0; savings_amt = 0;
for k=1:length(p.IndAssets)
    if isa(p.IndAssets{k}{1},'DocStock')
        stock_amt = stock_amt + p.IndAssets{k}{1}.CurrentValue;
    elseif isa(p.IndAssets{k}{1},'DocBond')
        bond_amt = bond_amt + p.IndAssets{k}{1}.CurrentValue;
    elseif isa(p.IndAssets{k}{1},'DocSavings')
        savings_amt = savings_amt + p.IndAssets{k}{1}.CurrentValue;
    end
end
i = 1;
if stock_amt ~= 0
    label(i) = {'Stocks'};
    pie_vector(i) = stock_amt;
    i = i +1;
end
if bond_amt ~= 0
    label(i) = {'Bonds'};
    pie_vector(i) = bond_amt;
    i = i +1;
end
if savings_amt ~= 0
    label(i) = {'Savings'};
    pie_vector(i) = savings_amt;
end
pie3(pie_vector,label)
set(findobj(gca,'Type','Text'),'FontSize',14,'FontWeight','bold')
set(gcf,'Renderer','zbuffer')
colormap prism
stg(1) = {{'Portfolio Composition for ',p.Name}};
stg(2) = {{'Total Value of Assets: $',num2str(p.TotalValue,'%0.2f')}};
title(stg,'FontSize',10)